This book is purchased from
The Schofield Fund
given in memory of
William Henry Schofield
Victoria College, B.A. 1889
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895
Professor of Comparative Literature
Harvard University, 1906-20.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
University of Berlin, 1907
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and
University of Copenhagen, 1910.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
Western Colleges, 1918.
Melusine.

Early English Text Society.
Extra Series, LXVIII.
1895.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
Comment guion et ses gens distriurent les galées des savrazins sur mer et en

Mélusine.

Compiled (1382-1394 A.D.) by

Jean d'Arras

Enlisht about 1500.

Edited from a unique manuscript in the library of the British Museum by A. K. Donald.

Part I. Text, notes, and glossary.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cap.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>How Melusyne &amp; her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste that he made of hys sone</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruaillous wildbore that euer was sen byfore</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his uncle</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lytttere</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lad, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle demanded of the Erle a yeft, the whiche he graunted to hym</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert and how he bought it</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII.</td>
<td>How they that were ordonned came and deleyuered to Raymondyn his yeft</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII.</td>
<td>How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers &amp; retourned toward his lady</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV.</td>
<td>How the Erle of Poytiers came to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompanyed of alle the Barons in hys land</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS.</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes &amp; Squyers</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jousted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raymondyn and Melusyne laye</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raymondyn and of Melusyne /</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XX. How Vryan &amp; Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fader &amp; moder, and of the help that they had of them</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXI. How Uryan &amp; Guyon tooke leue of theirs</td>
<td>114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moder Melusyne and entred their ship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXIII. How Vryan &amp; Guyon came byfore the kinge,</td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he byeing in his bed syke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, daughter unto</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the kinge of Cypre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXV. How Anthony &amp; Regnald dyscomfyted the</td>
<td>201</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kynge of Assay tofore Lucembourgh / and how he was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXVI. How the kynge of Assay was lede byfore the</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pucelle Crystyne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXVII. How the kynge of Assay called to hym al</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the barons of Lucsembourgh to Counseylle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse</td>
<td>214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Lucembourgh /</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXIX. How the kynge of behayne sent a messager</td>
<td>215</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward the king of Assay his brother</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the</td>
<td>218</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXI. How the kynge of Craco dide do take the</td>
<td>227</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and comanded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it to be brent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle</td>
<td>232</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius &amp; the other sara-</td>
<td>233</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyns were brent and bruyled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and</td>
<td>235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsequye of kynge Federyk of behayne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Cap XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglanyne, daughter to the kyng of Behayne / 240

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquiers jousted after dyner 241

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion 296

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande 241

Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder 304

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray 307

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete tooth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there 309

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her 314

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn 315

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune 317

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament / 317

Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe 319

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brene his sone called Horryble 321

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children 322

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete tooth ranayenst the geaunt & ouerthrow hym with hys spere / 324

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray followed hym 326

Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geaunt / 327

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn 327

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuercd the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson 330

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott 330
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII</td>
<td>How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Rome and confessed hys synnes to hym</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII</td>
<td>How Geffray went to Rome &amp; confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIIII</td>
<td>How Geffray went to Rome &amp; confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIX</td>
<td>How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Mayl-leses</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX</td>
<td>How the king of Armanye watched the sperhauk</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXI</td>
<td>How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXII</td>
<td>How the king was bete &amp; ouerthrawen and knew not of whom</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes and Illustrations

- 373

### List of Proverbs in the Romance of Melusine

- 387

### Glossary

- 389

### Index of Proper Names (Persons)

- 401

### Index of Proper Names (Places)

- 407
Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe. compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe.]

IN the begynnyng of all werkes / men oughten first of alle to calle the name of the creator of all Creatures, which is very & trew maister of alle things made & to be made, that oughten somwhat to entend to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begynnynge of this present history / though that I ne be not worthy for to requyre hym / beseeche ryght denouly his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present history he wyl helpe me to bring vnto a good ende / & to fuldo it att hys glorye & praysyng: And to the plaisire of my right high, mighti, and doubtid lord Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry & of Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredd for to accomplysse hit. And bycaus that his noble sustir Marye, doughtir to the kyng Iohanne of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had quyred my said lord for to haue the said history / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

1 This title is added in xviith cent. handwriting.

MELUSINE.
Melusine was written in 1387.

Ch. I.

Melusine was written IX 1387. at the command of her brother John, Duke of Berry and Aubergue, and was commenced on St. Clement's Day, Nov. 23, 1387.

And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth 4 of hys gracevous commandement. Wherfore I humbly & deuoutly beseche & pray to my Creatour, that my said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that schall rede or here it / that they wil pardonne me yf I 8 haue said any thinges that ben not to theire good gree. Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wensday, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our lord Mi. cccc. Ixxx. viij. beseching alle them that shaH 12 rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardonne me my fawte, yf their be eny. ffor certaynly I haue composed it the moost justly that I coude or hane mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to 16 be trew.

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymoudyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst /.

1 fol. 2. David said that the judgments of God are unfathomable.

It is foolish, therefore, not to believe that marvellous things are true,

for the Creature cannot comprehend the designs of God.

David said that the judgements and the punysshinges of god ben as abysmes without bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that suche thinges supposeth to comprehende in his wit / & 24 weneth that the meruaylles that ben throught the universal world, may nat be true, as it is said of the thinges that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other thinges wherof we may not haue the knowleche of alle 28 them. Now thenne the Creature ought nat therfore for to trauelle, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to comprehende in his wit & vnderstanding the Iugements of god / but men oughten / thinkynge / to be meruayllled 32 of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may
worthily & devoutly prayse and glorify hym that Iugith so, and ordeynith suche thinges after hys plaissance & wille without any gaynsaying:

The creature of god that is rasonable, oughte moche besily to vnderstande aftir the sayeng of Aristote, that the pynges which he hath made & creatid here byneth, by the presence pat they haue in themself, certyfyn to be suche as they are / As saynet paule seyth in thepistle that he made to the Rommains / sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath doon, shalbe knowen & seen by the Creatures of the world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede & adiousten feyth to factoures whiche haue ben before vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the prouinces & the strange Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted the dyuerse Royaumes / haue founde so many of dyuerse meruaylles aftir common exstimacion, that thumayn vnderstanding is constrainyd of god / that soo as he is without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges meruayllous & wounderfull in many dyuerse landes. aftir their dyuerse nature / that saaf theire Juggement. I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inysible or that may not be seen. Wherfore I me bethink fro day to day to proufytte in science, & to here & see many thinges / which men suposen not to be true. the which, yf they be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes before you / to thende that the grette meruaylles that ben conteyned in this present hystory may be byleden. Wherfore I 1 think to treate to the playsure of god / and after the commandement of my said right mighty lord./

Atc vs now leve the Auctoures with peas / and retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle of our auncyent and old tyme / and that this day we haue herde say what in the land of Poitow was seen in

Men should rather think how worthily to praise him.

Reasonable creatures should believe what is seen,

and should give credence to travellers who see many marvels.

Adam alone had perfect knowledge; but the author daily learns more and more, and tells what he has seen, that his history may be believed.

1 fol. 25.

Leaving the Authors, let us turn to what has been seen in Poitou.

CH. 1.] BELIEVE TRAVELLERS' REPORTS OF MARVELS. 3
In ancient times fairies and goblins often appeared in Poitou, and played many pranks.

Gervaise tells of other fairies, which performed menial duties.

He also says that the fairies sometimes took the form of beautiful women, whom men have married on certain conditions:

dede / for to couloure 1 our hystory to be trew / as we hold hit soo / and for to shew & publysche it thorough the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

We haue thenne herde say and telle of our auncentys, 4 that in many partes of the sayd lande of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many manyer of thinges / the whiche somme called Gobelyns / the other fayrees, and the other 'bonnes dames' or good 8, ladys / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within the houses without opnyng or brekyng of any doore / and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of theire cradelles, and somtyme they tourne them out of 12 theyre wit / and somtyme they brende & roste them before pe fyre / and when they departe fro them, they leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyue grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue 16 I herde say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipful & of cre-
dence, that somme other fauntaesyes appyeren by nyght tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body / 20 whiche dide scour pannes & potts, and dide such thinges as a mayde or seruaunt oughte to doo / lyberaly & without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith for certayn, that in his tyme he had a frend that was 24 auncent & old, whiche recounted for trouth / that in hys dayes he had seen many tymes suche thinges, and saith yet the said Geruayse, that the sayd fayrees toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & 28 yonge wymen / of whiche many men haue had som doughtirs, and haue take to their wyues by meanes of som couenauntes or promysses that they made them to swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld neuer see 32 eche other / on the satyrday / and that by no maner wyse they shuld nat enquyre where they were by-

1 Fr. contourer.
that their husbands should never see them in their child's bed. And as long as they kept them in their covertant when they had good fortune and were ever in prosperity, but asscover they fell down from the good and happy fortune and after these things so happened to have broken theyr covertant the other were converted and turned into serpents. And yet more sayth the second said Geruayse, that he bylyueth this to be permitted and done for some mysdeses that were down ayenst the playsure of god wherefore he punysshed them so secretly and so wondrously therof none had parfytt knowledge but alone he and they may be therefore called the secrets of god, abysses without ruyage and without bottom. For none knoweth nothing perfectly to the regard of hym how be it that sometyme of his propyssen ben many things known not only of oon but of many other. It is seen often when a man hath isissued out of his countrey and hath seen many awondoner and meruayllous thynges whiche he never wold have bylued hit by here sayeng, without he had hadd the sight of hit but as for me that haue nat walked farre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld nat bylued without they shaw it. With this seyeth the said Geruayse, and seteth forth an ensample of a knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussell of the province of Assy the whiche knight by aventure on an euen founde oon of the fayre in a medowe and wold haue had her to his wyf and in dede she assentid to hit by suche covertanance that neuer he shuld see her naked and were longe togider and the knyght grew 32 wexed prosperous fro day to day. It happened long tyme after that he wold haue seen the said Nympe naked as he dede in so moche that the said nympe putte her heed in to a watre and was and so long as the conditions were kept, they were prosperous and happy but when they were broken, they became poor, and their wives were punished. Sir Robert du Chastel Roussell found a fairy in a meadow and was married to her on condition that he should never see her naked. For a long time he was prosperous but one day he broke his promise.

1 MS. has 'for.'
and his wife was tourned in to a serpent, which was neuer seen after that / And the knyght fro day to day waxed pouvere and declyned from his prosperite. As for proverbes & exemples I wil none bryng more vnto you / and 4 that / that I haue doon / it was bycause pat I suppose to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusignen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and the manyere how / after the juste & true cronycle / 8 without to applye ne adiouste to it nonething / but that it be approvued Juste & trew, and of the propre or owne matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble lynee whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall 12 regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme present. But bycause that I byganne first to treate of the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam 16 the said woman whiche bilden the noble 1 ffortress of Lusygnen, beforsayd./

Herafter folowen the names of the estates of the children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were 20 bygoten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armynye. Item, King 1 Regnald, which regned right mightily 24 in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was due of Lucembourgh. Item, Raymond that was Erle of fforest. Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of Lusygnen. Item, there yssued also theodoryk, which 28 was lord of Partenay. Item, ffoymonde, that was monke into thabbey of Mailleses, the whiche Geffray with the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot also with an hundred religyous or monkes./

It is true that there was somtyme in Albany a kynge that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And as sayth thistory / he had of hys wyf many children /

1 fol. 36b.

The children of Melusine and Raymondin were

Uryan, King of Cyprus; Guyon, King of Armenia; Raymond, King of Bohemia; Anthony, Duke of Luxembourg; Raymond, Earl of Forest;

Geoffrey, of Lusignen; Theodoric, of Partenay;

Fromont, of Mailieres.

Once upon a time, in Albany, lived a brave King
& that Mathas whiche was fader to filorymond was
hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas,
and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land./

4 And it happed that after the decess of his first wyf / as
he chaced in a forest nighte to the see, in the which
forest was a moche fayre fontayne / that sodainly he
had so gret athurst / that as constreyned\(^1\) he tourned

8 & yede toward the said fontayne. And when he ap-
proached to the said fontayne / he herde a voyce that
songe so melodiously & so swetly / that he suposed none
other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone aftir

12 he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Thenne
descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thonde he
shulde not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly
toward the fontayn in the most covered wyse that he

16 coude. And when he camme nygh to the fontayne / he sawe,there the fayrest lady that euer he the dayes
of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynghe. Thenne
he stode styl al abasshed of the gret beaulth that he

20 perceyued in the same ladye, which euer songe so
melodyeusly and so swetly. And thus he stood styl /
asmoche for the bewte of the lady / as for to her
swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best

24 wyse that he coude vnder the leveis of the trees / to
thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / &
forgate all the chasse and gret thurst that he had afore.
And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulth

28 of the lady. In so moche that he was as rauysshed
& knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept
or wakked?/

Thus as ye shall now here was kyng Elynas so
abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of
the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he
slept or wakked, For euer styl she songe so melodyous
that it was a swete & melodious thing to here / Thenne

\(^1\) 'honstreyned' in MS.
KING ELYNAS MAKES LOVE TO PRESSYNE.

He remembers nothing;

but two hounds at last disturb him.

He goes to the fountain to drink,

and humbly salutes the lady,

who returns his salutation,

He asks her who she is,

He knows all the lords and ladies of the neighbourhood,

and is surprised that she is without retinue.

He asks her pardon for his rudeness in questioning her.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused¹ that he remembered of nothinge worldly / but aloneely that he herif & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne camme rannyng toward him two of hys houndis ² whiche made to hym grett feste,² and he lept & mevyd hym as a man wakyng from slep / and thenne he remembered of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hauynge adys ne mesure he yede 8 fourth vpon the ryuage of the fountayyne, and toke the basyng which heng therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued³ her right humbly / beryng vnto her 12 the grettest honour & reverence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right gracously, 'Lady,' said Elynas, the kinge / of your curtoysye be 16 nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beynge & what ye are / For the cause that moueth me thereto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to 20 wete & knowe that I can & know⁴ so moche of the beynge of this countree, that there nys within this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne flortes, but pat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this 24 day by the mornyng', whiche is two myle hens or ther-aboute. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therfore gretly I meruaylle & wonderly am abasshed, fro whens 28 may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loue pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wylle that 32 my herte bereth toward your gracious personne, hath caused hardynes within me for to doo it.' /

¹ Fr. abuse. ² Fr. feste. ³ Fr. salua. ⁴ Fr. scey et conquis.
KING ELYNAS AND THE LADY PRESSYNE.

Sire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage / but it commeth to you of grette curtoysye & honour. And knowe you, sire knight, that I shall nat be longe alone when it shal playse me / but from me I haue sent my seruants, while pat I dysported me.' Thenne cam fourth to that word oon of her seruants, wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courcer, and att his right hand ledd a palfroy so richely enharnished that the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of the grette richesse & noble aray that was about the said palfray. Thanne said the seruaunt to his lady: 'Madame, it is tyme when it shall playse you to comme.' And she fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be with you, and gramerce of your curtoysye.' Thenne she went toward the palfray / and the kinge hyed hym, & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately. And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /. And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake, thanne camme hys money, whiche sought hym, and sayd that they had taken the herte. And the king said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he byganne to thinke on the beaute of the said lady, and so moche he was surprysed of her loue, that he ne wyst what contenaunce or manyere he shuld hold / and said to his meyne / 'go you alle before / and I shall folow you soone.' They yede at hys commandement their way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he had / found som thinge / And the king hastily tourned his hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / & followed her.

Thystory recounteth vs, that so long followed the kyng Elynas the lady, that he found her in a forest, where as were many trees high & strayt / and [it] was in the season that the tyme is swete &

1 fol. 4 b. She replies courteously.

Her servants have retired whilst she amused herself.

A servant then brings a palfrey, richly caparisoned, and the lady, bidding the king farewell, mounts and rides away.

The King also mounts, but his attendants arrive, having killed the deer.

Being enamoured of the lady, the King dismisses his retinue, and rides after her.

He overtakes her in the forest.

1 Fr. à. 2 Fr. enharnacié. 3 Fr. de. 4 Fr. douceement. 5 Fr. temps.
graciously, & the place within the forest was moche delectable.1 And when the lady herde the noyse of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she said to her servaunt: ‘Stand we sty, and late vs 4 abyde this knight, For I bylue that he cometh vnsto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was nat as tofore aduyseyd, For we sawe hym lepe on his hors all thoughtfuH.’ ‘Madame,’ said the servaunt / 8 ‘at your plaissuer.’ Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnsto the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so surprysed2 of her loue that he coude nat holde conten-12 aunce. Thanne the lady, that knew ynoughe as it was, and that3 she shuld come to her entrepyse / said to hym: ‘Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng’ affir so hastily / hau e I oughte borne away of thyn 16 owne?’ / And when the king herde hym named, he was moche abashed, For he knew nat what she was that spak with hym / and neuertheles he anserued to her: ‘My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / 20 but only that ye passe & goo through my land / and it is gret shame to me / sith that ye be astraunger,4 that I ne doo you to be conuyed worshipfully through my land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were 24 in place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.’ Thenn anserued the lady: ‘Kynge Elynas, I hold you for esused, & pray yf ye wyl of vs none other thinge / that ye leue ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.’ 28 And Elynas anserued / ‘wel other thinge’ I seke, lady’ / ‘And what is it?’ said she’ / ‘telle it to me hardyly.’ ‘My right dere lady, sith that it is your wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. 32 I desire moche more than any other thinge in the world forto hau ye good lone & your good grace.’ ‘By my feith,’ said she, ‘kyng Elynas, to that hau ye

1 Fr. delectable. 2 Fr. surpris. 4 Fr. estrangière.
not faylled / ye that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my loue in his awauntynge.  'Ha, my dere lady, I ne think on my lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady pat he was espried of her loue, & said to hym / 'ye wil take me as your wyf by mariaghe, and be sworn vn to me that ye shal nat see me duryng my childbed, nor to payne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And ye this ye wil doo & swere / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne pe kynge anoone, 12 and with good will, swere & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe rehercyng they were spoused, & lended longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kynge Elynas was moche abashed who was 16 this lady / how be it that she gounerved her wel right wysly & valiauntyly. But Nathas, that was some to the kynge Elynas, hated her ouernoche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughtirs / the whiche she had borne ryght graciously alle her tyme, & was deliuered of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iijth Palatyne. The kynge Elynas 24 was nat thanne present at that place, but kynge Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was meruaylle. and thanne he went toward the kynge his fader / and thus he said to hym: 'Sire / Madame, the queene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is deliuered of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that enuer were seen / comme & see them.' Thenne kynge Helynas, that remembred nat of the promysso 32 that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'fayre sone / so wyl I doo.' And yede apertly & entred anoon within the chambr wheras Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

1 empris.  3 Fr. apertement.
this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the doughters,' & toke of them grette Ioye. And when pressyne erde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou hast faylled thy covenaut, wherof grett euyl shal 4 comme vnto the / and hast lost me for euermore. And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof, & departe I must fro the lightly.\textsuperscript{1} but yet I shalbe auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my 8 lady of the yle lost.' And these thinges said /[she] toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and never aftir she was seen in the land /

Thystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost 12 pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughters, he was so woeful & so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen yere that he dede none other thinge, but compleyned 16 \& sighed, & made grette playntes \& piteous lamentacions for loue cf Pressyne his wyf, whiche he lounyd of lawfull\textsuperscript{2} loue. and the people in hys land said that he was assoetet\textsuperscript{3} and in dede they gane \& betoke the 20 gouvernement over them \& of alle the lande to Nathas his sone. Which governed valauntly, and held hys fader in grette eharyte. And thenne the barons of Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agenty woman, 24 whiche was lady of Ycryt. And of these \textsuperscript{4} two yssued floymond, whiche afterward toke moche of peyne \& traueyyl. Neuertheles, oure hystorye is not enterprysed ne begonne for hym / and therfore we shall hold oure 28 peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

Thistorye saith, that whan Pressyne departed & yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to Avalon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that all 32 had a man ben there many tymes\textsuperscript{5} / yet shuld not he comne retourne thither hymself alone / but byhapp &

\textsuperscript{1} Fr. soudainement. \textsuperscript{2} Fr. loy. \textsuperscript{3} Fr. assoet. \textsuperscript{4} Fr. tant y ent esté de foys.
MELUSINE AND HER TWO SISTERS.

13

grett aventure. And there she nourysshed her thre doyntors vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of age / and ledd them euery mornynge on a high mountaynne whiche was named, as thystory saith & recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in englissh as fllorysshed hyH.1 For from thens she sawe ynough the land of Albany.2 and often said to her 8 thre doyntors, waymentyng & sore wepyng: 'See, my fayre doyntors, yonder is the land wher ye were born / and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath 12 putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of dome, whan god shal punysshe the euyl folk / and the good he shall enhaunse in thire vertues.'

Melusyne, tholdest doyntir, demanded of her moder Pressyne: 'What falshed hath doon fader's wrong, wherby we must endure so longe this greef & sorow?' Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the 20 faytte, so as ye haue herd tofore. And thanne whan Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnder-stode all the faitte or dede, She tourned the talke of her moder, & demanded of her the commodytees of 24 the land / the name of the Cites, tonnes, & Castels of Albany / and rehercyng these things they al descendid doun fro the hyH, & retourned to the yle of Aualon. And thanne Melusyne had & drew 5 apart her two 28 sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to them in this manere: 'My dore sustirs, now loke & byhold we the myserye wherin oure fader hath putt both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att 32 ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

where she brings up her daughters.
She takes them every morning to a high mountain,
called Elyneos,
and shows them the land in which they were born.

Melusyne asks what was their father's wrong doing,
and Pressyne tells them the whole story.

Melusyne then conspires with her sister

1 Fr. montaigne florie. 2 Fr. Y'bornie.
3 Fr. faulcte. 4 Fr. remist sa mere en aultres parolles.
to punish King Elynas for the sorrow he has brought upon them and their mother, by imprisoning him in a mountain of Northumberland.

This they accordingly do;

But when they tell their mother Pressyne, she is very grieved and angry at their unlawful conduct.

7 fol. 7.

my parte I think to auenge me therof / and as lytel myrthe & solas that he hath Impetred tooure moder by hys falshed / as lytel joye I think to purchase vnto hym /.' Thenne her two sustirs ansernde to her in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirof.' And Melusyne said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull to our moder, 8 For by my feyth ye haue said right wel. and I haue aduysed ye it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northumberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there 12 all his lyf.' 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that our moder be auenged of the vnlawfulnes that our fader dede shew vnto her.' 16 Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so mochi, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to their moder, 20 and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche 4 ne care more of the vnlawfulness & falshed of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For he shal yssue ne departe fro 24 the mountayne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and perse he shall waste hys lyf & his tyme with grette doyolour and woo.' '/ Ha / ha / alas!' said their moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you 28 so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed 7 by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all 32 the playsaunce that I had in this mortall world,

1 Fr. impetré. 2 Fr. leal. 3 MS. has 'as.' Fr. toute. 4 Fr. chaloir. 5 Fr. desleauitė. 6 MS. has 'firo.' Fr. car.
whiche ye haue taken fro me. therfore, knowe ye wel that I shall punyssh you of the meryte aftir youre deserte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that 4 oughtest to haue be the most knowyng / all this is comme & doon thrughy thy counseyH, For wel I wot that this pryson hath be gyuen to thy fader by the / and therfore thou shalt be she that shalbe first 8 punysshed therof. For notwithstandyng the vnlawfulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he shuld haue drawn to hym, and ye shuld shortly haue ben out of the handes of the Nymphes & of the 12 fairees, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens fourthon I gyue to the / the gyfte that thou shalt be euery saturday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyll downward / but yf thou fynd ony man pat wil take 16 the to wys wyf / and that he wil promytte to the that neuer on the Satariday he shall see the, ne pat shall declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne / thou shalt lyue thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a 20 naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of highe proesse. but yf by hap or som auenture / thou shuldest be seen & deceyued of thy husband / 24 knowe thou for certayn that thou shuldest retourne to the tournent & peyne wher as thou were in afore / and euery thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that the right highe Iugge shal hold his jugement. And 28 thou shalt appiere by thre dayes byfore the fortresse or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt name it aftir thy name / at euery tyme whan it shall haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy 32 lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a Castel in the grette Armenia, whiche is fayre & riche, wher thou shalt kepe a Sperohak vnto the tyme that the grett maister shall hold his Jugement. And al

1 Fr. japhes. 2 Fr. decellée.
and all knights who shall watch there a certain time without sleep,

shall have any gift they desire,

except herself in marriage.

Those that persist in this last request shall be unfortunate to the ninth generation.

Palatyne is to be imprisoned on Mount Guygo, with the treasure of King Elynas, until one of their lineage shall deliver her, and obtain the treasure.

The sisters then go their several ways.

Be not displeased that I tell you these things.

I will now proceed to the history itself,

but will first tell you how King Elynas ended his days.

After living a long time upon the mountain, he died,

noble and worthy knightes descended & come of noble lynee, that wil goo watche there the day before the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx. day of Iung, without eny slep, shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may haue corporely / that is to wete, of erthly jinges without to demande thy body ne thy loue by maryage nor other wyse. And al theo that shal demande the S without cesse, and that wyll not forbere & absteymne them pere of / shalte infortunate vnto the ix. lynee, and shul be putt from theire prosperityes / And thou shalt be closed, palatyne, & shette on the mountayn of 12 Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the tyme that a knight shal come of our lynee whiche shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete & conquer the land of promyssion / & shal deleyure 16 the from thens /' Thenne were the thre sustirs full heuy of herte & sorowfull, & departed fro theire moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone thrue the forest & thikk bushes. Melyor also 20 departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the mounteyn of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen her / And I myself herd it say of the kinge of 24 Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And be nat you displesed yt I haue recounted vnto you this auenture, For it is for to adioust more of feyth, & for to veryfy this story, And fro hens fourthon I 28 wil entre into the matere of the very & true hystory, but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas fynysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne his wyf buryed hym within the said mountayn in a 32 moche noble tombe, as ye shal here heraftir. /

Onge tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said mountayn in so moschi, that deth which bringeth euery

1 Fr. juing.
personne to an ende toke hym. Thanne came his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, pat neuer byfore ne syn that tyme was seen none suche ne so riche. For on the tombe were riches without comparacion as of precyous stones and other Jewellis / and about it were grett & highe Candelstykes of fyn gold, 8 and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day & nyght continually. And on the said tombe stood vp right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas / 12 and the said ymage held in her handes a table1 of gold, whereon was writen the forsaid aventure. And there the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the sauegarde of the tresoure before said / the whiche Geaunt was wounnder fyers & horruble, and al the Countre therabout he held vnder his subjection. And also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the tyme & commyng of Geffray with the grett toth / of 20 the whiche ye shall more here herafter. Now haue ye herde of the King2 Elynas and of Pressyne his wyf. And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the trouth of thistory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel 24 of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere hit was bilde & made./

Thistory recounteth to vs that there was somtyme in the Brut Brytayne2 a noble man whiche fell at 28 debate with the nevew of the king3 of Bretons. and in dede he durst therefore nomore dwelle within the land / but toke with hym al his fyynaunce & goodes, and went out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as 32 telleth thistorye he founde on a day nygne by a fontayne a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune & aduenture / so that fyñally they enamoured3 eche other,

1 Fr. tablier.  2 Fr. la brute bretaigne.  3 Fr. s'amouèrent.
and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto hym mosch comfort. and he began within her land, that was wast & deserte for to byld & make fayre tounes & strong Castels. and was the land within a short tyme peupled rasonably / And they dide calle the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of grett wodes & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady fell at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and notwithstandinge he grew & encreaced euer in worship and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land / seeynge that they were without a lady purveyed hym of oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir to the Earle of Poitiers, which regned at that tyme, & he begate on her many children males. emonge the whiche was oon / that is to wete the iijde borne, whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly & gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And that same tyme the said Raymondin might be xiiiij yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste that he made of his sone./

The Erle of Poyters held a grett feste of a sone that he had, and wold hauve made hym to be dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery] manded & desyred a moch fayre company for loue of the knighthode of his sone / and amonges other he bode 32

2 Fr. iceluy temps.
3 Fr. pour.
5 omitted by the translator.
& prayed the Erle of Forests to come to the feste, & that he shuld bring with him thre of his sones, the oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Erle of Forestz went at his mandement in the moost honourable wyse that he coude, and with hym he led thre of his sones. The feste was grette, and there were made and dowbed many a knight for louve of Bertrand, some 8 to the Erle of Poyters, that was pat day proferred to thonourable & worshipfull ordere of knighthood. And also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, theoldest sone of the Erle of Forrestz, for he jousted moche wel 12 & fayre. And was the fest continued and holden the space of viij dayes. And the Erle of Poyters made & gaf many & moche fayre & grett yeftes. 1And at the departynge of the feste the Erle of Poyters demanded 16 of the Erle of Forrestz, & prayed hym to leue with hym Raymondin his newe, and that he shuld neuer care for hym For he wold puruey for him wel. And the erle of Forrestz granted it / and thus dwelled the said 20 Raymondyn with the Erle of Poyters his vnkle, that loued hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende moche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth thisy ery to spek of the Erle of Forests, whiche re- 24 tourned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto his Countre. And begynnethoure hystory to pro- cede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of Raymondyn./

28 Cap. III. How a forester camme to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruyllous wildbore that euer was sen before./

32 Thystorye certyffyth to vs and also the veray Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader

1 In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.
to saynt William that was Erle, and left al worldly possessyons for to serueoure Creatour, and toke on hym the ordre & Religion of the whit mauntelles, an ordre or Religion so called. And therof I wil not make grett locucion or talking; But I will procede fourth on our matere, and to spek of the Erle Emery. Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued enuer 8 noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of Astronomye that was in hys dayes, ne byfore syn that Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery regned / thistory sheweth to vs that [he] coude many a 12 science, & specially he was parfytte in the science of Astomy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that he loued so moche his nevew Raymondin that he might no more. and so dide the child his vncle, and peyned 16 hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth that this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al maneres. and [it] befell as thistory recounteth that 20 oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & demanded or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best 24 & fayrest dysport that eny gentylman shuld euere haue. ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle, ‘these tydynges plaist me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.’ ‘My lord,’ 28 said the Forester, ‘at your playsire.’ And al thus he departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that apar- teyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had apoynted."

1 Fr. que de mout de sciences estoit plain.
2 Fr. denoncier.
Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym.

AND when the day was come that Erle Emery with grette foyson of barons and knightes departed out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euer byside hym on a gret Courser the swerde girded about hym and the shede heheouer hys sholder. And when they were comme to the Forest they byganne fourthwith to hunte, And the wildbore was found that was fel & proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke his cours throuth the Forest, For he was strongly chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothinge / but meuyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne was so hardy a dogge ne hound that durst abyd hym, ne so hardy a hunter that durst hold the spere styl anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne camme bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer oon was there so hardy that he durst sette foot on the grounde for to withstande & haue launched at hym. Thenne camme the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng, 'shal this swyne abasshe us all?' And whan Raymondyn herde thus spek hys vncl, he was in hymself vergoynouse and shamed / and alighted from his courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore, and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the bore dressed toward hym and made hym to fall on hys knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu hardy and valyaunt wold hane broched and thrust hys swyrd within the booris heest / but the bore fledd, and so fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound but that he lost the sight of hym, but alone Raymondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed

Earl Emery, his nephew Raymondyn, and many knights

1 fol. 10 b.

They come upon the boar,

but the dogs and the knights are afraid of him.

Earl Emery cries, 'Shall this swine abasshe us all?'

Raymondyn, ashamed, dismounts,

and attacks the boar,

which runs away;

Raymondyn follows on horseback,

2 Fr. filz de truye. 3 Fr. vergoune. 4 Fr. preus.
leaving all the hunters behind.

His uncle, afeard, gallops to him, and bids him give up the chase,

but Raymondin heeds not;

and the hunt continues.

The horses fag, leaving Earl Emery and his nephew alone on the track.

They rest under a tree,

from which the Earl studies the sky,

and praises God,

the bore that he outrannte all thou that were at the chase, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone. Wherof the Erle, his uncle, was afered les that the bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped aftir his nevev Raymondin and with a high voyce escryed hym. 'Fayre nevev, leve this chasse, and cursed be he that announced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt you I shall neuer have joye in my herte.' But Ray-8 mondyn, whiche was chaffed, doubted not of hys lyf, ne toke heede to none ouyl Fortune that might befall to hym therof but euere withoute cesse folowed the said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed 12 euere hys nevev. What shuld auayll yf herof I shuld make a longe tale. Alle there horses byganne to be chaffed and very, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe 16 that the nyght seH on them. Thanne the Erle & his nevev stode styl and rested þem vnder a grette tree. And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondin, 'Fayre nevev here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.' And Ray-20 mondyn said to hym, 'Sire, aftir your wille shall I doo.' And soone aftir roos the moone fayre and bright./ Thenn the Erle that knew moche of the science of Astronomy dide loke & behelde the skye and 24 sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none obscure or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynes said in this 28 manere. 'Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how grette ben the meruayles that thou haste lefte here bynethe / as to knowe parfytly bothe the vertues & the nature of many wounder and dyuerese condycions 32 of things, and of there significacions or betoknynges. This might not be perfytly known, yf thou shadd nat vpon the men somewhat of thy full & deuyn grace,

1 Fr. eschaffé.
And specially of this meruayllous adventure, the which I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast created & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of the whiche by thy grace pou hast lente to me oon braunche of knowlege whereof I oughte to preyse / to thanke and to regracy1 the hertily in thy highe mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray & highe sire, how might this be razonably as to knowlege humayne without it were by thy terrible jugement, For no man shuld not mowe haue & recyue wel for 12 to do euer euyl. And notwithstanding I see & perceyue wel by 2the highe science of Astronomy / of whiche somme vnderstandyng I haue / to me leued3 of thy pure grace what hit segnyfyeth or betokneth, 16 wherof moche meruailled I am.' These wordes said / the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly than he dide byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde 20 the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd / said to hym in this manere / 'My lord, the fyre is wel kyndled,comme and warme you. and I bylere that within a while we shall haue somme tydynges of your meyne, 24 For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges,' 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he behelde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And 28 Raymondyn put so moche loued hym, said to hym / 'Ha / ha / my lord, for godis loue lette that thinge be, For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be, For to putte or sette hys herte thereto / ne for to en- 32 quyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it behowyth to you, and that shalbe wel doon to regracye, and to thanke god of that he hath puruyed you and promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

1 Fr. gracier. 2 fol. 11 b. 3 Fr. presté.
EAUL
And our lord, and By yet man and spak of oil. nisten-
Raymondin asks what they are.

The Earl says, that if a subject were to slay his lord, then
that subject would found a noble line.

Raymondin answers, that he cannot believe it, because it is against right and reason.

While they speak they hear a great affray;

they stop and listen;

oure is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to take ouy sorowe or beuynes of suche things that may not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fole,' said the Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette meruaylles & 4 wounderfull aventure that I see, thou shuldest be al abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl, answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I 8 may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world shuld demande of the nothings of it / and that that aventure shuld befaH to the, on myn owne self / For 12 from hens fourth I am old and haue frenedys ynoouge for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I loue the so moche that I would that so grett a worship were haped to thee / And the aventure is suche / that yf at the same 16 oure a sugeth dide sleye hys lord he shuld becomme the moost mighty and moost worshiped that euer camme out of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede and yssue so subtle a lynee / that of it shuld be 20 mencionu and remembrance made vnto thende of the world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth which I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn that neuer he shuld moue byleue that it were trouth / 24 and that it were aynest al right and reason / that a man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,' said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I telle to the.' 28 'By my feith,' said Raymondin / 'yet shall I nat by-

while they speak they hear a great affray;
CH.-V.] RAYMONDIN SLAYS HIS UNCLE, EARL EMERY OF POITIERS. 25

a state they abode tyl that they sawe a wounder grette & horryble bore moche chaffed commyngse toward them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, cleme 4 you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you, and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche auenture al alone.' And when Raymondyn herde this, he went 8 & stode byfore the bore hauyng hys swerd on his feet,1 and wilfuH2 for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette 12 hope that therof camme aftirward to hym, As the very & trew history recounteth to vs.

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncl.

16 3 In this part recounteth thistory, that whan Ray-
mondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche 20 seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefte his swerd, and toke a short spere, and strayght held it dounward before hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the chasse, broched the bore thrughe the brest / but the 24 Erle fell doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn, holdyng hys swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the four*4 legges, For he leye vpsodounne the bely vpward. and suche 28 a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which 32 was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

1 Fr. l'espée au poing, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'
2 Fr. par bonne voulenté de la destruire.
3 Fr. quatre.
yet perceyuyng his mortal werk / toke the spere, &
so strongly broched it thrughe the bore, that he slew
hym. But whan he dide loke toward his vnkle, and
that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold haue 4
had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.
he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the
s werd, and knew that it was hys dede /. Moche
meruyllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighe & 8
to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng in
this manere: ‘Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche art
thou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slayn by me
hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me 12
so moche good? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal
now be the land where this harde & false synner shal
mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here
spak of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good 16
right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne
more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe
cleue & open the / & deououre thou me fourtwth, and
lete me faill with the moost obscure & derk angel 20
within helle, but somtyme was the fayrest of all other
in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.’ In this dolour
& woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was
moche poughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, 24
& said in this manere / ‘My lord & vnkle, that lyeth
deed yonder, sayd to me / that yf suche an aventure
shuld commne to me, that I shuld be worshiped more
than ony man of my lynage. But I now see wel al the 28
contrary / For truly I shalbe ye moost vnhappy &
dyshonoured man that euery was borne of woman / and
by my feyth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison
& right. But notwithstanding syth that now it may 32
none operwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this
land, and shal goo som wher for to purchasse myn
aduenture, suche as god wil send to me in to somme
good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my 36
CII.  

RAYMONDIN RIDES TO THE FAIRY FOUNTAIN OF SOIF.

27

Raymondin sadly kisses his dead lord,

And thanne Raymondyn camme to hys lord / and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heuy & woeful herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only worde 4 for all the gold in the world /. And soone aftir that he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way through the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted, & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he went / but only by hap & att auenture, And made suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world that coude thinke ne sey the vth part of hys dolour /.

12 Whan Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and the wild bore also / he rode so longe through the Forest, euer wepyng and complaynyng so sore that it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontayne of fayerye, named pe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the Countre per about called hit the fontayne of fayerye, bycause that many a meruaylle felt & happed there many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontaynne in a wonderfull & meruayllous place / and ouer it was a rocli of meruayllous height / and al alonge the said Fontaynne was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest. And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shynne at that tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Raymondyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor aduys he had of nothing, for cause of the gret dysplaysaunce that he had within hym self. And notwithstanding that he slept, hys hors ledd hym in this state so longe that he was comme wel nygh to the fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre] ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse & lady ouer them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek aftir that thistory telleth.

He falls asleep on his horse, 1 fol. 14.

where three ladies disport themselves.

till he comes nigh to the fairy Fountain of Soif.

leaps on his horse, and rides through the forest.

which journeys on to the fountain.

Raymondin

sadly kisses his dead lord,
MELUSINE SEES RAYMONDIN ASLEEP ON HORSEBACK.  [CH. VI.

Cap. VI. How Raymondin camme to the Fontayne of soyl, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other lades with her.

HISTORY saith, that so longe bare the hors Ray·mondyn thus pensefull\(^1\) \& heuy of herte of the myshap that was comme to hym, that he ne wyst where he was, ne whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, 8 For Raymondin touched 2 not the brydelt / and herd no saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And thus he passed byfore the fontayne where the lades were, without hauyng eny sight of them. but the 12 hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afayed, and feldd thens, rannyng moche fast. And thanne she that was the gretest lade of them thre, sayd in this manere: 'By my feyth, he that rode now \& passed byfore vs, semeth to be a moche gentyl man / and, neuertheles, he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed so before lades without to haue saledw them.' And 20 all this said she feynyngly / to thende that the other shuld nat perceyue to what things she tended, For she wyst \& knew wel how it was with hym, as ye shal here say in thistory herafter. And thanne she gan 24 say to the other: 'I goo to make hym spek, For he semeth to be asleep.'\(^3\) She departed fro the other two lades, and yede to Raymondyn, and toke the hors by the brydell \& made hym to stand styl, and 28 said in this manere: 'By my feyth, sire vassal, hit commeth to you of grette pryde or of grette rudesse for to passe byfore ony lades without spekyng or somme salutacion / how be it that bothe rudesse \& pryde may be in you.' And the lady cessed as thenne of her wordes / but Raymondyn herde nor vnderstod, ne

\(1\) Fr. pensif.  \(2\) fol. 14b.  \(3\) 'a sheep' in MS.
answer'd her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd ones ayen to hym: 'And how, sire musarde, are ye so dyspytous that ye dayne nat answer to me?' And yet 4 he answer'd neuer a word. 'By my feith,' sayd she within her self, 'I byleue none other / but that this yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to 8 spek, yf he euer spak byfore.' And thenne she toke and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere: 'Sire vassal, ye slep.' Thanne Raymondin was astonyed and affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh 12 hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerde, wenying to hym that it had be hys vnclis meyne, that wold haue take and slayn hym. And the lady thanne percyued wel that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan 16 to say to hym, 'Sire vassal, with whom wyl you bigynne the bataille? / your enemys ben not here, And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or syde?' And whan Raymondin herd her spek, he be- 20 held her, and percyued the gret beaulte that was in her, and toke of hit gret meruayll, For it semed to hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre. And thenne Raymondin descendid from hys hors, and 24 bowed hys knees, and made reuerence vnto her, and said: 'My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce & vylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly I haue mystaken ouermoche anenst your noble personne. And neuertheless, I ne sawe ne herd neuer what ye haue said tyl that ye toke me by the hand. and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto 28 god I pray deuoutly that amends I may make vnto you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be out of this peyne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the lady / 'it is wel said, For as 36 for to bygynne eny thinge, the name of god most first
The lady asks Raymondin where he travels to;

he says he has lost his way,

but she calls him by his name, and tells him not to deceive her.

This abashes Raymondin.

The lady recounts to him his adventure,

which abashes him yet more.

He asks how she knows of it.

be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardily to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you knowe not the way / wel I shalH dresse you to it / For there nys neyther way ne path but that I knowe it wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardily.' 'By my feith,' said Raymondyn, 'gramerce, lady, of 8 your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady, sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that 12 he2 kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym: 'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not liyde nothinge fro me, For I wot wel how it staudeth with you.' And thenne when Raymondyn herd that she 16 named hym by hys owne name, he was so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she pat sawe wel that he was shamfull of that she had named hym, and that she wyst so moche of hys secret & 20 Counseyff, sayd to hym in this manere: 'Forsouthe, Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best counsylle the / and that may furthe and enhaume the in this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes 24 most be tourned in to wele / nought auaylleth to the for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wylfully / how be it that at that oure thou supposest not 28 to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he told vnto pe of the arte of Astronomeye, wherin duryng hys lyf he was right expert.' When Raymondyn herde this he was more abasshed than he was tofore / 32 and said to the lady: 'Right dere lady, ye tofore / 32 which abashes him yet more.

He asks how she knows of it.

2 'she' in MS.
who told it so soone to you? And she answered to hym in this manere: 'Be not thou abasshed therof, For I knowe the full truth of thy faytte. And wene 

nor suppose thou nat that it be fauntesye or dyuels werk of me and of my words, For I certyfye the, Raymondyn, ¹that I am of god, and my byleue is / as a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. and I lete the 

8 to wete that without me and my counseyll / thou mayst not comme to thende of thy faytte. but yf thou wilt byleue stedyfastly all that thyn vnclle Emerye said vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, with the help of 

god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make the for to be the gretes lord that euer was of thy lynage, and the grestest and best lyuelod ² man of them aH.' Whan Raymondyn vnderstoode the promyse of the 16 the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord told vnto hym. And consydering within hym self the grete parels ³ wherein he was as exilled and banysshed out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym- 

20 self] ⁴ that he shuld take thauenure for to byleue the lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in 

this manere: 'My right dere lady, I thanke you moche of the promyse that ye do and profyre to me. For ye shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by me for no traueyll that ye can aduyse / but that I 

shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be doo / and that a cristen man may, or ought to doo, with honour.' 'By my feyth, Raymondin,' said the lady / 'that is said of free herte, For I shall not say 

nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shal comme therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf. and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of 

¹ Not by witch-craft, ² Fr. terrion. ³ Fr. pérélz. ⁴ Fr. s'advisa.
raymondin promises to marry melusine. [CH. VI.

god."¹ And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, &
sware in this manere, ‘Lady dere / by my feith / sith
that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shal doe aftir² my
power all that ye wyl commaund me for to doo / And 4
indide I lawfully³ promytte you that so shal I doo.’
‘Yet Raymondyn,’ sayd she, ‘ye most swere another
things.’ ‘What it is, my lady,’ said Raymondyn, ‘I
am redy / yf it be thinge that goodly I may doo.’ 8.
‘ye,’ said she, ‘and it may not tourne to you to no
dommage⁴ / but to all wele. Ye muste promytte to
me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacraments & othes that
a man very catholique & of good feith may doo and 12.
swere, that neuer while I shalbe in your company, ye
shal not peyne ne force your self for to see me on the
Saturday / nor by no manere ye shal not enquerye that
day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.’ And whan 16
she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to
her in this manere : ‘On the parel of my sowle I swere
to you / that neuer on yat day I ne shal doo nothing
that may hyndre ne adommage⁵ you in no manere of 20
wyse’ / ‘and I,’ said she, ‘ne shal doo nor thinke to
none other thing⁶ but in what manere I shall mowe
best encresse in worship and honour, both you and
your lynne.’ And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her 24:
in this manere, ‘Soo shal I doo it to the playsire of
god.’

¹ Fr. de par Dieu. ² Fr. deaulment. ³ Fr. promytte. ⁴ Fr. prejudice. ⁵ Fr. soit en vosre prejudice.
the chasso was at the strengest, and when ye lost hym" / and semblaunt ye most mak to be abasshed more than any other. And soone after shul comme the 4 hunters and other of hys meyne, and shal brynge with them the corps deed within a litere / & his woundes shal seme to every man aduys to be made by the wildbores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore 8 hath slayn hym, And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardy & valiaunte dede. thus the dolour & woo shal bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his 12 sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & alle oper of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shal ye doo with them. and ye shall putte on you the blak gowne as they shall. And aftir 16 this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shall comme for to doo their obeyesaunce & homage vnto the yong Erle, ye shal retourne hither to mo the day before the lordes & barons make theire 20 homage / and that tyme att this same place ye shal fynde me.\textsuperscript{1} Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: 'Hold, my redoubted frend!/' 24 for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyne you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche approprieté, that he to whomme hit shal be gyuen by paramours\textsuperscript{2} or loue, shal not dy 28 by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al 32 be it pletyng in Courtes, or fyghtyng in feldes,\textsuperscript{3} or ellis whersoever it be; and thus, my frend, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embraced & kyssed her swetly & moch frendly

\textsuperscript{1} fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

and will mourn,

which Raymondin must do too.

\textsuperscript{2} Fr. par amours.  
\textsuperscript{3} Fr. en plaidoirie ou meslé.

E.

\textsuperscript{4} H.-C.
Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers.

Raymondyn lepte vpon his hors, and the lady dressed and putte hym in to the high way of Poytiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at departyng Raymondyn was ful sory, For he loued alredy so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer haue be with her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the said lady returned toward the said Fontaynme, where the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of which ladyes thystorye leueth here to speke./

Now saith thystorye, that Raymondyn rode so fast that soone he was comme into Poytiers, where he founde many one that were retourned fro the chasse, which demanded of hym, 'where is my lord?' And thranne Raymondyn / 'is he not comme?' / and they answered 'nay.' And he said to them, 'I sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and that the bore scaped fro the houndes.' And while that they spak of this mater among them alle / the hunters & other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondyn had sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche a chasse, ne so horryble a bore. And many one said that the bore was comme fro somme other land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how
the Erle taryed so longe, and they went to the yate for to see if he camme, & abode hym *per a longe space, and euer camme folk that said as the other had sayd / 4 and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the people of Poyters woofull & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that taryed so longe / and specyally the Countesse, the said 8 Erlis wyf. but more woofull & heuyer they were within a lytel while after./

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere.

12 T Hystorye 1 telleth vnto vs, that so longe they abode at the gate with Raymondyn, that they sawe commynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of people. and as they dide approach & camme nygh, they hera 16 and vnderstood the piteous voyces of them, wherof they were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubte lest that they shuld hawe hadd som trouble or somme empeschement.2 And so longe they abod?, that they 20 whiche bare the corps of their lord camme vnto them, sore lamentyng & piteously waylyng, sayeng 1 to them in this manere: 'wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe you all in blak, For the bore hath slayn our good lord, 24 the Erle Emerye.' And after the corps camme two hunters, that bare the grette bore. and thus they entred into the Cite, makyng grette sorowe. And alle the people of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, by- 28 ganne pyteously to crye / sayeng in this manere: 'Ha/ ha, cursed be he of god that first announced this chasse.' The sorow & dolour was there so grete that no man sawe 2neuer no greter. And making suche sorowe camme 32 vnto the Palleys / and there was the Corps leyed. And bycause one oughte not to kepe ne mayntenne longe 2 Fr. empeschement.
sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouer grete sorow / and so dide the Barons and aft the Comynalte of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth. 

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hoop & comfort of his lady, he had not mue withhold hym self, 8 but pat he had sayd vnto them al hys auenture, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vnkle and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere. Soone thosbsequye was doon moche nobly & 12 richely within the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost peir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they 16 fourthwith toke the said borne, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that within foure dayes\(^1\) it is somwhat peased / the barons of the 20 land thanne yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children aftir theire power / and so moche they dide that hys grete sorowe was somwhat peased. But pe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & wexed more and 24 more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete loue of whiche he loued hys vnkle. It was thanne ordeyned & concluded by the CounseyH that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to 28 comme at a certayn day for to doo theire homage to theyre graciously lord, the sone of the said late Erle. And assone\(^2\) as Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred within the 32 Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenant vnto his lady. 

\(^1\) Fr. *trois jours.*

\(^2\) fol. 19 b, on knowledge of which Raymondin returns to his land.
Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before.

Hystory telleth to vs that so longe rode Raymondsyn that he camme into the Forest of Coulombyers, & passed thrughi the lytel toune, & went vpon the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued the medowes whiche were vnder the roche, that was aboue the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of stone in a manere of a Chapel. And knowe ye that Raymondsyn had be there many [a] tyme, but neuer tofore he had seen it / and went neuer to hit; And before the place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers whiche made to hym grete feste and prayed hym gretly. Wherfor he muchaylled gretly, For one of them said to hymme: 'Sire, alight & come toward my lady that abydeth aftir you within her pauyllon or tente.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondyn / 'hit plaisteth me wel so for to doo.' Soone he descendid from hys hors & yede with them, which conueyed hym toward the lady moche honbrably. And thanne the lady camme to mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed of parement moche ryche / and all the other abode without. Thanne byganne the lady for to raisonne with Raymondyn, & said to hym in this manere: 'My dere frende, wel I wote that wel ye haue hold alle that I introduysed, or 28 taught you of, And therfore fro hens fourthon I shall trust you the more.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn / 'I haue founde so good a bygynnyng in your wordes, that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake / but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.' 'Raymondyn,' said she / 'for me ye shall vndertake and he in her.'
A knight announces dinner;

Raymondin marvels at the great company,

1 fol. 20 b.

and asks his lady whence they came.

She tells him they are at his service.

After dinner his lady leads Raymondin beside the bed;

where she tells of the homage that is to be done to Earl Bertrand.

Raymondin is to go to Poitiers, but to let every one do homage before he does,

no thing’, but that of it ye shal comme to your worship /.’ Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneled before her / and after his reverence made / dressed hys wordes toward her, & said: ‘My lady, al thing is 4 redy / ye shal comme whan it playse you.’ And the lady ansuerde & said / ‘Couere your heed, fayre sire.’ Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe theire handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the 8 sayd panyllon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and whan Raymondyn saw this appareyll, he meruaylled moche / and demanded of hys lady fro whens so grete a felawship 12 was comme vnto her. And to hys demande the lady ansuered nothing. Wherfore Raymondyn asked of her ayen, ‘My lady, fro whens are comme vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes? ’ ‘By my feth, Raymondyn, 16 my frend’, sayd the lady, ‘it is no nede to you for to be meruaylled therof, For they be all at your commandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.’ Thanne held Raymondyn 20 hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that meruayl it was to see it. And when they had dyned, they weshe theire handes / and graces said & all thinges doon / the lady 24 toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the beed, & euerychon voydeth the panyllon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate /.

Thanne said the lady to Raymondyn: ‘My frend, to morowe is the day that the barons shal comme for to doo theire homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & 32 shal doo as I shal telle you, yt it playse you so to doo / Now vnderstand & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde per vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self 36
fourth byfore the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal demande a yeiste, for the salary & remuneracion of alle the seruyse that enuer ye dide vnto his fader. And 4 telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym nothre toune, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete value. and I wote wel that he shal acoorde or graunt it to you. For the barons shalle counseylle hym for to 8 doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche & about it / as moche of ground as the hyde or skynne of a hert may compreheunde./ and freely he shal gyne it 12 to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor empesche you therof, by reason of 1homage, nother by charge of rente or other ordynance, and when he shall haue graunted it to you, take prerof his lettres, 16 vnder lys grete Seele, and vnder the seelles of the peris, 2 or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan that al this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next folowing after that / as ye shalbe comying homward 20 agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which shal bere within a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye shalbye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoch as the said man shal aske you for it / and after ye shal make it 24 for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge. And after, lette your place be deluyere vnto you / the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerued, and all 28 the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal plaise me for to be / And as for to bryng the two endes of the sayd thong 3 of the hyde togidre about the said place / ye it happe that grete ground may be comp- 32 pryed within it ye shall doo it to be leyd downward vnto the valey / & there, at both theudes of the said thonge or leder shal sympathy out of the roche a Fayre fon- tayme, whiche in tyme to comme shalbe full necessary

and at last he is to ask from Bertrand a gift of the rock, and as much land as a hart's skin can cover,

1 fol. 21.

Raymondin is to buy a skin of a man he will meet,

and have it cut into a thong, then get the land delivered,

and lay the thong down, when a fountain will spring out where the ends meet.

2 Fr. pers. 3 courroie.
Then he is to return.

Raymondin sets out for Poitiers.

Thenne anserde, 'My lady, after my power I shal fulfylle al jouysire'/ And thenne they embraced 8 and kyssed eche other / and toke one of other. Here cesseth thystory of them / and begynneth for to spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke hys hors, and rode toward Poitiers as 1hastly as he myght./*

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym./*

Raymondin rides to Poitiers, where he finds many barons,

THystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so longe that he camme vnto Poytiers, wheras he founde many a high baron, which were comme there for to make homage to the yong Erle Bertrand / and they dyde grete honour and reverence to Raymondyn, and pressured hym right moche. And the next morow they yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where the deuyne seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And 24 atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle requested lyke a Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys deuoyre as it apparteined / and that of custome was for to be doo. Thenne cam the barons 2tofore hym / 28 and there one after another, and eche one after hys degre rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne, after alle these things were doon / Raymondin putte hymself fourth before the barons / and with meke & 32 humble contenauence or manere, said to them: 'Emong'
you, my lordes, nobles, Barons of the Countre 1 or Erle-
dom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the
requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord
4 the Erle. and yf it seme you 2 to be lawfull & raison-
nable / I beseche that it playse you for to pray hym to
graunt it to me.' And the Barons answerd with right
a good witH, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altoigidre
8 went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyn spake
first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere:
'Eight dere sire, humbly I beseche and requere you,
that in remuneracion, or reward, of alle the seruyses
that ever 12 I dide vnto my lord, your fader / on whos sowle god
haue mercy, ye vouchesaf of your benigne & noble
grace for to gyve to me a yeft, the whiche shall cost
you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne
do nothinge of grette valew.' Thanne answerd the Erle, 'yf it
playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.'
And the Barons said to hym in this manere: 'Sire,
20 syn it is thyng of so lityl valewe, as he speketh of,
ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel
worthy therof, and wel he hath deserved it.' And the
Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-
24 seylle me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the
Erles to Raymondyn, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he,
'gramercy.' 3 Other yeft[e I ne axe of you, but þat ye
wyl gyue to me, about the fontaynne of soif that is
28 nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the
hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehende or 4goo
aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said
penne the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you.
32 I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, without rede-
unaunce nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my
successours for evermore.' Thenne Raymondyn kneeled

1 Fr. messignours, nobles barons de la conté.
2 Fr. se il vous semble. 3 Fr. grans mercis.

Raymondyn tells the barons he intends to make a request to the Earl.

He says he asks nothing of great value, only as much land as a hart's skin can compass.

4 fol. 22b.

The Earl grants the request.
THE BARONS HAVE A FEAST.

and gives letters of gift,

sealed by the Earl and Barons.

They hold a feast

until they go to rest.

At mass Raymondyn prays for a good end to his enterprise.

& thanked hym ryght humbly / and requyred of hym letters of hys gyfte, the which were graunted & made in the best and moost surest wyse that could be denysed / and were Seelde of the grette Seal of the 4 Erle, by thassent and relacion of alle the Barons of the land / whiche also dide putte theire Seelles therto.

Thanne they departed fro the chirche of Saynt Hylary of Poytiers, and yede fourth vnto the halle, where the 8 feste was grete and joyous, and swete melody was there herd? of almaner Instruments of Alusyqwe. And of many & dyuerse meets they were serued at the table. And after dyner the Erle gaaf grette yeftes / And wel trouth it is, that it was sayd j>e? of many one, that among alle the other Raymondyn was the moost curtoys / moost graveous, and of fayrest contenaunce. And thus passed the day tyl the nyght camme that everychon went to take hys reste. And on the mornne next they roos and yede for to herse masse vnto the Abbey of Montiers / and there Raymondyn prayed god deuoutly inondin for a good ende, and to the saluacion of his sowle & prouffyt of hys body. And he abode within the chirche, makynge hys prayers vnto thoure of Pryme./

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skyyne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it /

1 fol. 23.

Raymondyn finds a man with a hurt's skin to sell.

N ow telleth thystorye to vs, that whan Ray-mondyn had herd hys masse, and that he had ended his prayere / he went out of the chirche / and at thyssue of thabbey byond the Castel he found a man whiche bare within a sac vpon hys bak the hyde of an hert, which man camme toward Raymondyn, and said to hym in this manere. *Sire, wyl ye bye this
hertis skynne that I haue within my sack, for to make good huntyng cordes for your hunters.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said Raymondyn / ‘ye / yf thou wilt selle it; 4 and at one word¹ what shall I paye for hit? ’ ‘By my feyth, sire,’ said the man, ‘ye shall paye to me for it ten shelynges, or ellis ye shall not haue it.’ ‘Frend,’ said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / ‘bryng it 8 home with me and I shall pay the there.’ And he answerd, ‘With a good wille.’ Thanne he folowed Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he deluyered his hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone 12 after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,² to whom he said: ‘My frend, yf it plese ³you, ye muste cutte this hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narowest & smallest wyse that is possible to be doo.’ The Sadler dide cutte 16 it, and after they leyd it agayn within the sac thus cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the materie.⁴ It is trouth that they whiche were commytted for to deluyere to Ramondyn his yefte, rode, and Ray- 20 mondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so long⁵ that they cam vnto the roche that standeth ouer the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng⁶ was made within the harde roche / and they found al 24 about it gretre trees throwen doun to the ground⁷, wherof they were gretly meruaylled, For it was out of mans mynde that euer trees were cutte there aboute. Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had 28 wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were within the medowe they toke the thonge out of the sac ./

¹ Fr. en ung mot. ² Fr. sellier. ³ Que feroya ores plus long prolongation.
Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned camme and deluyer to Raymondyn his yefte ./

Han they that shuld deluyer the yefte saw the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle 4 abasshed / and said to Raymondyn pat they wyst not what to doo / And there incontynent camme to them two men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this manere. 'We are comme hither for to helpe you.' Thanne 8 they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto the bottomme of the valley, as nigh the roche as they coude / and there they dide sette a stake in the erthe, and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / 12 and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and when they were comme ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete remenant of the thonge / and for to sette and fournysse the it they drew it downward to the valey / and so fer they went with it, that they camme to the ende of it. And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth / 20 there sprange at [the] ende of the said thonge a fayre fontayn, the which rendred so moche of watre that a ryuere waxed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle dyde Grynde corne / and yet now Grynden. Thanne 24 they that were there sent for to deluyere to Raymondyn the place, were moche abasshed / aswel of the fontayne that they saw spryng sodaynly before them, as of the grete compasse of the ledder, whiche conteyned wel the 28 space of two mylles of grounde./

T Historye to vs recounteth that they whiche were ordonned for to deluyere the said yefte, as byfore is said, were moche abasshed whan they sawe the 32 watre spryng sodaynly & ranne al alonge 2 fourth by the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete grounde that the thonge compassed. but nevertheles
they deluyered to Raymondyn the ground that was
guyen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys lettres.
And as soone as they had deluyered it, they wylst neuer
4 where the said two men that were comme there for to
helpe hem became, ne whither they were goon.

Thanne they departed alle togidre, for to haue re-
tourned vnto Poyters, where as whan they were
8 comme, they dide telle and recounte vnto the Erle and
to his moder this meruayllous aventure. And thanne
the lady said to her sonne in this manere: 'Byleue thou neuer of no thinge me of that I shal say1 / but yf
12 Raymondyn hath founde somme aventure in the Forest
of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyme full
of moche meruayllous auentures.' And the Erle an-
ansuerd: 'by my feyth my lady / I byleue well that
16 ye say trouth / and long syn I haue herd say that
aboe the fontayne that is vnder the same roche,
men hath seen faH & happ many a wounded and mer-
uayllous adventures. but as to hym, I praye to god
20 that he may enjoye it to hys honour and proufflyt.'
'Amen,' said the ladye. As they spake thus togidre,
Raymondyn arryuëd / whiche kneeled soone byfore the
Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that
24 he had doon to hym. 'By my feyth, Raymondyn,' said the Erle, 'ye thanke me of a lytil thing, but
betre I shalldoo to you, with godis grace, in tyme to
come.' 'Now, my frend Raymondyn,' said the Erle,
28 'it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous aventure
which is happed as of present in the place that I
haue doon to be deluyered to you by my yfte. Where-
fore I praye you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very
32 trouth of hit.' 'My feyth,' sayd Raymondyn. 'My
right dere lord / yf they that at 2 your commandement
haue deluyered the place to me haue not told you
of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

1 Fr. Ne me croy jamais de chose que je die.
Raymondin tells of the marvellous spring, and the compass of the thong, and says that he loves to dwell by the fountain; Neuertheless it is trouth that the space of grounde compassed aboute with the hyde conteyneth two mylles. And as for the two men whiche camme there clothed with cours cloth, and haue holped for to compasse & to 4 mesure the place / and also of the ryuere whiche soundred sodaynly / of alle this, my lord, it is pure trouth. 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle, 'ye telle to vs a grete meruaylle /'. In good feyth, 8 Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye most nedes haue founde som aduenture, and I pray you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 12 'yet haue I not founde but wel & honour / but my ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to dwelle more than in any other place, bycause that it is commonly renommed auenturous and welhappy coun- tre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good auenture whiche by hys plaisire shall be to me worship- full & prouffytable bothe to my sowle and to my body. And, my ryght dere lord, enquyre ye me nomore therof / For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of it /.' Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym. And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle 24 and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn retourned toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had lefte her./

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady./

1 Fr. est souris.  2 Fr. renommé.
lady, departed at this our estate from Poitiers hastily alone, and rode tyl he camme vnto the high Forest of Coulombiers, and descended from eve hylle down in to the valey

and camme to the fontayne where [he found] his lady, that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym in this manere: 'My frend, yo begynne wel for to kepe and hyde oure secretes: and yf ye perseuere thus, grete

8 wele shall therof comme to you / and some ye shall see and perceyue of it.' Thanne spake Raymondyn and sayd in this manere: 'Dere lady, I am & shalbe euer redy for to doo aftir my power all your playsires.'

12 'In dede, Raymondyn,' said the lady / 'tyl ye haue wended me / ye no may no fher ther see ne know of my secretes.' 'Lady dere,' said Raymondyn, 'I am alreedy thereto.' 'Not yet,' said the lady / 'For first ye must goo

16 vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle your other parentes and frendes, that they wil comme and honoure you with their personne at youre wedding, in this place, on monday next commyng. to theende that they see the noblesses that I think and purpose for to doo for to enhauce you in honour & worship / and that they take no suspacion but that ye be maried after your estate and degree. And wel ye may tell to them that ye shall wende the daughter of a kinge / but no fher thay shall not dyscouere of it. and therfro kepe you as dere as ye haue the lone of me.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn, 'doubte you not therof.'

28 'Frend,' sayd the lady, 'hau ye noo care that for what folke that ye can bryng / but that they all shalbe wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel festyed / bothe of delyceous meetes and drynkes, and

32 of allmaner athing acordyng / as wel to them as to their horses. Therfore, my frend, goo surely and be not douhtous of nothing.' They thenne kyssed eche other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

1 omitted in M.S. Fr. où il trouva.
Raymondin goes to Poitiers,

history sylenceth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondin which goth toward Poitiers./

Ow telleth to vs thistorye that so longe rode Raymondin after that he was departed fro his 4 lady that he camme to Poitiers, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foysone of Barons with them, whiche were right wel glad of his commyng / and demanded of hym fro whens he camme. And he ansuerde 8 to them that he camme fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondin yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: 'Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech 12 you, on alle the sernyses that euer I shall mow doo to you, pat ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monday next to my weddyng', to the fontayn of Soyf. and that it playse you to 16 bryng thither with 1 you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.' And whan the Erle understode hym he was moche abasshed. 'How,' said the Erle, 'fayre Cousyn Raymondin, are ye as now so straunged 20 of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng? For certayn we gyue vs therof grete meruaylle, For we wende yf your wylle had be to take a wyf / to haue be they of whom ye 24 shuld first haue taken counseyll.' Thanne answery Raymondin, 'My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therfore, For loue is of so grete puyssauce that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth 28 to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this mater that I may not flee it; but neuertheles all were it soo that I myght doo soo / yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.' 'Now thanne,' said the Erle, 'telle vs what 32 she is and of what lynne.' 'By my feyth,' said Ray- mondyn, 'ye demande of me a thing / to the whiche I can not gyue none answere, for neuer in my lyf I ne dide enquyre me therof.' 'Forsouthe,' sayd the Erle, 'it is 36
grett meruaylle. · Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he knoweth not, ne also the lynge that she commeth of. · 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf that shall brawle or styryue with you / but only with me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for it, after that it shall please to god.' · 'By my feyth,' 8 sayd the Erle to Raymondyn, 'ye say right wel / and as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo, I pray to god deuoutly that he wil send you peas & good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo 12 to your wedyng', and with vs shall comme thither my lady and many other ladies and damoyselles of our baronye.' And Raymondyn answere, 'My lord, right gretly I thanke you, & as I byleue, whan ye 16 shalbe there and shall see the lady / ye shalbe pleased of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this matere, and spake of one thing and of other so long, that tyme of souper camme. And notwithstanding, the Erle 20 thought euer on Raymondyn and his lady, and said in hym self that somme Fortune he had fonde at the fontayne of soyf./

This abashes the Earl.

The Earl wishes Raymondyn good luck, and promises to attend the wed- 
ing;

1 fol. 27.

but ever won-
ners about Ray-
mondin and his
lady, and their
fortune.

In this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche that the styward cam and said to hym: · 'My lord, all is redy, yf it plesse you for to comme.' · 'For-
south,' said he, 'it plaisth me well.' Thanne they weshen theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they 28 were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe, the Erle aros & herd his masse and made the barons to be manded & boden for to goo with hym to 32 the wedyngge of Raymondin / and they camme incon-
tinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn. In this meane while made the said lady alle redy in

2 Fr. maistre d'hostel. 3 Fr. demantiere.

MELUSINE.
The Earl goes to the wedding.

Melusine makes ready in a meadow a noble feast. The Earl and his company set out to the wedding; he inquires about Raymondin's wife, but can find out nothing. At last they come to the fountain, and then to the meadow, at which they marvel, because of the many tents, knights, ladies, cooks, and the fair chapel.

The medowe vnder the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche appareill was there made, so grete & so noble, that for to say trouth / nothing acordyng for suche a Feste fawted ne waunted there, but honourably might a 4 kinge with alle his estate haue be recceyued therat. The sunday camme that alle made them self redy for to goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddyng of Raymondyn. The night passed & the day camme. And 8 thanne the Erle with hys moder / her ladyes & damoy-selles / and with alle the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And as they rode thithar the Erle enqyred of Raymondyn 12 the estate of hys wyf, but nothinge he would telle 1 to hym therof. Wherof the Erle was sorowfull, And so longe they yede talking togidre that they camme vpon the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng 16 in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the fontayne also whiche sourdred 2 & sprang ther haboundantly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede 20 fourth and bigheld downe toward the medowe and sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes, righ[t] high 3 / so grete, so noble, and so meruayl-ously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. And 24 namely, 4 when they dide see & perceyued so grete company of noble folke, as of knightes & squyres, that went vp & doun in the medowe and without, for to goo fetche suche thinges as neded to the feste. And 28 also might they see there right grete foysyon of ladyes & damoyselles richely apparrayed & arayed, many horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of 32 dyuerse maneres. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a fayre chappel of our lady & ymages within right connynyngl kerued & entayled, and of almener of

1 Fr. sourdit. 2 Fr. sourdit. 3 Fr. si treshaultz. 4 Fr. par especial.
ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete 
richesse they had seen before that tyme in no churche, 
wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other. 
4 'I ne wot what it shall befaft of the remenaunt, but here 
is a fayre bygynnyng grete, & shewyng grete noblesse 
& worship.' / 

Cap. XIV. How the Erie of Poytiers camme 
to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned 
of alle the Barons in hys land.

1 N[ow] telleth to vs thystorye, that when the 
Erie & hys folk were descended doun fro the 
montayne / an auncyent knyght, nobly & 
richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre 
palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiij\'' men of wor- 
ship richely & nobly aourned\(^2\) & wel horsed / camme 
gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erie. 
First he mete with the Erie of Forest & with Ray-
mondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before. 
And when he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he 
knew among other / he yede tofore hym & made to 
hym honour & reuerence, and his brother Erie of 
Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship 
also. And shortly to spek, this auncyent knight 
recevued them worshipfully, sayeng\(^1\) to Raymondin in 
this manere : 'My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde 
before the Erie of Poitiers yt it playse you, \(^3\) for I 
desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made 
hym to be ledde vnto the said Erie. And when 
thauncyent knight camme before the Erie, he salewed 
hym swetly, sayeng\(^1\), 'my lord, ye be welcommme.' And 
the Erie answered\(^1\) / 'and ye are wel mete with me. nowe 
telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said 
the knight thus to the Erie : 'Sire, My lady Melusyne 

\(^1\) fol. 28.

\(^2\) Fr. aourné.

\(^3\) fol. 28 b.
of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may / and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousyn & also vnto her whan ye vouchesafu of your grace to comme hither 4 for to bere vnto them felawship att their wedding.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas / as ye may telle to your lady / is no thankes to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour 8 possible to me to be doo.' 'Sire,' said thauent knight, 'ye say full curtoisly / but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo / and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.' 'Sire 12 knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to haue found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk with her as she hath.' 'Ha, sire!' sayd the 16 knight, 'whan my lady wil she may haue of knightes & squyers more than she hath now with her / for she ne dare doo / but to commande.' And thus talking one to other, they camme vnto the paulyllon. And the 20 Erle was lodged there whithin the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen before. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate / & they1 said that within their owne places at hom they were not so 24 wel lodged. Their horses were lodged within the grett tentes / so at large & at their ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel playeds. And alle they meruailled fro whens so moch of goode 28 and suche plente of richesses might comme there so haboundauntly. /

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider. /
thanne Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward her pauncyent knight, that had hold companye to the Erle, and also with hym she sent many lades and damoyselles of high and noble Estate that moch honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and her daughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set with perlys & with precyous stones. And, shortly to spek, they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche and so richly lodged that they meruaylled of the grete riches that they see within the pauyllon. And there was the Countesse receyued with moch grete and melodyous sowne of almaner instruments and alle they in her companye were honourably lodged. And when the Countesse had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed with the Countess and her daughter are richly dressed, and go to Melusine's chamber, where they marvel much at her rich array.

The Countess and her daughter
are richly dressed,
and are welcomed by the ancient knight,
and so richly lodged that they marvel much.

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melsusine
to the richly adorned chapel,
THE WEDDING AND THE WEDDING FEAST. [CH. XVI, XVII.

meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymages strangeely
kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of
pure andelyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel
writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes 4
might nat haue be. And there was a bysshop that
wedded them & songe masse before them.

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully
serued at dyner./

Aftir that the deuyne seruyse was doon they
rested them, and soone after the dyner was
redy within a moche riche and grete panyllon
in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there 12
affir hys degree. and serued they were of dyuerse &
good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and
haboundaunce of ypocras 1 was there. There serued
the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche 16
were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat
of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the companye was
meruayllled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro
the table, the othe[r] messe was redy. And so of 20
dyners meetes they were serued many a cours moche
honourably./

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes
& Squyers Jousted.

And after that they had dyned, and the tables
were take vp & graces said, and that they were
serued with ypocras & spyces, the Knyghtes and
Squiers went & armed them and lept on horseback. 28
And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett
upon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the
Joustyng / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel
and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle theire knightes 32
and squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide
meruaiH, For they ouerthrew bothe knihtes and horses
vtnto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn
that satte on a fayre & strong coursere, alle in whyte,
4 & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz,
his brother / and so valyauntly he demened hym self
that there ne was kniht on both partes but that
he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers
8 seeyng his appertyse of armes meruaylled what he
was / and dressed hys sheld, & holding the specere
alore ranne ayenst hym / but Raymondyn that knew
hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours
12 toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaft
hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth.
And shortly to spek Raymondin dye that day so wel
that every man said that the knight with the white
16 armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme
and the justyng ended. Wherfore ech of them went
agayn in to their pauyllo?z where they toke alitil
reste / but soon after was the souper redy. And
20 thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they
had wasshen they set them at table & wel and richely
they were serued / and after souper were the tables
take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes, & graces
24 were said. This doon the ladyes wente asyde pruely
and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to
dauense. The feste was fayre / and the worship was
there grete / so that the Erle and alle they that were
28 comme with hym meruaylled grely 1 of the grete
ryches & honour that they sawe there. And what it
was tyme they ledd the spouste to bed / mock honour-
ably within a wonder meruayllous & riche pauyllow.
32 And there the Erles of Poitiers and of Forests betoke
her vnto the ladyes handes. And thanne the Coun-
tesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouste
to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche thinges that
36 she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough

Mehasine's men' being victorious.

Raymondin overthroweth the Earl of Forest, and demeaneth himself so that all are afraid of him.

The Earl of Poitiers runs against him, but Raymondin turns aside and tells a knight of Poitou.

Every man praises the prowess of Raymondin.

They have supper in the great tent, then they have a dance.

They lead the spouste to bed,

the Countess tells her what to do.
but finds she pursueyed therof, but notwithstanding she thanked them moch humbly therfore. And when she was abed the ladies abode there vnto tyme that Raymondin came, whiche was yet talkynge of oon thing, and of other with the Erle of Poitiers & with his brother, whiche thanked Raymondyn of pat he first dide jouste with hym. 'By my feyth,' said the Erle of Poitiers, 'fayre Cousyn of Forests, ye haue longe syn herde how somtyme the loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses.' 'My lord,' answerde the Erle of Forestz, 'my brother shewed it wel this day to me.' And Raymondyn, that was somewhat ashamed, said in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, stryk of the flatte & gyue not to me moche praysing. For I am not he which I mene that dide soo / For I am not he that bare the whyte armes / but fayne I wold that god had sent to me the grace to doo so wel.' And at thoo wordes camme there a knight, whiche by the ladyes was sent thither / and said to them: 'Faire lordes, Jape not ouermoche, For knowe you wel that as now on other thing he most think.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle of Poitiers, 'ye say trew as I bylene.' And yet agayn said the knight: 'my lordes, comme & brynge with you Raymondyn, For the ladyes axen after hym / for his partye is al redy.' And perof byganne they to lawghe / and said that he muste hane witnes therof / and that they byluned it wel.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye.

A thoo wordes they went and ledde Raymondyn in the pauyllon and soone he was brought to bed. And thanne camme there pe Bysshop that had

---

1 Fr. frappez du plat. 2 Fr. je ne suys mie celluy que.
spoused them and dide halowe theire bed. and after
that euerychon toke his leue / and the courteyns were
drawn aboute the bed. And of this mater re recounteth
4 no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of
which som went to bed, ¹and som went agayn to the
daunse and ellis wher them lyste for to goo. And
after thystorye I shaH spoke of Raymondyn and of the
8 lady, how the[y] governed them both etogidre. and
what wordes they had among them two as the[y] laye
togidre.

T Hystorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan
12 they euerychon departed and goon out of the
Panyllon and the stakes of hit joynd & shette, Me-
lusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere:
' My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the
16 grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of
your parents & frendes / and of that also / that ye kepe
so secretlly that which ye promyse[k me atoure first
conuenaunte,² and ye moste know for certayn that yf
20 ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty &
moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye
do the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall faH
litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the
24 land that ye shall holde & possess, that tyme ye hold
not your promyss / yf it be so that ye doo it, which
god forbede, hit shal neuer be aftir possessed ne holden
alle hoH by you ne by your heyrs.' And thanne to her
28 ansuer[k Raymondyn: 'My right dere lady, doubte
you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall
neuer befaH by me.' And the lady ansuerd to hym in
this maner: 'My right dere frend / sith it is soo that
32 so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the
wylle of god, trustyng euuer of your promesse. Kepe
you thanne wel, my fayre frend & felawe that ye
³fawte not your Covenant. For ye shulde be he,
³ fol. 32 b.

¹ fol. 32 b.

² Fr. covenant.
upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant. after which the feasting and reveling begins again.
The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.
They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant.
They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

58 THE DAY AFTER THE WEDDING. [CH. XIX. after me, that moost shuld lese by it.' 'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, whan I fawte of Couuenant.' ¹ 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, ² 'lete vs leue our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynce, and more puyssaunt thanne any of them shalbe / 8 without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they theyre talkyng. And as thystorye reherceth, was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyauut Uryan. whiche afterward was kyngge of 12 Chipre, as ye shal be here herafter.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of 16 Melusyne. /

² fol. 33 b.
When the sun is high the lovers rise.

Raymondin dresses and goes with the Earls to mass,

after which the feasting and reveling begins again.
The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.

And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honou-
ably vnto the Chapel {forsaid} And there they herd masse. thoffertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deuyne seruyse was doon, they 32 retourned vnto the Pauyllon. What shuld I make

¹ Fr. covenant.
long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gaaf many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladyes 4 & damoyselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladyes, and damoyselles of their felowship, toke leue of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said 8 Countesse and her daughter vnto & byonde the litle tounne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable, and to blanche her 12 daughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretyly of the beaulte & goodnes & value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preyed gretyly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were 20 of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretyly mightily and valiauntly marryed. And after that all these thinges were doon and perfowrmed, Melusyne toke leue of 1the Erle and of the Countesse 24 moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compayny returned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euer the Erle. And as they rode on their way, the Erle of Poytiers said to 28 him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynee or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thancuyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady 32 Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyue by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued & 36 comme fro mocchi noble ryche and mighty lynee. And
the cause which meoneath vs for to desyre and be willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to haue mesprésed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo vnto her noble & goodly personne’ / ‘But my feyth,’ 4 said the Erle of Forest, ‘al thus was my wylle to have said soo.’

Thystorye saith that thanne Raymondin was gretly wroth, when he herd the requeste 8 that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of Forest his brother. For he loued / doubted and preyed so moche his lady / that he hated alle things 12 whiche he demed desagreeable to her. Not withstanding he ansered to them full softe & fayr: ‘By my feyth, my lord / and you my brother, 1 playse it to you to knowe / that by rayson naturel frô whosoever I hyd 16 my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were suche thinges that I knewe of, or might say. and therefore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste 20 knowe, that neuer I ne demanded ne dyde enquere me so fer of it / as now redly ye haue demanded & enquyred of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel say of her, that she is a kyngis daughtyer, mighty & 24 high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gouvernement that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue ynough, that she nys ne haue be norystshed in mendi- cite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honoure & largesse, 28 and among plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to my lordes and frendes, that ye ne enquyre nomore therof. For none other thinges ye ne may knowe therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me 32 wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthly goodes present & to comme.’ Thenne ansered the Erle of Poytiers: ‘By my feyth, fayr Cousyn, as for my part I 36
think not to enquire of you nomor therof, For as ye haue putte vnto vs wysely the high honours, riches, maneres, and behauyng of my Cousin, your wyf, we ougthe to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynce. 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the Erle of Forest, 'ye say southe. and of my part I thinke nat to enquire, no 8 demande of hym eny thing more therof / how be it that he is my bro\per. For certaynly I hold hym right wel ensuered therof aftar myn aduys.' But, helas! he aftarward faylled Couenaunt. wherfore Raymondyn lost 12 his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therfore by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be spoken herafter more playlny. Raymondyn thenne toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the 16 barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers, of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of a\t the barons right honourably, and banked them alle of thonour 20 that they had doon to him at hys brothers weddyng. And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys Suster, with alle theire felawship & myrne retourned to poitiers, and every one of the Barons retourned to 24 their Countrees, but there ne was none of them / but that he merneyled & gretely wondred of the grete riches that they had seen at the wedding of Raymondyn. And here resteth thystorye to spek of them / and shal 28 spek of Raymondyn & of his lady, how they were after the departyngs of theire parents and frendes. / Thystorye recounteth to vs that when Raymondin was retourned toward his lady / he founde the 32 feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente of noble folk than neuer was there before. Alle whiche folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: 'My lord ye be welcomme as he to whom we are servaunts, 36 & whom we wyl obey.' And pis said the ladyes as
THE BUILDING OF THE CASTLE OF LUSIGNAN. [CH. XIX.

wel the lorde. And thanne Raymoundyn answered to them, 'gramercy of the honour that ye proffre to me.' And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche honourably sayd to hym: 'welcomme be ye' / and had hym apart, & hererced to hym word by word alle the talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet said the lady to hym: 'Dere frende Raymoundyn / as 8 longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here comme to our feste. For other thinges we must 12 ordeyne.' Raymoundyn answered: 'ladye, so as it shall playse you.' And when the morowe camme Melusyne departed her folke / grete quantyte went therei way / and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth 16 thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begyne to treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse of Lusignen.

IN this partye telleth thenne thystory that when the 20 feste was ended and that suche as she wold were goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foysong of werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled 24 dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and clene. There Melusyne sett every man to werk. eche one did his Crafte. they encysed the roche & made a depe & brode foundement. and in few dayes they 28 brought the werk so ferfourth / that every man wondred of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon. And euer Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werkmen / and meet & drynk they had 2 in haboundaunce. 32 but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres made up / not only with one warde / but two strong wardes, with double walles were there, or oon coude 36
have *comme* to the stronge donjon of it. Round about the walles were gret tours machecolyd, & strong posternes / and also barreres or wayes gooyng out fourth eneysed and kerued *within* the hard roche. The Erle of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple *meruaylled* moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne and her husband Raymondyn lodged them *within* it. and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste there, alle the noble men therabout. There camme the erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the 12 Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of theire landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also there was so many laydes & damoyselfes, that they wel might suffyse att that day. There was jousting, 16 dauncyng, and grete joye made with frendly and curtoys deeling. And when Melusyne sawe tyme and place conuenable, she presented herself before the two Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to 20 them in this manere: 'My fayre and good lordes, we thanke you moche of the high honour that ye haue doon to us now at this feste—and the cause why we haue prayed you to *comme* I shal declare it to you.' / 24 'L Ordes,' said the lady, 'here I haue assembled your noble personnes, for to haue your Counsell how this fortresse shall be called, for that it be in mynd how that it hath be happily bylded & made.' 28 'By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poiiters, 'we as in general sayen to you, as our wylle is / that ye your owneself shall / as right is / gyue name to it. For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone 32 that haue bylded up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne said Melusyne: 'Dere Sire, Wyfully and for the nones 36 ye haue kept pis ansuere for to jape with me, but what protecting the donjon.

Every one marvelled at its beauty and strength.

Raymondin gives a feast, at which was jousting and dancing;

and at a conuenient time Melusyne declares why the feast is given:

it is to name the fortress.

The Earl of Poiiters says she should name it, because of her wisdom;

she answers that they mock her,
THE NAMING OF THE CASTLE OF LUSIGNAN. [CH. XIX.

but the Earl replies, that as she has built the best castle in the land, she must name it.

Melusine then names it Lusignan.

Which the Earl says is a good one, because it means 'marvellous' in Greek.

1 fol. 37 b.

All the company think it a good name.

And it was published abroad, and even unto this day the castle is so called.

The company breaks up, taking with them many rich gifts.

Melusine has a son.

thereof is, I require and pray you that thereof ye tell to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Earl of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with aht,

byfore you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche 4 doon as to haue achiyued & made the moste strong and fyare place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' said Melusyne, 'sith it ne 8 may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire

is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth;' said the Earl, 'the name seteth full wel to it for two causes, First 12 bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek language is as moch for to say / as thing meruaayllous or commyng fro grete merueyllle, and also this place is bylded and made meruaayllously. For I 16 byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste 1 shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruaayllous thinge.' Thanne they alle ansuerd in this manere: 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue 20 betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretuyng made by you of her owne name.' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name 24 within few dayes was so pubyled, that it was knowne throught alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yeftes at 28 theire departyng. And hereafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightily and honorably lyued togidre. /

A fter the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete 32 with child, bare her fruyte unto pe tyme that alle wemen owen to be deleyued of their birthe. and thanne she was deleyued of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporcyoned or shapen in alle 36
hys membres / except his vysage that was short and large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that he had the gretest eerys that euer were seen on eny child of hys age / and whan they were ouergrown, they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne penne called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said in this manere: 'My ryght swete felawe & frend, I wold not see thyne owne herytage to be lost / which by raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of 1 patrymony, for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboute 12 apparteynen to the & to hy brother / goo thanne thither, and make the king of Bretons to be sommed that he wyl receyue you in your ryght & enherytance / shewyng to hym how your fader slew his neew in 16 defense & warde of hys owne body. For which encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey, and neuer durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue you to ryght, be not therof abasshed. For afterward 20 he shal be glad, & fayne whan he shal mow doo it.' Thenne ansuerd Raymondyn, 'there nys nothing that ye commande me, but that I shall doo after my power. For wel I considere & see that all your werkes ne 24 tenden but to wele & worship.' 'Frende,' sayd the lady, 'it is wel rayson, sith that all your trust ye putte on me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that your fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete 28 thinges in bretyane, the whiche shulle be declared unto you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you understand, that Henry of Leon, your fader, that tyme he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete policye & 32 valiauntnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym euyl wyl, he was moche loued with the kinge there / in so moche that the said kyngge made hym hys Seneschall & Captayn general ouer alle his men of 36 werre. This king of Bretons had a neew / but no MELUSINE.

fair of body, but of short visage, and one eye red, and the other blue, He is named Uryan, and he had ears as large as a fan handle.

Melsaine tells Raymondin of his patrimony, and bids him go to the king of Britain, to enter into his inheritate-

He promises to go.

Henry of Leon, Raymondin's father,

was Senescal and Captain-General to the king of Britain,
child begotten of his body he had. Whyche nevew, by
the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry,
your fader. For to 1 hym they said in this manere:
"Ha! Ha! right-full heyre of Breytayne. Woo is us to see
your grete domage / that is / you to be putte doun
fro the noble enhertyaunce of Breytayne. yf by fayte
& lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say? pey
poyntyng you with the fynger shal sey, Loo, 8
yonder is the fol that for his feynted herte hath be
putte out of so noble enhertyaunce as is the royame
of Breytayne." And when he understode the said enjurous
wordes, he said: "Who is he that dare vsurpe & take 12
fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl
haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, pat the
kinge, my lord & oncle, wyl not take any other to be
hys heyer than my self." Thenne sayd one of them to 16
hym: "By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this
matere, For the kinge, your oncle, hath made &
ordeyned hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now
letters of grant ben therof made." Whan the yong man 20
herd these wordes, he as wool wroth anserued to them,
"wete it for certeyn / that if I knew these wordes to
be trew, I shuld putte hastily remedy thereto / in so
moche that neuer he shold hold land ne no possession." 24
And thenne anseruede to hym a knight named Josselyn
Dupont: "certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue
none other to be kyng in brytayne but you, after the
decees of pe kinge, we warne you therof. For this 28
hath the kyng your oncle doon secreetly, for ye shuld
not knowe of it. and wete it that alle we that now are
here, were present whan that couenaunt was made.
ask Ye my felawes yf I say trouth 2 or not." he demanded 32
of them yf it was so, And they ansered "ye."
'The yongman thanne said, "Fayre lordes, I thanke
you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me,
goo your way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro." 36
They toke theyre leue, For they rought not for no thing that might fall therof, so that they might see your faders deth. For enuyous and wroth they were
4 that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the sonday next, in the morning, the kingis nevew armed hym self / yedo in to the wod of Leon Castel, and
8 there wayted tyl your fader passed by, whiche he percyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme / and sodaynly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dye, false surprized and attacked him,
12 traytour, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn herytage" / and foynyng at hym with hys swerd, wold haue ouerthrowen youre fader. but he glanched asyde / and so the kyngis nevew / for he recounted ayenst nothing, fell down to the grounde, and the swerd scaped fro hys hand that then your fader toke up, the sayd nevew that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but your fader, 20 with the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron hat, he broke hys heed so that he fel down deed, but
1 when he knew that it was he / he was sory and woogary / 24 retourned home / toke all hys hauoyr and goodes meunable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call Forestes, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady, of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony fether. 28 And after the departyng of her fro hym, he toke by maryage the sustir of hym that tho dayses gouerned the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many children of the whyche ye are one. /
32 ' Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I deuysed and reherced to you how your fader departed fro Bretayn, and lefte hys landes and possessyons voyde, without lord, whiche oven to be yours. You thenne 36 shal goo toward an vncele of yours whiche is called

The Sunday after hearing this, the king's nephew laid in wait for Henry,

Melusine tells Raymondin to go to his uncle,
Alain of Quyngant / and ye shall make you to be knownen of hym / and he shall byleeue you ynoough of all that ye shall seye. he hath two wrothly knyghtes to hys sones, the whiche are grete men with the kyng, and loueth hem wel. by one of them, your Cousyns, ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue, to be called before the kyng, and there ye shalle accuse hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / through whiche the kyngis neuwe, willing to haue destroyed your fader, was hym self slayn. And ye muste knewe that on this quareH his sone, called Olyuer Dupont, shall fyght ayenst you therfore. but ye shall haue the victory over hym / and bothe fader and sone shall be condamned to hang and to be strangled. For the fader shalH1 vytre and knowe alle the treson / and all your grounde and enherytaunce shalbe adiuged to you. 16 And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or pessable possessyon of it by the Peerys or lorde pryncypal of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe, doutele goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you 20 in all your juste & true dedes.'

Thanne ansered Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall endenoyre me to achyene & falsH your commandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / 24 and acompanied with grete nombre of knyghtes and squyers, roode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they came in Brut Brytayne, wher the peuple was abasshed & moche wondered what suche grete nombre of 28 strangeurs wold haue. But for they payed wel & largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they wold & sought but good. For thauncyent knyght of the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle 32 in all honour & goodnes. And for they were not so vpcurued / but that with them they had armures, with them yf nede were to arme them with / the kyng that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they 36
sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn ye hee owed eyl wyH to the kyng & to hys royame. In this messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knightes, 4 whiche wysly enquired of Raymondyn as byfore is sayd what he sought and what he wold. to whome Raymondyn full curtoysly answered thus. 'Fayre lorde, ye shalH teH to my liege that I come but 1 for 8 good and wele, and for to haue the lawful right in hys Court of suche things as belongen to me, For the whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.' 'For-12 south,' answered the two knyghtes, 'ye shalbe welcome when it shal playse you to do soo. and wete it wel that the kyng, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denied 16 by ony wye. but telle vs ye if lyke you whither ye are now bounde.' 'Certaynly,' said Raymondyn, 'I wold I were at Quyngant.' Thanne answered one of them, 'ye are wel on the way toward it, and wete that 20 ye shal fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shal make you good chere. and also ye shal fynd there two knightes, men of wele and honour, and hold strayte this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue 24 we retourne on our way toward oure liege.'

Whanne these two knightes were fer fro Raymondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they byganne to say one to other: 'By my feyth, yonder 28 are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipful f & honour-able. For certayn they come not into this land with-out it is for some grete matere.' and yet sayd, 'lete vs go throug Quyngan; and to aleyn we shalH announce 32 theyre comynge.' they toke the way toward it, and rode so fast that soone they came there where they found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the comynge of Raymondyn 2and of his men. Whiche 36 Alayn wondred moch of it. And thanne the trew
Raymondin' Arrives at Quingant. [CH. XIX.

Alain sends his sons to meet and attend to them.

The ancient knight gets a stock of food, and pitches the tents, and pays well for everything.

The brethren meet Raymondin, and invite him to the castle of Quingant.

3 fol. 41 b. The invitation is accepted, and they ride on to the town, where the ancient knight comes to them.

man did calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest lad to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this manere: 'My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde on your way to mete yonde straungers / recyeue ye them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be six houndred horses and theraboute.' but for nought he spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come before that / and seying the toune was to lityl for to have herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent aboute in the 12 Countre for suche thinges that necessary were to them, which he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche that more vytyayH was there brought than pey neded of. And thanne Alayn was aH abasshed when he herd of 16 that grete honours & appareyH that they made there, and wyst not what therof he shuld thinke or say.

Now sayth thystory, that so long rode the two brethern with theyre felawship toegidre, that 20 they mete with Raymondin, & fuH curtoysly wel-commed hym, and prayed hym by byddying of Alayn, theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be lodged withyn the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with 24 theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. 'Fayre lorde,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy to your fader, and thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus proffre to me,' But at your requeste I shall goo toward your fader for to rendre to hym reverence. For glad & fayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I have herde say by hym.' Contynnyng suche wordes & oper they rode tyl they came nygh the toune. And 32 thann came there thauncyent knight to Raymondyn, and sayd: 'Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be dressed vp, and tentes ynough for to lodge you & al your men, and thanked be god we are wel purneyed.' 36
Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make ye mery and chere my men, and loke not for me this nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse with this two gentyl-
4 men.' And thenne departed he fro thauncyent knight /
toke with hym a few of hys moost famyler men, and yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde for hym styH at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne
8 sawe hym as to hys lord and vnclle he made reverence & salewed hym mckely. Wherto shulde I vse prolixe or longe wordes of theyre acyantune. but of the faitt or materie whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs
12 penne say. When they had souped / wesshen & graces
said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the
hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to deuyse both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche
16 pe two brotheren chered & honestly seruyd. The lord
Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche of wel and honour, bygan to raissonne with Raymondin in this manere: 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of your
20 commyng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a brother of myn whiche was valyaunt, full wyse and worthy. he departed 'fro this land xl. yere goon, for a stryf that beftt betwix the nevew of the kinge that
24 reygnet at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this is the iijth kynge that have reyned syn that tyme vnto now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble my brother, I am the more glad & fayn to see you.'
28 'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thanke you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn wherfore and by what inconuencies the stryf that ye spek of happed betwixt the nevew of the kynge and
32 youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause I come hither, but for to shewe publiqueyl the pure truith & certeyntee thereof.'

Whan Alayn herd these wordes he was moche abasshed, and loked on Raymondyn moche
ententlyly, and after sayd, 'and how shal that mowe be? ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not be recounted the faytte, the trouth of whiche none might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the 4 mysdale happed, my brother sodaynly departed / so that I ne none other herd neuer syn whither he was become.' 'Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there is as now yet luyng eny man that had on that tyme 8 auctorite or rewle aboute the kinge that regned whan the stryf befeH.' 'By my feyth,' said Alayn, 'one and no more I knowe, that had gouernauce in Court that same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my 12 brothers landes as his owne enhertyaunce. For the kyng gaaf it to hym, for his first begoten sone to enjoye it for euermore, the which yh sone is now of late dowbed & made knight.' 'For southe,' sayd themne 16 Raymondyn, 'wel I wote his name.' 'And how know ye hyt?' said Alayn. 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondin, 'he is called Josselin Dupont / and his sone hys named Olyyer.' 'Sire knight,' sayd Alayn, 'ye say trouth. 20 But telle me how ye this may knowe.' 'Sire,' sayd Raymondyn, 'no fether ye shal as now know therof. but ye vouchesaf to come & your two sones with me, unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare 24 vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye ever loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be thereof fayn & glad.' And thanne Alayn heryng the name of hys brother called, he was more abasshed than 28 before. For he wend none other but that hys brother had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in hymself or he ansered ony word.

Thus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought 32 Alayne, and after he anserd: 'Sire knight, I graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here I ne may knowe your wyH. For therat I lang moche. I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges 36
CH. XIX. ALAIN GOES TO THE KING OF BRUT BRITAIN.

Court.' 'gramercy,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal kepe you fro dommage.' Wherto shuld I make long proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foyson of hys frendes, & made hym redy in grete estate for to goo to the court. The kyng that knew theire commyng departed fro Storyon, where he laye, & came to Nantes. For the two knightes whiche the kynge sente Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the kynge the ansuere of Raymondyn, and the inaner of his estate. And therfore the kynge was come to Nantes and manded a part of hys baronye, for he wolde not that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpuereyd of men. And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for to haue his Counseyl on the demande that Raymondyn wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I saye more? thauncyent knight came before & made to be dressed bothe pauillons & tentes & purueyed for alt thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the tonne were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn, Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed them fulf richely, for to goo toward the kynge / and after they departed fro the tentes, accompanied with xl knightes wel horsed and honestly arayed that wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And when they come to the kinges place they descended fro theire horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his two sones entered within the halle, there the kyng was accompanied with his barons / made to the kinge reverence / after siewyng, salesed the barons & lordes, the king comes from Nantes and sends for some of his barony, and for Josselin, The ancient knight prepares tents for Raymondin, in which Alain and his sons dress themselves to go before the king, They set out with forty barons; arriving, are welcomed by the king, who asks Alain about his friend, the strange gracious knight.

12 The ancient knight prepares tents for Raymondin.
16 saye more? thauncyent knight came before & made to be dressed bothe pauillons & tentes & purueyed for alt thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the tonne were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that 20 he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn, Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed them fulf richely, for to goo toward the kynge / and 24 after they departed fro the tentes, accompanied with xl knightes wel horsed and honestly arayed that wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And when they come to the kinges place they descended 28 fro theire horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his two sones entred within the halle, there the kyng was accompanied with his barons / made to the kinge reverence / after siewyng, salesed the barons & lordes, 32 the kinge welcomed & receyued pëm joyously / called to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere:

'I tgyueth me grete wonder,' said the kynge to Alayn, 'of this graaceyous straunge knight, with whom ye are so acounted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha/
AT THE COURT OF THE KING. [CH. XIX.

Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings, but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Jos- selin is present, with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice.

The king asks why?

ha, sire,' ansuerd Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more meruaylled of the wordes that he yestryday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his comynynge, but some shuld be declared al that we lang after & desire 4 to knowe.' Thenne Raymondyn, dressyng hys wordes to theldest sone of Alayn, sayd softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' 8 Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth therytage that apparteyneth to one our ounce which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes 12 Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knight that sitteth by the kyng. And wete it for certayn that he is replenysshed with all falshed & malyce / and yonder is his son Olynyer that wetyeth not an 16 owncye lasse in al wykkednes & euyH.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And lenyng theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymself fourth before the 20 kyng, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kyng, It is wel trouth that common renoumee ranneth throughe alle landes. that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne 24 of Justice & raison / and that none be commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyue to hym good Justice and raisonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kyng / 28 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsomthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it plaise you / or I telle it you / 32 ye shalH promyse me that ye shalH susteyne me ayenst alle personnes after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele prouffyly & honour. For no kyng acompanyed of a traytour is not wel 36
Josselin Dupont.

lodged no sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said
the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardily. For I swere
to you by aH that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you
alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shalt
have / and that shal I doo doubteles / ye it were ayenst
my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred
thousand thankes & mercyes / ye say as a valyaunt kynge
8 & 1 trew man. For first were kynge stablesshed for
to rendre or yeld to euerbody juste jugement in alle
things.'

'Noble mighty kinge,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel
trouch that one, your predecessour kynge,
reyned somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was
in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche
bothe are here now present before your majesto / this
16 kynge whiche I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong
man to his nevew. that tyme was in this Countré a
baron whiche was called Henry of Leon, the whiche
was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,'
20 said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouch. and ouermore
the same Henry of Leon slew the nevew of your prede-
cessour by tresco / fled out of this land, and neuer
syn came hither ayeen. And then the kinge seased
24 his landes and possessyons, and anoone after gaf them
to me.' The kinge thanne answered, 'we haue herd
ynoughe of this matere / but suffre this knight fyndesse
his raison which he hath bygonne.'

28 TI this answered Raymondyn, 'Sire kinge, he hath
wel raison to speke of hit, For furthermore he
shall be constrayned to say / how be it that as now he
hath said amys & not trouch of that he saith that
32 Henry of leon slew the kinges nevew in treson, For he
knew wel why & wherfore it was, and there nys no
man lyuyng that can say the trouch of it but he alone,
For they that were of his aecorde and conspiracion ben
36 al deed. Therfore sire kynge, vouchesaf to command

and promises
to do justice to
Raymondin,

for which Ray-
mondin thanks
him.

1 fol. 44.

Raymondin
speaks to the
king of Josselin,
Alain,

and of Henry of
Leon;

whereupon Joss-
elyn says that
Henry slew the
nephew of the
king's predecess-
or, and fled the
land;

but the king
orders him to
let Raymondin
finish his story.

Raymondin
denies what Joss-
elyn said,

but asserts that
Josselin alone
knows the truth
of the matter,
and asks the king to bid Josse-  
JIN'S TALE.  
[CH. XIX.  

A Raymondin's inconvenience.  

Sire,  

This abasesh Josselin, who asks if Raymondin has come to dishonour  

him.  

Raymondin tells the king of the treachery of Josselin toward his father, Henry of Leon.  

Because of Henry,  

How Josselin told the king's nephew that he was disinherited  

hym telle trouth al on hye, that everyone here may  

'there it.' And when Josselin vnderstode that word,  

he waxed sore abasshed; nevertheles, he answered in  

this manere: 'Sire knight, are you come into this 4 land fortto vndertake eny thinge in dyshonour of me?'  

And Raymondin answreed appertly: 'Fals traytour, he fourueyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.' Thanne  

he said agayn to the kynge: 'Sire, it is wel trouth that 8  

Henry of Leon was a moche valiant & hardy knight,  

curteys and wel condicyoned, & moche was beloved  

bothe of the kinge and of his nevew / and vsted the  

kynge moche of his counsell, For he was he on whom 12  

he trusted most. It happed that dyuerse traytours beyng  

that time about the kinge, of which Josselin here  

present was one, as chef causer of the mysdele that  

tyne perpetrated or doon / came to said kinges nevew, 16  

& to hym they said in this manere: "Gentyl Squyer,  

alle we that are here before your presence ben sory &  

wo of your grete dommage and shamfuH losse when  

ye shall be dyshereted of so noble a land as is the 20  

royame of Brytayne" / and he answreed to them / "how  

shuld that mowow be doo? the kynge hath none heyre  

but my self." "On my god," said thanne yond Josselin  

to hym, "Wete it pat he hath made & stablished his 24  

heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry  

hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also,  

For therof ben lettres passed & sealled with theire  

sealles annexed to the kingis grete seall / and al this 28  

they aH togider affermed on theire feyth for trouth.'  

"By my feith," said the squyer thanne / "here is grete  

inconuenyence yt that be trew that ye telle me."  

And thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde 32  

sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherfore  

the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin  

thenne seeyng that he byleued theire falsed to be  

certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere: 36
"Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare vnder-
take to auenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of
Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto." And the squyer
4 ansuerd, "my courage and wylle ben agreed to do
soo." Thenne said Josselin, "goo thanne & arme you
in a manner vnknown, and we shaH abyde you with
out the toune, and shaH ledd you in to suche a place
8 where ye shal auenge you at your ease." O noble &
mighty kinge, sethen I fynnde now myself in Court of
right & iustice / and that I may see myn enemye, I
wyl no more be hyd, but lete every man knowe that
12 I am the sone of Henry of Leon.' Thenne they were
alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl /
and Ray mondyn spake fourth in this manere./

'Sire kinge, it is trouth that my fader had take leue
16 of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey /
and was wont mornyng for to goo in a wode
nygh by hys forteesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys
matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his
20 complices, ledd the said kingis nevew and embussched
them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came
that same oure / and when Josselin perceyued hym
commyng he said to the squyer / "now it is tyme to
24 auenge you, For he is without eny armure or wepen /
he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of
help\(^1\) we shall helpe you." The squyer, thanne esprysed
with euyl desire, departed fro them and ranne toward
28 my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold
haue thrested the sword through my faders body, my
fader glanched asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly
ranne feth to the ground. My fader penne toke the
32 swerde that seaped fro the squyers hand, and with the
pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche
strengthe that the squyer feth doun ded. And the
36 when my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he
\(^1\) fol. 45 b.

Raymondin declares that he
is the son of
Henry, which
abashes them all.

He continues the
story of Jose-
lin's treason:

how an ambush
was laid,

and how the
king's nephew
tried to slay his
father,

but was slain
himself.
he made great sorrow and was sorry and went / and after the dede & euylhap, doubting the furour & yre of the king, yede there hys hanoir was / toke it and fled for from this land. And thanne Josselin the fals traytours sayd to hys complices and felawes: “Now are we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges neveu is dead, and ye Henry be take he may not scape fro deth. Now shall we gouerne and doe with the king 8 that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not meve us tyl he be ferre from vs / and after we shall take the corps & putte it in a byere that we shall make with branches & leues, and so we shall bere it toward the king, to 12 whom we shall say that Henry of Leon flew slaw hym in treson.” Ha / ha, noble king, aH euyn, so as I say, dide that yonder fals traytours / and if he say neg / here I presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And 16 bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete every man knowe that I doo vndertake pis not for auarice / but for to kepe my right and enherytance / and for to declare, manystede, and 1 shewe the vylony & euyl treson 20 that this fals traytours Josselin and hys complices dyde to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to hane hym out of conceytte, and to be putte fro the kingis Court, I besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer 24 and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight ayenst them thre without fawte, prouyded always the noble and juste jugement of your Court / one after another / and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there 28 was none that spake or ansuerd ony word. And when Alain and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymondyn had said / what for joye to see their faders neveu and Cousyn to them / and what for pyte to here telle 32 the trayson so machyned ayenst theyre faders brother & vnkle to them / ranne to kysse and embraced Raymondyn.
When the king of the Bretons sawe that no body answered to these wordes so proferid in hys presence / sayd al on high that eyry one there might here hym, 'how now, Josselin, are ye deef? I now perceyue wel & see that the proverbe that is said commonly is trew / that is / "that olde synne reneweth shame," For this knight straunger bringeth you tydynges, 8 moche straungue and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land / aduyse you of that ye shal ansuere.' Thanne answered Josselyn to the kynge: 'Sire kynge, I am not he pat from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such thinges. And 12 also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.' Thanne answered Raymondin, 'the mocke fals 1 traytour shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble king, that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as 16 raison requyreth for his treson / and I to be punysshed yf in eny poynt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.' Thenne said the kynge, 'doubt not of it, For so shal I doo. Josselyn,' said the kynge, 'ye muste ansuere to 20 this quareH & acusatian.' When themne his sone Olyuyer herd what the kynge said to his fader / he answered to his wordes: 'Sire, that knight is so sore adrad that he trembleth for fere / he weneth as mo 24 semeth to take the cranes flighing, by my feith he shall wel fayH & mysse of that he hath said, For my fader is a true man in aH his dedes / and I vouchesauf & graunt the bataiH as he hath ordonne / and there 28 is my gage / he shall be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte me and another of my lynage suche as I shahH chese.'

When the king herd that word he was moche wroth, & answered in this manere / 'that shahH 32 nat happe in my Court as long as I shahH lyue pat one knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner quareH / and grete shame is to you / only to haue thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by 36 semblaunt ye show nat your fader to haue good quareH.

The king orders Josselin to defend himself, who says that he believes that Raymondin is joking.

Raymondin denies it, and asks the king to bring the matter to an issue.

In answer to the king, Josselin's son Oliver agrees to fight Raymondin, helped by another of his lineage.

The king is wroth at the proposal to pair two knights against one.
Before the Fight.

The king, knowing the might of the parties,

makes arrangements to prevent disorder,

and declares the quarrel to be one of life and death on both sides,

Whiles the rumour was among the folk, the kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee / doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe among them / commanded sodaynly the gates to be shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordained men armed to kepe euery man therfro. and after called his Conseil apart / shewed to them and reherced all the quarrel. and they counselled hym of that was nedeful to be doe. Thanne retourned the kinge vnto the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym, that none there, on payne of deth, should be so hardy to spek ony word but pat he were commanded. The kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lorde, ye muste understand how this quarrel is now not litel, for it is for lyf or grete dyshonour for evermore to the one 30

And fro this oure fourthon I gyue you journey of batayll at the requeste of the knight straunger on suche day that he shal assigne.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Raymondin, 'I am euen now redy therto, for myn 4 armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse an hondred tymes of your lawfull graunt.' There had ye herd grete rumoure made on aH sydes, for all said, 'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that euer we sawe 8 requyryng his ryght.' but what so euer was woofull therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn & glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin, 'Fayre Cousin, be not abasshed of nothing in the world. take boldly the bataiH for you, and for us both aynst that same fals traytowr. For ye god wil we shal soone haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lorde,' said Raymondin, 'take who wil bataiH for hymself. For the same I shal haue for my part, and doubte you not but that I shal bring it to a good & worshipful ende god before with the good right that I haue therpto.'
partye. and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also wyl not refuse rght to be doe in my Court. Olyuier,' said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this treson?' 'Sire,' said he / ‘ye certaynly,’ / . and thenne the king anuerd / ‘the lystes ben alreadly dressed, and therfore I ordayne the bataif to be to morow exploited. And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfitted & overcom, bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged. and not lesse shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the cas myshappeth to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader shall abyde.' and thenne the king made Josselin to be ledde in to pryson in a stronge toure. and thanne said the king to Raymondyn, ‘Sire knight, whome shul yo gyue vs for hostage?’ Alayn and his two sones came thanne fourth & said, ‘sire, we pledge hym.’ ‘By my fyth,’ said the king, ‘it suffyseth vs wel. and therfore ye shal not hold pryson. For wel I wote that the knight had not emprysed the bataif without he wold perfourme it.’ And thus departed bothe parties fro the presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn with hys folk, acompanied of hys vnclle & Cousins, yede toward his paullions, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the chirch CathedraH, and there he watched, making hys prayers to god with grete deuocyon / And Olyuer also came to hys hous with grete foyson of them of hys lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the seafoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette. And about the ooure of pryme came Raymondin with fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes, browded with syluer & azure / and entred the lystes vpon a grete destrier wel harneyed vnto the nayle of

**MELUSINE.**
and makes reverence to the king and barons;

1 fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

Raymondin swears the justice of his cause on the Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made:

the lists clear.

A herald shouts 'Do your duty to the combatants.'

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reverence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my faith,' said everyone / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayr man of armes ne of so fayr contenauence / he hath not 4 beste werke that hath such 1 a man in hand to joust or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrier as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his adversary. 8 It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on 12 a palfray, and made reverence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangilis were there 16 brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Joscelyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And 20 after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timorous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of all, swore fully / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his 24 chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyce on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on payne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke ony worde ne to make euyl signe or tokon that euyl of the Champyons might 28 vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne eueryman voyded the place, saaf onely they that were stablished to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lepto on horsbak mochi appertly and toke hys 32 erre, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lept on lightely, and toke hys erre with sharp yron / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'Iete ranne your horses & 2 doo your deuyoire.'
Here saith the veray hystory, that when the cry was made Raymondin had leyed the ende of hys spere to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and 4 thryes he made the signe of the crosse. and while he dede so hys enemy ranne at hym, and with hys spere hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit moche rudely, For dooyng so he putte to it alle his 8 strenthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed neuer theryfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to pieces, and with that strok the spere of Raymondyn fell to the ground. 'Ha, traytour,' said then Raymondyn / 12 'thou folowest wel the right euyl lynee of whiche thou yssued. but that may not auaylle the.' and toke the sterope that hynte at sadelbowe, that had thre pouynte wel assured, eche of them seuen ench long, and at 16 retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymondyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo syde / and the visage of Olyuer abode aH dyscouered, wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Neuerthe- les he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contenaunce of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enyme, and so 24 they fought long space togidre and gaaf eche other grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertysse of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and toke vp hys spere that laye at grounde & came with 23 grete paas toward his foo mortaH, whiche the best wyse that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he dide with hys hors what he wold,1 and by that manere dooyng 32 he supposed to haue made Raymondyn wery that nedes he muste reste hym, and so the day should be soone passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede & appertly to[ke]2 hys hors that he ledde with one hand, &

1 fol. 49.

Raymondin then, leading his horse

2 Fr. print.
and carrying his spear, approaches Oliver, who suddenly spurs his horse against Raymondin, but has it stunned by a blow from the stirrup, and is dismounted by a spear stroke, and wounded and beaten; and held by the throat, Raymondin kneeling on him, After a time Raymondin asks him to yield, or die. 2 fol. 49 b. He replies he would prefer to die by Raymondin’s hand; who pities him, and asks if he knew of his father’s treason. He says he did not; toke the spere at other hand / and softly one pas after another came towarde hys enemye. And when Olyuyer sawe hym come, perceuying his manere he wist not how ne in what manere Raymondyn wold assayH 4 hym / and sodaynly spored his horse, wenying to haue come & hurted Raymondyn as he had doon byfore. But Raymondin kyst at hym yet ayen the sterop by grete anger, and hitte Olyuyer hors at foreheed with 8 suche strength that the chaunfreyyn entred deep within the hors heed, so that it bowed the legges behind to therthe. Olyuyer thanne spored his destrier, but as the hors redressed hym, Raymondyn with hys spere 12 smote Olyuyer at right syde of hym, so that he overthrew hym to therthe, and so wonderly a strok he gaf hym betwix the mayH panser & the Corset that the spere heed entred deep in hys body / and ar he might 16 be doleyuered Raymondyn cast on hym so many strokes that he might no more meve hym self, and by force plucked the helmet fro the heed of hym, and putte hys knee on his naueH, and the hand senester at hys nek, 20 and held hym in suche destresse that by no manere waye he might not meue hym. Thystory telleth in this partye that Raymondin held Olyuyer as aboue is said long espace of 24 tyme, and when he sawe that he had the best ouer hym he drew a knife1 that heng 2 at his right side and said to hym, ’False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed, or ellis thou art but deed.’ ‘By my feith,’ said Olyuyer, 28 ‘I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt knight as ye be than of another.’ Raymondyn thanne toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, vpon parel of the sowle of hym / ye he nothing knew of 32 the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he ansuerd nay, and he was not yet borne pat tyme that this treson happed. and how be it that it pleased to

1 Knight in MS. Fr. version coustel.
god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym, notwithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man / lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne when Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd hym, he was sorrowful & woo, and bete hym so moche on the temples with hys fust armed with his gantlet that he made hym so astonied that he ne saw ne herd ne wyst what he dide to hym / And thanne stode vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym without fourth / and returned & came before the scaffold of the kinge, the visere lyfte on hye, & said: 'Sire, haue I doo my deuoire, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo he had done his duty i I am redy to it to the regarde of your Court & ordynance? 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight, ye haue quytted your self full wel.' And the king penne commanded that Josselin and his sone shuld be bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded this execucion to be doo wente soone, & without delay they seasid Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king piteously for mercy. And pen the king yede and said to hym that he shulde telle the trouthe of the quarell, and peradventure he night haue grace. Thenne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouthe it auaylleth not / haue pite on me yf it plaise you, For certaynly it was doon in the manere & fourme as the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it pat my sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin, said the kinge, 'here is grete falsshed, and yf it ne had be goddis playsire that ye shuld be therof punyshed, he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and as to my part, ye shall not fayll of the punycyon.' Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned, that anoone bothe fader & sone shuld be hanged. And thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king: 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye
Raymondin pleads for Oliver's life, as he is brave and valiant, and free from the guilt of the treason;

and for Josselin's, because he is so old, desiring only that he should make restitution of the estate, the money to be used to found a priory.

But the king orders them to be hanged, and restores Raymondin his estates, and gives him all Josselin's land, for which Raymondin does homage.

Raymondin is feasted by the king of Brut Britain, haue doon to me / but, sire, I moued with pite requyre you of your mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For seyng his valyauntys & worthynes, also consideryng that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete dommage of hys deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my part, sire king, ye vouchesauft to graunt hym grace therof I shulde be fayn & glad, soo that I haue myn herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes & fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he had therytage in hys handes, be by extimacion reuauned in money. that same payment to be by you, sire king, ordeyned to edeyfe or bigge a pryorie, & monkes therin to be rented with revenues & possessyons after the quantyte of the said money to be regard de of you and of your Counseill. the said monkes to pray for the 16 sowle of the kinges nevew perpetually.' The king thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr Sires, here ye may see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to respythe hys enemys fro deth. but by the feyth that I 20 owe to god Josselin nor his sone shall neuer doo treson ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and fourthwith he made them to be hanged, and rendred to Raymondin his enherytaunce and al Josselyn's land with alH. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche humbly and made to hym his homage. After byganne the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete & noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that 28 he had recovered & goten so noble a knight in his land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynough he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to ahyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym 32 the sight of Melusyne.

Now in this parte telleth thystorye that Raymondyn was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue 36
of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete joye for his commyng, and specyally his vncl Alayn and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to hym thus: 'Sire king, I pray you & beseeche that ye vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye of Leon. that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle 8 god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the land shal bere the name of his ryghtful lord / and you the name of your liege man, For he is of the right lynee.' 'By my feyth,' sayd ye kinge, 'sire, sith 12 it playseth you thus wel it pleseth vs so to be.' Thenne the kyng called Henry, For he loued hym wel and said to hym: 'Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage to me therof' / and so he dide ' and thanked moche the king & Raymondyn. And this doon Raymondin called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: 'I gyue you the land that the king hath gyuen me that late was 20 longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to the king': / and he thanked hym moche humbly ' and knuelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the 24 land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and said: 'By my feyth, this knight is not feyte come into this lande for couetys ne auarice. But only he hath putte his lyf in grete auenture & parsel for to conquere his 28 heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof. it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where' / Thanne came thanclent knight to Raymondin. and whan Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he 32 shuld deleyure hym self of that his lady had commanded hym / and he ansuered, 'my lord, therefore I am come toward you.' and thanne he presented fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette 36 with many precyous stone. and after gaf to all the and made wel-come by the barons.

Raymondin asks the king to allow him to give his barony to his cousin Henry, which request is granted.

The barony is given, and Henry does homage for it.

1 fol. 51.

Raymondin gives the con-fiscated lands of Josselin to Alain, who does homage to the king for them.

The barons of Britain wonder at the riches of Raymondin, who gives away the land just won.

The ancient knight brings gifts from Melusine for the king and the barons.
Barons in the forsaíd name many ryche jewelles. Wherof all were meruaylled of whens might come such a riches / and all they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun-
tree. Wherfore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng their joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents & frendes of Josselin that had not forgotten pe deth of hym / as herafter ye shal here reheare. And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne governed her self while 12 that Raymoudyn was in his vyage.

Thystory telleth vs that whiles Raymoudyn was in bretayne, Melusyne made to be byld up the toune of Lusynen, and walled it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another, and deep ditches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt the Fortresse & the toune walled with a wall of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one vpon the vpermost batelements of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at every tyme he perceyued & sawe men othre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboue 24 the nombre of xxth commyng toward the said toune or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymoudin, and of the feest & chere that every 28 one made to Raymoudin.

IN this partye reheerceth thystorye that moch was the feest grete at Nantes: and the king honoured moche Raymoudin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladys & gentyl wemen wher Raymoudin bare hym fuH valiauntly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

1 fol. 51 b.

The feast continued at Nantes.
worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abashshed of the grete riches that they sawe euery day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest 4 for Raymondyn, the Chastelayn of Aruah, that was neuew to Josselin Dupont, made all the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng 1 them to knowe how it was 8 of theire frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerre. And when they understode the 12 deth of Josselin they were sorrowfull & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pryuely yede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelayn had manded them to come. And thanne 16 the Chastelayn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the king ne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld 20 take, and that they shuld anounce it to hym to the retrette beforsaid. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he found them of his lynage, and he reherced to hym all the manere of 24 thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thoughte & proposed to doo / yf they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete 28 blame & shame for euermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne ansuercd for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. 'cousyn 32 castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this oultrageous werk be lefte. For we alle of one accomde & wyle wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.' 'By 36 my feith,' said thanne the Castellayne, 'I hold & repute while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss, 1 fol. 52. and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerre. They assemble two hundred strong, and are informed of the mishap by Josselin's nephew, and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves. They declare they will put Raymondin to death;
The feast continued fifteen days longer; then Raymondin took leave, and accompanied with Alain rode to Leon, where the ancient knight had already prepared for them.

1 fol. 52 b.

upon which the nephew promises to assist them,

by spring which way Raymondin leaves the country.

the wele & honour wel employed that Josselin dide 1 to you in tyne passed. And anoone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel accomplishe our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For 4 by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we haue good wayters, & espyes that soone shaft announce his way to vs whan tyne shalbe.' And they answerd alle with 8 an viowe /—'Blessed be you, and wete it that whatsomeuer fall thereof / this enterpyse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slee that false knight that hath imposed to vs alle vylonnye & shame.' And here speke 12 no more thisitorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn. and how he departed fro the king moch honorably.

Thystory saith that the feest dured wil xv dayes & 16 more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat reherce it. Raymondin thanne toke leue of the king & of his Barons and humbly mercyed the king of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honourably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Ray-24 mondyn acompanyed of his vnclayn Alayn his two sones & all theyre meyne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that pauncyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons 28 and aff other thinges necessary he ordeyned & made redy. And thanne Raymondin / hys vnclayn with his two 1 sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other 32 herberowed them in the toune. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commynyg of theyre owne lorde sone they were joyful & glad, and made to hym many fayr presentes after the vse & custome of the Countre / 36
as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, hey & ootys, and of many other things, and they were fayn & glad sith it playesd not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that 4 they were befall in the sayd lynee of theire lord, and that they were quyttte & exempted fro the subgection & boundage of the lynee of Josselin. Raymondin thanne banked them curtosly of theire presentes & yeftes. commanded & prayed them that they wold be true & fethful subjets to Henry his Cousin to whom he had gyue the land. and they ansuered that they shuld doo soo. Of them resteth this thorye, and speketh 12 of the spyes that wayted there / of which one went to the retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH · and the lynee of Josselin were a\H redy / and the two other spyes abode for to knowe what way Raymondyn shuld hold · / 16 IN this partye telleth to vs this thorye that Raymondin departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents & frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the feste was grete, and there after the feste was ended Ray-
20 mondyn wold haue take leue of hys vncl Alayn & of all his lynage / but they dide putte the mouste remedy they coude for to hold hym there a seuen nyeht more. Wherfore Raymondyn obtempering to them / ye / 24 ayenst his entent & courage fulyfille thyre willes. And in the meane while came to Henry hys Cousyn, a man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH was with wel 28 two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some folk to whom they owed no good wyle, but he told hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And when Henry understode this he toke a squyer of his 32 and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was, and he that was moche dilygent dyde so that he knew the moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what nombre they were. Soone after he returned to Henry 36 and reheered to hym all that he had found, and that

The folk of the place bring presents to Raymondin, and are glad to be freed of allegiance to Josselin;

and promise to be faithfull to Henry, the cousin of Raymondin, their new lord.

Spies leave, and tell the kindred of Josselin of Raymondin's doings.

Leaving Leon, Raymondin goes to Quingant, where he is feasted.

A man advises Henry of Leon of the assembling of Josselin's kindred in the forest.

Henry despatches a spye, who returns with the information.
they were wel fyue or six hounded fighting men. And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the messanger moche expressly that to no body he shuld spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and reherced to them alle this werke. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo, but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our Cousyn or ellis to move werre ayenst vs for the said quarelle. but alwayes it is good to be purveyed of remedye · lete vs thurere send for alle our frendes and kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they have purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurveyed · also yf Raymondin departeth that he be not surprysed of them / and yf they entende to doo hym euyl / it is 16 but for to take the lyf 1 fro hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'that is trouth. Now lete vs hye & deluyere vs that our manedement be doo of light & secretly.' And so did they / in so moche that within the second 20 day after / they were gadred togidre about four hounded in nombre men of armes what of therye lynee and what of theire affynyte & alyed / & made them to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It 24 happed thanne that Raymondyn wold no lenger abyde / and toke leue of Alayn hys vnche pat abode styl at Quyngant moche woofull & sory of hys deparing / and hys two sones companeyed hym & conuayed with grete foyson of therye lynee. And nerer wold lete hym goo byfore, but made therye men to be on eche side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his spyes the conmyng of Raymondyn & his men and told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: 'Now shal be seen & knowen who euer loued Josselin and Olyuer
hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the
lynage of hym self pat to vs hath doon suche a shame.'
And they anwered to hym that none shuld scape, but
alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith,
'Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it' \(^1\)
and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this
meane while came pouncyent knight to Raymondin
8 and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, ye\(^2\) myster wel
for to \(^3\)be armed goyng throug the Forest. For the
lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you
not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and
12 to your felawship & meyne grete dommage yf they
found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that
soone we shaH fynd hem' / and Henry & Alayn his
brother and aH theire lynage were armed all redy, and
16 had sent aH theire meyne byfoire to make embushe
within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan
Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take their
armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were
20 alle armed, ho ne wyyst what say but \(3\)e two brethern
his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embusshes
byfoire wel iii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys
enemies / and they reherced to hym aH the trouthe.
24 'By my feyth,' said Raymondin, 'curtoryse oweth not to
be forgeten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens
fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of
me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my
28 power to fulfylle your wille.' And so longe they rode
that they entred the Forest /.

Thystorye saith that the Castellayne was in his
retrette and abode for the spye that last he
32 had sent to wete whan Raymondyn shuld entre the
Forest. the whiche exploited so that he came nigh
Raymondin / and thanne he lightly returned toward

\(^1\) Fr. Tel cuide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.
\(^2\) Fr. Et bien mestier.
The Chastellain, hearing from his spy of Raymondin’s appearance, cries on his men to follow him.

They mount, and are allowed to pass by the men of Henry of Leen, who are hidden in the forest.

They run upon Raymondin’s men;

until they meet Raymondin.

and when Raymondin comes in sight,

the Chastellain and his three cousins attack him.

The retrette and to the Castellayn he said: ‘Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.’ And when the Castellayn understod hym he bygan to crye with a hye voys / on horsbak, & who that ever loued Josselin & his sone 4 lete hym folowe me.’ Thanne styed every man on horsbak / & they were so encreysyd in nombre that they were wel viii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynauce ayenst Raymondin, and passed 8 by the embusshe that Henry and his parents had sent. whiche lete them passe fourth without they discovered themself. and soon after they rode after them. So longe rode the Castelayn & his folke that they per-12 ceyued nygh them pe forward of Raymondin. but abasshed he was whan he sawe them armed gooyng by ordynauce / though they were but a few servants and a C. men of armes / they 2escryed them to the deth / 16 And when they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dommaged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors 20 might walope, and haung the spere on the rest launched among his enemys / and the first that he encountred he ouerthrew hym down to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauersing here 24 & there and in a lytel tyme he moche domimaged hys enymes. But when the Castellayn saw hym he was fuH woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / ‘loke yonder is the knyght that 28 hath shamed aH our lynage / yf we had our wylle of hym aH the other shuld be soone ouercome & vayn- quysshed.’ thanne pey spoored theire horses, and aft fourne ranne ayenst hym / and with theire speeris 32 recountred hym, soo that they ouer threw bothe man

2 Fr. et leur escrivoient: A mort à mort, mal acointastes celluy qui nous a fait la hunte et le dommaige de Josselin notre cousin.
& hors to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But when Raymondyn saw hym over thrawen he spooryd hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong releuyd hym on hys knees and soo foure fourth on his feet so pertly but Raymondyn neuer lost sterop fro the foot ne swerd fro the hand. And thanne he tourned toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on 8 the helmet with hys swerd that he so stakerid that he lost bothe steropes / and as Raymondyn passed by hym he hurtelyd hym soo with the sholder that he felt doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so 12 grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne begane the bataill grete & fell and sore dommagd were bothe partes. And thanne came there also thauncyent knight and Henry & Alayn hys brother, 16 and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemies. There Raymondin made grete fayttes of armes and sore dommagd hys enemies. but the Chastelayn was had out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors. 20 Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage & stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke. and there were many one slayn of both sydes. And wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy 24 weyght. For hys aduerse party was moch strong & moche wel they fought & valyauntly. but the embusse of Henry came by the bake syde on them and assaylled them on all sydes so that pey wyster not 28 what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondyn / and he commanded thauncient knight to kepe hym. And 32 in conclusion all the other were soon after outANTED take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette where Raymondyn said to hys parents: 'Now lorde I owe wel to loue and thanke you of the grete 36 socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For
Raymondin thanks his kindred for their help;

who propose to take the Chastellain, and all others of Josselin's kindred to the king of Brut Britain for judgment.

The prisoners who are not Josselin's kindred are hung,

and the Chastellain and the rest are taken bound before the king.

Alain tells the king the treason wrought,

and says that Raymondin has sent the Chastellain and his kindred to receive punishment.

The king asks the Chastellain why he has done such a shameful deed.

certainly I wote that yf it had not be the help of god and of you this traytour had putte me to deth by treason, now haue regarde what best is for to doo.' 'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shaH graunte we alle 4 assent thereto.' 'I shaH saye you,' said Raymondin, 'what we shal doo. Iete vs take and assemble aH the lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chastellayn and alle the other his parents we shaH sende to the 8 kinge. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete falshed and treason shal punysshe aftir his good wylle.' Alle other thanme said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Thenne were chosen out aH the prysonners that were not of 12 the lynage of Josselin. and att yate of the said retrette some were hanged / some at wyndowes & some at batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and alle his parents there were bounde bothe hand & feet as 16 traytours and prysonners. the whiche Alayn accompanied with thre houndred spere men lede them toard the kinge. and first Alayn presented to pe kinge the Chastelayne of AruaH as he that had conspired & 20 machined that treason / and al other after. and to hym reherced Alayn aH how it was happed. and how Raymondyn recomanded hym to his good grace / and that he wold not be dysplayed yf he had take venge- 24 aunce on hys mortal enmyes that wend to haue muldred hym with treason, and that he sent to hym the Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices for to knowe by them the trouth of the faytte and for to 28 punysshe them at his plaisir and wylle / 'And how, Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so 1hardy to doo suche treason and so shamefuH dede for the raisonnable justice that late we dide in our resume / seeing & also 32 considering the grete treason that Josselin your vncele knowleched & confessed to haue doe?' 'By god,' said the king, 'ye were therof surquydous, 2 & it is wel right

1 fol. 56 b.

2 Fr. mont outre cuide.
yf euyl is comme to you therof.' 'Ha, noble kinge,' said thanne the chasteleyn, 'for your pite lete falle your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the 4 grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me to dvo soo.'

"By my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl companye of a traytour / and good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyl slee no gentylman with treson, For neuer I shaH ete tyl that ye be hanged with your vncele, for ye shal hold hym felawship, and also all them that are of your cohoracion.'

The kinge made to be take alhe them of hys cohorte or company, and were all hanged / and the Chastelain he sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his vncele Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte wel the kinge of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in Breytayne.

Here sayth thisstory that whan Alayn was retourned to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he hadd to hym and to the other referred this pat the kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right wel as a valyaunt & lawfuH justiser shuld doo. Thenne called Raymondyn to hym Henry Alayn & other of his lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns & good frendes, I enjoyn & charge you that ye dvo 28 edefye or bigge a pryorye with viii monkes, and that ye requeste them with rentes and renvenues such that honestly & goodly they may lyue on for euermore / they to pray there for the sowle of 1 my fader / for the 32 kingis nevew sowle and for the sowles of them that are slayn & ded in this quarrel.' And they alle said: 'they shuld soo dvo. And Raymondyn prayed them to recommande hym to the kingis good grace to hys 36 barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke
of them / and they were sorrowfull of their departement / and also of this that he wold nat lete them goo no further with hym. They retorned to Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and 4 cam to guerrerende · and wel he was there festyled and worshipfully cheryed of them of the toune. And here resteth this storye of Raymondyn · and shall recounte how Henry & Alayn toke leue of theyre lynee and cam 8 ayen to theyre fader.

Henry and Alain toke leue of theyre lynage & came to their fader and recounted to hym aH thadunerte of the 12 Chastellayn, how they were departed fro þeyr cousyn, and how he hadd commanded & charged them to fownde a pryory. 'By my feith,' said þeire fader. 'Alayn, now is the land wel clene délynered of the lynage of 16 Josselin; god on theyre sowles haue mercy, how be it they loned vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shal saye you what ye shal doo. First ye shal goo to the kinge & reuyre hym that it plese hym to gyue you a place 20 for to edeye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner how ye be commanded of your Cousyn to fownde it. and I byleue he shal gyue you a good answer.' And they said that thus shuld they doo. And thanne they 24 departed fro their fader, and so long they rode that they camme to Vannes and founde the kinge departed & was goon to 1Sassymon for to dysporte hym at Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to 28 the gate and passed & entred the Forest and rode so long tyl they came to the Castel. and founde the kynge goon to the park to the chasse / and the two brethren yed after & founde the king nyghe a grete tree by a 32 staung where he abode aftir the herte that houndes chassed. Thenne the two bretheren drew them self aparte bycause they wold not lette the kynge to see the dysporte / who perceyued them wel2 & condu theym good thanke 36

1 fol. 37 b.

They set out to the king.

and find him by a tree in the forest of Sassymon, waiting for a hart; but hide themselves till it is captured.

2 Fr. leur en scent moult bon gré.
therefore. and not long after he herte came that ranne in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the 4 curee made & gyue to the houndes as custome is to doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them self byfore the king and sawed hym moche honourably / and made wel theire message as theyre Cousin 8 had charged them. And the king welcommed hem & moche enquyred of them thestate of Raymondin and they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and after they reccounted to hym how he enjoyned & charged 12 them to edyfye & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monkes. them to reneste & empossesse with landis, revenues & rents, they to syng & pray therefor in the sowle of the kings nevew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the 16 sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray hym for a place where they shuld edyfye the said pryorye. 'By my feith,' said the king. 'the requeste 20 is wel lawfull & raysonable. and even now 'I shall lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fowned and made vp.' Thanne they came out of the weryne and came aft by the walle to thende of the clos. and 24 thenne said the king: 'Fair lorde, make here to be edyfied a Pryoryy and take asmoche of grounde as ye lyketh / and I gyue libertie & habaundonne you the forest for to cutte there the wode. and when the 28 monkes shall be stablysshed there, I enlyberte & habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle thider commyng & dwelling. And I graunte to them the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a 32 quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birdes. & wild beastes for theire lyuyng & sustenaunce of theire houshold · and also I gyue to them all the landes erable that are her about halfe a legge' / and of alle this he 36 made & gaf to them good & suffisazwt patents. and of

They come out and salute the king, and tell him of Raymondin and his will about the priory;

and ask for land to build it on.

The king leads them to a spot, where he gives them as much land as they require;

and grants to the monks the right of fishing, hunting, shooting, and wood cutting in the forest;

and gives some arable land, all on good patents.
The priory is built for eight white monks, who have an azure + on their outside robe.

1 fol. 58 b. Raymondin reconciles two barons of Guerrerend;

and leaves for Poitou, where he found many parts uninhabited.

having dismantled castles and other ruins, caused by past wars.

He arrives at the abbey of Mailleses,

and dwells there three days, gives jewels to the abbey church,

all these graunts & gestes the two brethern thanked the king moche humbly whiche made massons, carpenters, & other, to come, and in short tyme they made the chirche & the priorye. and there they stablysshed 4 whyte monkes. vnto the nombre of VIII. religious personnes, the which bero on theire vtterst habit ye a crosse of Azure / and enpossessed them wel for theire susteunce & cotidiane luyng / as now yet is. And 8 now resteth thystorye to spek of the king of Bretons and of the two bretheren. and retourneth to recounte how Raymondin gounernd hym self syn after.

Now telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymondin 12 din in the land of Guerreende 1 that he peased and acorded togidre two barons of the lande that long byfore hated ech other to deth. In so moche that he made them to be good frendes togidre, and theire 16 Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his leue of the barons & of the peuple, which sorrowed moche for his departing. and so long he rode that he came into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20 forests unhabyted / and in some places he sawe many wyld bestes, as hertes, hynde, & roo, wyld bores, and other beestes ynoough. and in other places many fayre playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24 'By my feyth,' said thanne Raymondin, 'it is grete pyte & dommage that suche a commodityouse Countre is nat enhabyted with peuple.' and many a fayre manoyr and places were on the ryuers there that soone might be 28 redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrown in tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to an auncyent Abbey called Maylleses, and therein were comprised thabbot and an houndred monkkis, beside 32 the Convers. and there herberowed Raymondyn for the grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and per he dwelled thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36
HE DOES NOT RECOGNIZE HIS HOME.

...came rydyng tyl he aproached & came nygh Lusy- 
...en. and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped 
toure and the new toune, and thenne he supposed not 
4 to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for 
...cause of the said toure & toune new made of late, and 
moche he meruaylled whan he herd the sowne of the 
trompes within the toure /.

8 In this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Ray-
mondin came aboue Lusythen, & he perceyued 
the toune walled round aboute with strong walles and 
fortified with deep dyches & grete. 'how,' said he to 
12 thauncyent knight, 'What may this be; mesemed 
right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to 
lusyngen / and yet me semeth soo?' thenne began 
thauncyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said 
16 to hym: 'How, sir knight, jape you with me / I telle 
you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toune 
that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in 
Lusyngen.' 'By my feyth,' said thauncient knight, 
20 'soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl with 
grete joye.' Now I shaftsey you some of Raymondyn's 
seruantys were sent before by thauncyent knight to 
anounce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and 
24 how be it she byleuemd them wel / she made no sem-
blaunt perof / but soone she caused the peple to be 
rely for to goo & mete with Raymondyn. and she her 
sel, accompanied with many ladyes & damoyselles, 
28 yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed 
honorably and rycheely. Thenne Raymondin lokd 
fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro 
the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in 
32 fayre ordynance, wherof he moche meruaylled, and 
whan they aproched they bygan to erye with a high 
voys, 'ha, ha, dere lord, welcome may you be.' And 
thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme 
36 ayenst hym / and demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes,
fro whens come you? 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen ferre hens?' They thanne, seeyng that he mysknowe the place for cause of the new toune & toure / said: 4

'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place bycause that my lady syn your departryng bath doo made and byld this toune & that high toure, and yonder ye may see her commyng aynest you.' Thenne 8 was Raymondin moche abasshed / and said not all that he thought. but when he remembred how she dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme he gaf hym self no menuyH yf she had doon soo. 12

Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably welcommed hym, sayeng in this manere: 'My lord, I am right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought & doon so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16 haue be reherced to me alredy.' And Raymondin answerd to her: 'Madame, it is by the grace of god and of you.' And talking togidre of this matere they entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20 grete that lasted eights dayes, And was there the Erle of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.' And after the feest they departed fro Lusynen and came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued hem 24 benygnely, and demanded of Raymondin where he had be so long, and he recorded to hym alle his auenent. And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful & glad. 1 And that doun, the brethren toke leue of 28 hym / and the one yede toward forests, and Raymondin toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she made a fayre child that was her second sone / he was 32 soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,2 and hadd an eere greter without comparisyson than that other was / but all hys other membres were replenysshed

1 fol. 60,

Melusine bears her second son Edon, who had a very great ear;
with beauté, the which Edon had syn to hys wyf the
Erle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth
thisorye / and speketh furthermore of Melusyne & of
4 Raymondyn her lord.

Thisorye sayth & certifyth that when the lady
had ended the terme of her childbed, and that
she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many
8 noble men, ladyes, and damoysselles were there, the
whiche, after the feest ful honourably toke their leue
& departed. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne
bylded bothe the Castel & toune of Melle. Also she
12 dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.1 and after she
made the borough & toure of saynt Maxence, and bygan
the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure
folk.

16 The second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone
that was named guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre
child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And
wete it that Melusyne had ever so good nouryces, and
20 had so grete care for her children that they mendid
& grewe so wel that every one that saw them mer-
uaylled. 2 And that tyme Melusyne bigged & found
many a fayre place througe the lande of Poytou unto
24 the duchie of Guyenne. She bielded the Castel and pe
burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre without
comparision. after that she dide doo make pe Toures of
Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the
28 toune, and thre leghes thens was a grete toure & bigge,
whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it
the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egle
in hys banere as emperour. That toure made the lady
32 to be walled & fortyfyed round aboute with grete
toures machecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel
Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou
and fortyfyed Saintes3 that was called at that tyme
he was after-
ward married
to the daughter
of the Earl of
March.

Melusyne gives a
feast.

builds the castles
and towns of
Melle and Max-
ence,
and begins the
abbey there.

Melusyne has
her third son
Guyon, who has
one eye higher
than the other;
her children are
so well tended,
that they grow
so that folk
marvel at them.

2 fol. 60 b.

She builds much
in Poytou: the
castle and town
of Parthenay,
and of Rochelle.

She fortifies the
Eagle's Tower,
said to have been
built by Julius
Cesar.

She builds Pons,
fortifies Saintes,

1 Fr. Waviron et Mermant. 2 Saintes.

3 Saintes.
builds Tallemounte, and many other towns and fortresses. 

Lynges / and after she made Tallemounte and Tallemundois and many other towns & fortresses. And gate & acquired so moche Raymondin through the polyeye & good gouernance of Melusyne, what in Bretayne, 4 what in Gascynne & in Guynene as in Poytou, that no prynce was about hym / but he doubted to dysplaise hym.

Sooone after Melusyne was delyuered of her foureth 8 man child, whiche hight Anthony, none fayrer was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he brought a token along his chyk, that was the foot of a lyon, wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche were 12 abasshed.

Here saith thisorthy, that the vii\textsuperscript{th} yere after Melusyne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at thende of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named ray-16 nald. none fayrer child might men see, but he was borne only \textit{1with} one eye / but it was so bright & so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennynges ferre on the sea, that is, one & twenty leghes ferre / and lyke-20 wyse on erthe, whatsoener it was. That same Anthony was full gracions & courteys, as ye shal here in thisorthy herafter.

Furthermore saith thisorthy, that the eight yere 24 Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a sone, and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth brought in hys mouthe a grete \& long toth, that apyred without an ench long & more / and therofter men 28 added to his propre name Geffray with the grete toth. and he was mochi grete \& hye, and wel formed \& strong, merueyllously hardy \& cruel, In so moche that euery man fered \& dradde hym when he was in 32 age / he made in his tyme many wonders \& merueyllses, as heraftir ye shal here in thisorthy.

Thisorthy sayth that the ix\textsuperscript{th} yere after Melusyne had a sone, that was the vii\textsuperscript{th}, \& liyte Froy-36
mond, that was fayre ynough, but he had on hys nose a top of heeris, and in his tyme he was moche deoute. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here herafter thystorye.

In this part sayth to vs thistorye that Melusyne was two yere without birth of child, but true it is that 8 in the xjth yere she had her2 xth sone, and was grete меревьллюсly / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the which was in the mydel of his forhed. he was so euyl & so cruel that at the fourth yere of 12 his age he slew two of hys nouryces.

The very history saith that so long norysshed Melusyne her children, that Vryan, which was the eldest & first born, was xvij yere old. he was grete and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete appertysie in armes, so that every man & woman had pyte of hys dyfformytee; for his vysage was short & large, hys one eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as grete as the handlynges of a Fane. and Edon his brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of yeres xvj, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon / and so pert & swyft they were, that alle tho that sawe them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruyH. they were beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many faytes & appertysies of armes in Jousters, tournoyeng, & in Lystes.

It happed that same tyme that two knyghtes of Poitou came fro Jherusalem agayn / and recounted there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damask had besieged the king of Cypre in hys Cite of Famagoce, & that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and put same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a daughter, whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were tuft of hair on his nose, and became a monk in the abbey of Mailleses.

Her tenth son Horrible had three eeyes, one in the middle of his forehead, and was very cruel.

Melusyne's eldest-born Urian is now eighteen, and is fair and strong, though his face is strange, and his ears large.

Edon is seventeen, Guyon is sixteene; Urian and Guyon love one another much.

Two Poitevin knights return from Jerusalem, and tell of the Sultan of Damascas besieging the King of Cyprus; and in what distress the king is, and how his heir is a daughter.

1 Fr. une petite tache vellue.
2 Fr. huitiesne, and so in Harleian MS. 418.
Urian hearing the tale, speaks to Guyon, and proposes to him to do some deeds of arms.

The knights from Jerusalem are sent for, and are questioned about where they have been.

Urian expresses his surprise that they did not stay and help the Christian king.

They explain that it was impossible to enter the town, as it was besieged by eighty thousand pagans.

ferfourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it. and he thenne said to his brother Guyon: 'By my feith, fayre brother, it were grete almese to socoure that kyng ayenst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght 4 bretherne. the land of our fader may not remayne without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherfore we owe the more to enterprise 3 vyages, and see where we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith en-8 haunced in worship & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said Guyon, 'ye said trouht. but what cause you to say soo, seeynyng that euery I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?' 'Southly,' said Vryan, 'ye say full well. Lete we send 12 for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage, to be ensured of them more playnly of the trouht.' they sent to the two knightes that they wold come & spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And 16 when they were come, the two bretherm welcommed & receyued them goodly. and aftir they bygan tenquyre of them the manere of their vyage / of the vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and 20 they said to them the playn trouht. 'We vnderstand,' said Vryan, 'that ye haue passed throug a yle wher a king cristens regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in 24 the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help & conforte hym, ye that are so renowned, Worthy and valyaunt knightes, consydering as it semeth to vs that alle good cristens are hold & bound to helpe eche 28 other specially ayenst the paynemys.' To this answered the two knightes: 'By my feith, gentil squyer & lord, wel we wyl that ye knowe that yf by eny manere we myght hane entred the toune without deth, & saf, 32 gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight ayenst wel lxxx. or houndred thousand paynemys, that thenne had besieged the toune wherein the said 36
URIAN AND GUYON RESOLVE TO FIGHT THE SARACENS.

CH. XX.]

king was. For ye oweth to wete that wel sole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd, wenying to make hym be styhil. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'your excusacion is good & iuste. but tell me ye men myghtly to reyse & lede with them a xxij or xxv thousand men of armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure the sayd kyng?' Thenne anserd one of the knightes: 8 'By my feyth, sire, yo' seen & considerd that the Cite is strong, and the kyng within valiaunt, hardy & worthy fighter of his personne / and he is accompanied with many good men of armes, & the town wel vytaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte / and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek of wer redy, and that my felawe & I should take thaduenture with them.' 'By my feyth,' said themne Vryan, 'my brother & I shall receyue you, & lede you thither, god before, and that shortly.' And when they understode hym say soo, they were moche glad, sayeng that ye they soo dyde, hit moned them of valyaunt courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thisstorye of these two knightes, and yet ferther speketh of Vryan & Guyon.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke lene of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of Jem.

In this partye sayth thisstorye that Vryan and his brother Guyon cam to Melusyne thaire moder, and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, ye vouchesaft, it were wel tyme that we shuld go fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre & straunge, Wherby we may acqyre honour & good
renommee in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne & understand the dyuere langages of the world. Also yf Fortune and good aventure wyl be propyce & conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wyH & courage to 4 subd cue & conquere Countrees & landes; For we consi dere & see that alredy we be eyghte bretheren / and are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme commyng, and to say that your landes & possessions 8 were parted in so many partes for our sustenauce & gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyflod shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be of grete estate, to the 1Regard of the high blood & 12 grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as now your grete estate. Wherfore as to my brother & I my self, we quytte our parte / except alone ly your good grace, throug that ye now shalH doo to vs 16 for our vyage, yf god wyl gyue vs grace to acomplysshe.' 'By my feyth, children,' said thenne Melusyne, 'your requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous herte, and therfore it oweth not to be refused ne gayn- 20 sayd. and vpon this matere I shalH entreat your faders, For without hys counseH I owe not to accordre your requeste.' Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wyH 24- of theire two sones; the whiche answerd & sayd, 'By my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I assent gladly therto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'ye say wel; and wete it that they shal do no ping in theire 28 vyage but that it shalH tourne to theire grete lawde & honour, yf god wyl.' Then came ayen Melusyne to her two sones, and thus she said to them: 'Fayre children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For 32 your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I. and care you not for no ping, For within short tyme I shall ordeyne & purveye for your faytte with goddis grace & help / in such wise that ye shalH konne me 36
good gree & thanke theryfore. but telle me whether &
to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to
thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary
4 to you theryfore.' Thanne ansuerd Vryan: 'Madame,
wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn
tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged 1by the
Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf
8 it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayle
& socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers pay-
nemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be
purveyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and
12 with goddis grace, my dere children, I sha\th ordeyne
therof in suche manere that ye shal be remembred of
me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren
thenne knelled doun byefore theyre moder / and thanked
16 her moche humbly of her purveyaunce & good wyle.
And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she
kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her
herte / though she made withoutfourth chere of theire
20 departyng. For she loued them with moderly loue, as
she that had mourysshed them.

Thystorye sayth that Melusyne was full curyous
and besy to make al thinges redy pat were
24 necessary to her sones for theire vyage. She made
Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be
vytaylled & redy to say\H / and pe nauye was so grete
in nombre that it was suffysaunt for fourre score thou-
28 sand men of armes to say\H in. And in the meane
while the two bretheren sent for the two forsaid
knights, & said to them that they shuld be redy to
meve fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them.
32 And they ansuered: 'Lordes, we be all redy. and
many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to
go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrous
to serne you and to doo your playris.' 'By my feyth,'
36 said Vryan, 'right grete gramercy to you. We sha\H

1 fol. 64.
They tell their
mother they
intend accour-
ing the King of
Cyprus,
so she promises
to provide what
is necessary for
sea and land.

They thank her;
and she, weeping,
kisses them both,
for she loves
them with
motherly love.

Melusine pre-
pares galleys,
carracks, and
other ships, and
victuals them,
enough for
eighty thousand
men of arms.
The Jerusalem
knights are sent
for,
and tell the
brothers they are
ready to go with
them.
The men and stores are put on board the fleet; the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene. The brethren bid their friends farewell, and are accompanied to their ships by their parents. Melusine draws them apart, and gives them each a magic ring, which, whilst they wear it and remain true, they will never lose in a good quarrel, nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

The brothers thank their mother, who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;  
1 fol. 61 b.  
The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

110  
THE GIFT OF MAGIC RINGS.  
[CH. XX.  

'Pede them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she be-toke the kepyng & gouernance of her two sones; and 4 had grete foyson of gentylmen knightes & squyers, vnto the nombre of 2 two thousand Vc men of armes, & fyue hundredd archers / and as many men with crosse-bowes. And themne the vytaylles, arterylry, harneyes & 8 horses were charged in to the vessels, an syn mounted the men into the same. There were seen baners & standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and of many other instruments was herd, that every one 12 enjoyed that sawe it / And the two brethren toke leue of peire brethren and frendes, & of the peple of the land, that moche tenderly wept for theire departyng. And Raymondin & Melusyne conveyed their children 16 vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children, ynderstand this that I wil te§ you & commande.' / 'Children,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynges 20 that I gyue you / of whiche the stones ben of one lyke vertue. and yrete it that as long that ye shalH vse of feythfulness, without to think eny enyl, ne doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / haunyg always 24 the said rynges & stones vpon you, ye shalH not be dyscomfyted ne ouercome in no faytte of armes, yf ye haue good quareH. ne also sort or enchauntment of art Magique, ne poysons of whatsoemeuer manere shul 28 not lette ne greve you / but that assoone as ye shalH see 3 them they shalH lese theyre strengthe.' and also delynered to cyther of hem one / and they thanked her moch, kneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne 32 to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children, I wol & charge you that wher so euer ye be, ye here the deuyne seruyse or euer ye doo eny oper werk.  
2 Fr. quatre mille hommes d'armes; no particulars given. 36
also that in all your affayres & dedes ye clayne & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serve hym diligently, and loue & drede hym as your god & your maker. and that allwayes ye honour & worship with all your power holy churche, beynge her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand ayenst alle her eny wyllers. Help ye & cownseyle the pouere wydowes, 8 nourysshe or doo to be norysshed the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyne ayde and conforte unto alle good maydens that men wol haue dysheryted unlawfully. loue the gentyl- men, and hold them good companye. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, both vuto grete & lesse. and yf ye see a man of armes pouere, & faH in deceye by hap & fortune of juste werre, re- fresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and yf the personne is worthy to have it, and yf ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe wel that prodigalite or folysshe largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserved to be of you rewarded shuld not be wel apayed ne content therof / and the strauners shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or belighte no thing but that ye may fournysse & hold it. and yf ye promyse eny thing, tary not the deleyneraunce of it, For long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte. kepe wel ye rauysshe no woman / ne be conytoyous of other mens wyues, of whom yo wil be loued and hold for your frendes. believe not the CownseyH of none / but first ye knowe his manere, dealen & condycyons. also beleue not the cownseyH of Flatterers, and enuyous, & anaraycyons / ne suche putte not in none office aboute you. For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour to call on God for help, and to serve and fear Him; to honour and sustain holy Church; to help widows, orphans, and ladies; to frequent the company of gentlemen; to be courteses to all; to help the un-fortunate; to be thrifty; to keep promisses; to abstain from ill-using women; to beware of flatterers and envious persons;
MELUSINE'S ADVICE.

[CH. XX.

& shame, than ony worship or prouffy. kepe wel ye
borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf
for nede ye be constrayned for to borow / as soone as ye
may / make restitucion of it / And pus ye shal molwe 4
be without danger, & lode honourable lyf. And yf
god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyce in
subduyng your enmyes & their landes, gouerne wel
your folke and people after the nature & condycion 8
that they be of. and yf they be rebell, kepe wel that
ye surmounte & overcom e hem without to lese eny
sche rycht that longith to your lordship & seignourye /
and that ye euer make good watche vnto tyme ye hace 12
vaynquysshed at your wyle. For yf ye onetredde
your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after their
wyle. but alwayses kepe wel, whether they be euyl &
hard, or debonnaire, that ye no haue & sette new 16
customes that be vnraysonwable / and of them take
only your due and ryght, without to retayH hem
without and ayenst raisin. For yf the peple is
pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20
he shuld not molwe be holpe of them att hys nede /
wherfore he might faH into grete daunger & seruytude.
For wete it wel / that a flyes of a yere is more
prouffytable / than the flies pat is shorne twyes or 24
thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I defende &
forbede you that ye byleue not the Counseill of none
exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche
the hynderdyng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28
hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfull cause / and
ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld
mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship &
honour. . And abone alH things I forbede you pryde / 32
and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldyng
right aswel to the leste as to the moost / and desyre
not to be auenged at uttermost of alH the wronges don
to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & raysonn-
36
MELUSINE PROVIDES GOLD, SILVER, AND STORES.

able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreyse not your enmyes though they be litel, but make euer good watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conquering, that atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord & sire / but be commyn & pryue bothe to more & lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now 8 to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke & curteys in theire dignite & seignouryes. Haue an herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your 1 enmyes / and shew to them your puyssausance and valyauntyse. and yf god endoweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the werre, byleue the counseyH of the valyaunt & worthy 16 men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes, For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For always wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther; 20 and whan the sage seeth pat he is not able to resyste ayenst the strengthe of his enmyes, he seketh & purchaceth always a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and 24 thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value. Wherfore loke ye, forbere not your enmyes there, as ye may putte them vnder your subgection with honour. 28 And thenne yf ye shew them favoour & curtoysye, that shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes / 32 yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye somewhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that men owe to refuuse good traytee, who that may haue it '/ Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Melu-

36 syne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked MELUSINE.
The brothers thank their mother for her advice.

1 fol. 67.

Melusine tells them she has well stored their ships; and giving them to God's care, bids them remember her advice, and act on it.

Her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd: 'Children, I haue sent gold & syluer ynoughe in to your ship for to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith your men for foure yere. 'And haue no doubte or care for bred, bysckyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flessh salted, fyssh ynhough, & good wynes suffysaunt to long tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fylled & purveyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the sauegarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke & remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fullfyH it after your power.'/

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of their moder Melusyne and entred their ship.

Thenne they toke leue of theyre fader and moder and entred their vessel. This doon, the ancles were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the patrons made their recommendacions to god as customed it is, to that by hys benygne grace he wyl 20 graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were 24 out of sight / . Thanno departed Raymondyn & Melusyne, and theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and re-28 toureneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon his brother, and of theyre felawship that saylled on the see, holding their way toward Cypre. /

Thyistory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were 32 departed fro Rochelle they saylled long on the
see, and passed by many yles, & refreshed them in many places; and so long they rowed that they sawe many vesselles that chased two galeyes / and thenne the Patron shewed them to be two brethren / and they answered, and demanded of them what was best to doo. By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane while we shal make our men to take theyre armes & harneys on them at al auauntures.' By my feith,' said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they did so. And thanne the galeye departed abrode, and saylled toward the straungers / and escryed hem, & demanded of them what they were, and they answered, 'We be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the paynemys that foloweth & chaceth vs, and we see wel ye be Cristen, and so are aH they that come after you.' By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, 'we ben as ye suppose and saye.' By my heed,' said one of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / goo & haste your felowship, For ye haue found fayre auenture, yonder be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Fama-gosse / and who might dystroye them, he shalldoo grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan of Damaske grete dommage.' Whan thenne they of the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned & announced it to the two bretheren / and to their folke whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of their shippes, and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere & darts, stones, & wild fyre alredy / also bowes & arowes in their handes / gonnes & pouldre to shote with. There bygan tompes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles & paynemys perceyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For they had never supposed that so grete puyssance & strengthe of cristen men had been so nygh them / but till they see two galleys being chased. They send to see who are in them. The messengers find the galleys to be from Rhodes, and that the vessels that chase them are the Sultan's of Damascus, who is on his way to Famagossse, to fight the King of Cyprus. On hearing this news, Urian and Guion prepare their ships to fight, and row towards the paynim Sultan. The infideles, surprized at the numbers of the Christians,
DEFEAT OF THE SARACENS.

[CH. XXI.

always they putte hem self in aray gooyns abacke, but oure galeyes aduyronned them round about on al sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte their gonnes. And whan the paynemys sawe this / and that they 4 myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was in it into the see / and fyelled it with wode, oyle, & talowe, and with sulphre & brymstone. and whan they 8 sawe our folk approched nygli them they sette it afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled 1 they lefte it behynd them to mete first with our folk / but as god wold they were warned therof & kept / themself 12 wel therfro / and assaylled theire enmyes at the other syde right vygourously. There was grete shotyng of crosbowes & gonnes / and soone after our folk entred byforce and strengthe of armes the shippes of the 16 paynemys / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted, and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to their felawes and to them that wer within the two galeyes of 20 Rodes / and syn rowed & saylled both so long that they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they refresshed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon the fustes & galeyes that they had taken vpon the 24 paynemys, and they soiurned there foure dayes. And the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come into the Cite / and they dide soo / and were there honourably receyued / and the said maister demanded 28 them of the cause of their commyng. And the two brethern told hym that they were come forto socoure the king of Cypre / And he asked them full humbly of what lande they were, and what they were / and the 32 two brethern told to hym all the truth. Thenne made the maister to them greter chere than tofore / and said to them that he shuld send for som of his bretheren / & that he shuld goo with hem to helpe & socoure the 36
king of Chipre. And the two brethern thanked hym moche humbly therefore. 

Now sayth thystorye that so long abode, & sojourned the two brethern at Rodes tyl the maister had assembled his folke, and vytaylle & laden with good men of armes, & archers six galeys, & saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued 8 nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght. Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's galeye, said to the two brethern: 'Sires, in good feyth it were good & wel doon to send a Caruell vnto yonder 12 yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I vouch-saf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or Caruell, saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some of hem descended & foundo many grete fyres & lodgis, 16 and by the experience that they sawe, they extimed them that had lodged there to the nombre of xxx thousand men / and that they myght wel have dwelled per foure or fyue dayes. For they found without the lodgys grete 20 foyson of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then they came ayen in to their VesseH, and retourned toward our folke / & recounted to them the trouth of all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said thenne 24 the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that are gooyng toward the sawdan at the siege, and that they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of theire felawship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for 28 certayn they were soo / and of them they sayled & rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste, where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and men saith that there is the potence or cros wherom the 32 good thef Dysmas was cruysfyeed whan our lord was nayled to the Cros for our redempcion. 'Sire,' said the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that lytil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson 36 for to knowe tydinges, & for to wete yf they wyl
The arrival at Cyprus.

They put into the harbour, and send a message to the Abbot, who is glad to hear of their arrival.

The Captain of the place rows to our folk, and is abashed at Urian’s appearance.

Being assured that Urian has come to help the King of Cyprus, he promises to open the country to him, and give his vessels anchorage.

Receyue vs for to putte our nauye in surete within theyre clos.’ ‘Maister,’ said Uryan, ‘let it be doon in the name of god after your playsire.’ Thenne they arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4 wordes to thabbot ther, that they shuld not doubt ye, For they were their brethren. And the maister of Rodes with other went thider. And whan thabbot & monkes knew the tydinges and the commyng of the two brethren, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of their brethren to Lymas to announce & telle pe socours that was arryued at theire porte. Thenne when a knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he was fayn & glad, and made forthwith a galyotte to be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to whom he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons were in a ryche paulyllon, that they had don to be dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his brother, and the maister of Rodes. And whan he saw hym he was abasshed of the valeur & of the grete fyerste of hym, & neuerpeles he yede & salued hym honourably, and Vryan receyued hym goodly & benyngly. 24 ‘Sire,’ said the Knight, ‘ye be welcome in to this land.’ ‘Fayre sire,’ said Vryan, ‘moche grete thankes to you.’ ‘Sire,’ said the knight, ‘it is don me to understand that ye departed fro your Countrie to thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said Uryan, ‘it is truth.’ ‘Then, sire,’ said the knight, ‘it is reson that al be open byfore you, where ye wyl by al the royalmie of Cypre, through al 32 tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shall be please to goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted lord the king of cypre, hit shall be soone apparyled & open to you, when it shal lyke you, & also the porte
to putte your vessels in saucete.' 'By my feith,' said Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire knight, it is tyme to move, For my brother and I haue grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it plaise god that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many 8 as it lyke you / and take som of your men with you, and we shal goo by land.' 'By my feith,'sayd Uryan, 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan made some of his men to be armed, unto the nombre 12 of foure hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons, knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and 16 the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his felowship rode with the said knight that guyded hym so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and 20 were right well lodged. And then came the nauye, & arryued to the porte, and the horses were all had out of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and lodged them in pe feld without the toune within 24 tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche grete playsaunce to see thoost whan they were alle lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them within 28 the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the clos in saucet / and they commytted good folke to deffende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came there for to doo som euyl. 'Now shal I lene to speke 32 of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune that moche wel aduyed thoost and the maynten of the folke, & moche preysed it in his herte / and said wel they were folke of Faytte & of grete enterpyse, whan 36 so few people enterpyred for to haue the vyctory ouer
The Captain of the town is surprized at the bravery of Urian, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men; but Urian's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urian has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urian's arrival and of his forces,

Thystorye sayth that the knight made a lettre, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the materie of 16 Uryan, & of his brother, of theire men, & of theire conmyng, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys nevev, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste 20 bere this lettre to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng / and whatsoever it happeth that god forbode, but al good to you, nedes ye muste doe it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shal putte bothe the lettres & 24 myself in grete jeopardye & aventure, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god preserue me I were taken of our enmyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the lone of you, myn uncle & 28 of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyuered fro hys enmyes, & fro the mortal parle wherein he is now, I shal putte myself in aventure / and I pray 1 to god deuoutly, that it 32 please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooyng & conmyng in saute.' / 'Thus owe men to serue theire lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalte wel rewarded therof.' and aneone he toke the lettre, & 36

the sawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say trouth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therfore the 4 knight meruaylled, and held it to grete audacite & hardynes of herte, and to grete valyuanee. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of hys vysage, and also of guyen hys 8 brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdue & conquer all the world.' and he said to hymself, pat god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the 12 cristen feyth, and that he shuld lete it to be known to the kyng by certayn message.

1 fol. 71.
delyuered it to his niewe / that mounted on horsebacke, & rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shal reste of hym / and I shal retourne there I lefte to speke of Vryan / and shal say howe he governed hymself whiles the messager yede toward the kinge. how wel he knew nat of it. /

Thystory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister 8 of Rodes and the Captayn of the place, and demanded of them thus: 'Fayre lorde, is the sawdan somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpyse' / and they ansuered, 'that ye for certayn' / 'and how,' said Vryan, 12 'was he neuer byfore this place to make warre than now?' / they ansuered that, 'nay' / 'and what thenne,' said Vryan, 'hath caused hym to passe the see now?' sith he is man of enterpyse, I mervey'd that so long 16 he held hym styl, seeyng ye be his nigh neygbours, and also that he hath so grete puissaunce, as it is told me.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the Captayne, 'it is veray & trouth that our kyng hath a moch fayr dough-

ter of the age of xv. yere, the which the sawdan wolde haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it that euere here tofore we had trewes toogidre of so long 24 tyme that no mynde is of pe contrarye. and when the sawdan hath seen that our kyng wold not graunt to hym his doughter, he sent ageyn to hym the trewes with a defeyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the 28 see with a .C. & fyfty thousand paynemys, and came & made soone his harneyes to be had ouer on erthe, & wente and layd siege tofore Famagoce, where he found the kyng all vpnuvered of his baronye, that knew not of 32 his commyng / but syn there be entred moche folke within the Cite ayenst his euyl gree, & there is now fayre scarmysshing where grete losse hath be on both partes / and syn the paynemys have refresshed them-

The Sultan challenged the king, and laid siege to Fama-
goce, which was unprepared; 1 fol. 71b.

but now rein-
forements have entered the town, and there is fair skirmish-
ing.

and despatches his nephew on horseback to the King at Dama-

Uryan asks about the Sultan of Damascus,
The Saracens are a hundred thousand strong; but they lost some vessels, as was learnt from one of our ships, who saw them pass, chasing two Rhodian galleys, but saw no more of them.

The Master of Rhodes tells the Captain of Urian's victory, which explains their non-appearance.

Urian, learning that love has made the Sultan fight, says that he is the more to be feared, because love is so powerful that it makes even cowards brave.

1 fol. 72.

and states that next day, after divine service, he will set out in quest of him.

At the third sound of the trumpets they marched.

wel a Cm. but at this last voyage they have lost a parte of their ships & of their folke, which they abide fore in the yle of Coles, For one of our galleys of the blakke hytle that pursyewd them told it to vs, 4 & how they chaced two galleys of the hospytal of Rodes / and wete it that they ne wote not where they bycame syn, For they taryed after we by the space of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that 8 they came not, they departed thens & came before famagoce at siege. 'By my feyth, sire,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'this might wel be veray trouth. but see here my lord Vryan and hys brother, that shuld 12 wel ansuere therof, For they hane be aH dyscomfyted & slayn bythere strength & valiantis, and they hane gyuen to vs there fustes & their nauye.' 'In good feyth,' sayd the knight, 'that playseth me wel, and 16 blessid be god therof.' 'My lord,' said the Captayn, 'now hauke I recounted to you why the werre is meued, and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the see.' 'In the name of god,' said Vryan, 'loue hath 20 wel so moche & more of puyssance than of suche enterpрыse to doo. And wete that syn the sawdan is enterpрыsed of force of loue, the more he is to be doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche 24 of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to doo right grete enterpрыse / & that before he durst not passe. And therfore thenne it is aH certayn to this, that the sawdan is hardly & enterprenant 1the more 28 he doth hym to be doubted / but always be doo the wylle of god. Fcr we shall departe hens to the playsire of god to morow by tymes after the denyne servyce for to goo & vspyte them.' And then he made to be 32 cryed & proclaimed with the trompette that every man shuld make redy hys harneys. and they departed after the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre ordynauce, euerone vnder his banere / and bade them 36
to siew the vanward / and so they die. here I shal leue to speke of them / and shal retourne there as I lefte to speke of the Captayns nevew that moche strongly rode toward Famagoce / and so moche exployted his way that he came about midnyght to the Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytl mountayn, & loked down into the valeye, and then he bygan to perceyue 8 & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys, that he ne wych which way to draw for to entre the 12 toun. and there he was long tyme in grete poughte. It happed that about the spryg of the day foure score basynets, straugers of dyuerese nacyons, yssued out at a posterne of the Cyte, & commevyd al thooost by 16 manere of batayll / and that same coure the watche departed, & the moost part of them was retornned to theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some of them that had watched without they were ware of 20 hem, & supposed they had be of their company, and came nygh to the tente of the sawdane / and thenne they bygan to launche & smyte with speeres & with swerdes on al the paynemys that they mete & re- 24 countred / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete desray, & made moche horryble occysyon & slagtir of paynemys after the quantite 1 that they were of. Thenne was al the host a frayd, and bygan to crye alarme 28 & to harneys / then bygan thooost to take on them theire armures. And when the cristen men sawe the force & strengthe of theire enemyes that bygan to ryse, they retornned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng & 32 castyng to therthe al that they reconntred on theire waye. And when the messaunger sawe so grete affraye & noyse he cam at al aventure & broched hys hors with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges 36 throug out all the oost of pe paynemys / and he had

The Captain's nephew, that carried the letter to the king, arrived at the city of Fama- gosse, sees it surrounded with paynims, and does not know how to enter it.

At the spring of day, eighty basinets leave the city, and when the paynims' watch- men are in their tents,

the basinets fall upon the paynims, cut their tent ropes, and slay many of them.

But on the host of the Saracens aruing,

they run back towards the city.

The messenger seeing the ad- venture, spurt his horse, rides to the basinets,
and tells of the arrival of the Lusignans with eight thousand warriors,

which gladdens them,

and makes the Sultan sad and angry.

The fight continues, but the paynems are driven back, and the Sultan sounds a retreat.

The messenger delivers his letter to the king,

who thanks God on reading it that he has not been forgotten.

The king orders the church bells to be rung, processions to be made,

not go long when he found hymself atwix the Cite & them that so had commoeuyd thoost, as said is. And then he knew them soone ynoough that they were of the garnyson of the Cyte, and escryed them, saying: 'ha, 4 ha, fayre lordes, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng you good tydnynges; For the floure of the noble cheualrye of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue 8 dyscomfyted alredy a grete part of the Sodanis folke vpon the see / and they bryng with them wel eyght thousand men. And thenne when they understode hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyfuH, 12 and entred the toune ayen without eny losse. wherof the sawdan was moch wofuH & angry. And then he came & bygan the scarmoushe before the barers & many paynemys were there slayn & dede / and they 16 of Cypre made theire enemes to recule abacce with strengthe / and the sawdan made the trompette to sowne & caH the retrette when he sawe that he myght doo none other thing. And þen came the said mes- 20 saunger byfore the kynge, & made the reverence on hys vnclis byhalue, and presented the lettre. And the kynge receyued hym moche benyngly, & tok away the wax and opend the lettre & sawe the tenour 1of hit. / 24 and syn heued vp his handes joyntly toward heuen, & said: 'ha, a veray glorious god, Jhesu Criste, I þank regracye & mercye the ryght denoity & humbly of this, that thou hast not fortoone me that am thy pouere 28 creature and thy pouere seruaunt, that haue long tyme lyued here with/this Cite in grete doubt & feere, and in grete myserye of my pouere lyuyng and my folke also.' And thenne he made to be announced in al the chirches, 32 that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons shuld be made with crosses & baners, and with torches breuyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures, prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his mercyfuH & 36
benynge grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the handes & daunger of mysbyleuers paynmys. And thanne by-gan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght grete whan the tydynges of the socours commyng to them was knowen of aH. And when the paynemys vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte made, they were moche abasshed why they made & 8 demened so grete feeste. ‘By my feyth,’ sayd the saudan, ‘they have herd some tydinges that we wote not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng that they have folke ynouge & vtyailles also for to defende & withstande ayenst vs.’ And here resteth theystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd The King of Cyprus’s daughter, Ermine, The paynims are abashed at the rejoicings of the Christians.

The history saith to vs thus / that when the damoyselle knew of the socours & help that soone she sent for hym that had brought the tydinges therof, and he came to her in her chambre & made to her the reuerence. ‘Frend,’ said Ermyne, ‘ye be wel-come to me; but now teH me of your tydinges.’ and he recounted to her al that was of it. ‘Frende,’ said the mayde, ‘have ye seen that folke that commeth to socoure my fader?’ ‘By my feyth, ye,’ said the messenger, tells of the men who have come to succour the king: on hearing of the help, sends for the messenger, and questions him.

‘By my feyth, ye,’ said the messenger, ‘they are the moost appert in armes, and the fayrest men that ever entred in to this land, and the best arrayed & purveyed of all thinges.’ ‘Now teH us,’ said the damoyselle, ‘of what land they are, & who is the chief Captayn & lord of them.’ ‘By my feyth, my damoyselle, they be of Poytou, and led them two yong & fayre damoyseaulx brethren, that be named of Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde full grown.’
and of their locks.

1 fol. 74.

Ermine sends an euch to Urian, and a ring to Guion, by the messenger, and bids him salute them on her behalf.

The king gives the messenger an answer to the letter he brought, and to divert the attention of the enemy, orders another sortie.

Upon which the messenger goes out at another gate.

Frende,' said the damoyselle, 'be they so fayre damoyseaux as ye say?' 'By my feth,' said the messenger / the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of fayre behauyn & maynten, but hyys vysage is short & large in trauere / and hath one ey rede, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eeyrs grete to merueyH. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that euers I sawe / and the yongest is not of so 8 hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuyse, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquere 12 & subdue vnder them aH the world.' 'Frende,' sayd Ermyne, 'shah ye goo agayn soone toward them.' And he answerd, 'my damoysele, assoone as I may haue tyme & place conuenable & propyce for to yssue & go out of 16 the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.' 'Frend,' said the damoyselle, 'ye shal on my behalue salute the yong brethern, and ye shah de- lyuere to the eldest this euch, 1and telle hym bere it 20 for the louve of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamd ye shal take to pe lesse, and ye shah salew hym mocho on my byhalf.' And he answered, 'my damoyselle, I shall doo it rigithe gladly.' He thanne 24 departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his answere in a lettre, and made grete foyson of men of armes to arme them redyly, and them made he to yssue coerently out of the cyte and entred in to the 28 oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And pen yssued paynemys out of their ententes without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyers, 32 and many men slayn & wounded of bothe partes. AH thoost arryued where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messanger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro al the oost, so that 36
he was not perceiveyed. And thanne he rode hastily toward his uncle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydyinges.

4 And dureth not long the scarmouche, For the sawdan made it to be cessed, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shall retourne to speke of

8 Vryan & of his brother.

In this parte telleth this history that Uryan dide his trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day; & roos & commanded euery man to appareyH hym, 12 and put saddelles on their horses / and soone after the two brethern herd their masse, & semblably dyde the other prynces & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk, 16 and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, eueryman shuld be redy that was of the Vanwarde. And they bying in such estate, the Capteyns nevow 20 arryued there, and delyuered the lettre to his uncle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith, opene it, and sawe by the tenour of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte 24 bothe the fortresse and the toune at the wyH & commandement of the two brethern. Also that he shuld commande to all good tournes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them 28 entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them. And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode all pe substance & matere of it, he shewed the lettre to Vryan, & to guyon his brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they 32 knew the tenour of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had announced to them thauenture of the siege, and redde to them the lettre on hye. 'Thenne,' said Uryan to the 36 Captayn, 'we thanke moche the king of the worship
Urian thanks the Captain for the king's intentions, and asks what force the Cyprians have in all their fortresses; because he wishes to fight the Sultan, and end the war.

The Captain says that would be hard to do, because the paynys have one hundred thousand men.

1 fol. 75.

Urian replies they have a good cause, that victory lies not on the side of numbers, and that Alexander fought the world with twenty thousand men.

Which speech cheered the Captain, who promised a company of eight thousand men; which Urian says is enough.

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our entencyon is not to entre in to thes tounes ne castelles, yf we may goodly passe without fourth, For we thinke to kepe the feldes, yf god wyl, & make good werre ayenst the 4 sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out of all your garnysons the Fortresses alwayes kept / and wete it pat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god 8 before we tende & purpose to gyue batayle to the Sawdan, & to putto to termynacion, & ende this warre. For therfore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,' said the Captayn, 'that shall be hard to doo, For the 12 paynemys are in nombre wel CML and more.' 'Care you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we have good right in oure caas / they are come vpon vs without cause / and though we had goon on them vtnto their 16 owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemies of god / and doubleles though they be of grete nombre to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge than doth 20 a sacke fuH of whette / ne victorye also lyeth not in grete multitude of people / but in good rule & ordyn-

ance. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that sub-
dued so many & dyuerse landes, wold not haue with 24 hym aboute the nombre of xxtd thousand fyghtyng men for one journey ayenst aH the world. And thanne whan the Captayne herd hym speke so valyauntly, he held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was 28 wol able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I shaH enforce your oost with foure thousand fighting men, and of two thousand brygandyners & cresbowes, & other.' 'By 32 my fethy,' said Vryan, 'that is younge / now doo that we may haue hem to half a journey nygh oure enemys,' and he ansuered there shuld be no favte of it. And then came there the Captayns nevew, and 36
Kneled before Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in this manere: 'Noble damoyseaulx / the moost fayre mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe salueth you 4 bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels' / and thenne he
toke the ouche of gold that was sette with many a ryche
& precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan: 'Sire, hold
& receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, daughter to
8 my liege lord the kyng, that requyreh & beseeche you
to were it on you for her sake.' Vryan toke it joy-
ously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his
cotte of armes, and said to hym: 'My frende, right
12 grete thankes & thousand mercys to the damoyselle
tha so moche honour sheweth to me / Wete 1 it that I
shaH kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramery
to you messanger & brynger of it.' And after he pre-
16 sented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsaid
damoysellis byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere
it for the loue & sake of her / And guyon ansered that
so shuld he doo, and putto it on his fynger / and
20 thanked moche the damoyselle / and be messanger also /
and the brethern gaf moche ryche yeftis to the same
messanger. And soone after the trompette blew, and
everyman putte hym selfe fourth on hys way. and
24 there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynauence.
And the Captayn sent to aH the Fortresses & tounes,
and made to yssue out & assemble togidre aH the men
of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre
28 that the Captayn had sayd to the two brethern fyue
hundred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys
felaship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly
they departed, and went fourth tyl they came a lytil
32 before myday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete
ryuere / and there were foyson of trees / also there was
a quarter of a leghe thens a grete bridge, where they
muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were
36 but seuen leghes / and there made Vryan hys folke to
MELUSINE.
be lodged, and said he wold abyde there the said Captayn and his men that he shuld bring with hym. There they laye that nyght, and abode tyll the morne noone. but alwayes some knightes were goon for their dys-4 porte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv men of armes that were descended therat / and had their speris in their fystes, and the salades after the guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of 8 anoþer syde they sawe come about four houndred men 1of armes, that peyned them self moche for to passe ouer for to greve them of the other side / thanne came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & de-12 manded of them what they were / and one of them ansuerd, ‘we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught 16 with vs, and they haue slayn wel an C good men that were of our felawship.’ ‘Now, fyayre lordes,’ said oure knyght, ‘yf ye can hold you, ye shal soone haue socours & ayde.’ And thenne the knight broched hys hors, 20 and waloped toward hys felawes, and recounted to them shortly all thauentre. And whan they vnder- stode this they hastly came to the oost, and mete with xxii crosbowes men, to whom they bade they shuld hye þem toward the bridge for to help the xv men of armes that were there ayenst thenmys. And whan they vnderstode this they walked fast, & cam nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristen that were 28 ouerthrawn on the bridge by strokkes of speerys. ‘Fourth,’ said then one of them, ‘we tary to longe / perceyue you not how this Dogges oppressen vlaynly these valyaunt & worthy crystens?’ / and anone they 32 bended þeir crosbowes, & shot all at ones / and ouer- threwe dow on the bridge fro their horses with that first shotte xxii paynemys. Whan the mysbyleuers paynemys sawe this they were sore abasshed, and 36

The fifteen, on being asked, say that they are Christians, and the other company paynins, who have fought them, and killed one hundred of their company. 1 fol. 76.

Urian’s knights help the small company of Christians;
withdrew themself somewhat backward fro the bridge. Thenne yede the cristen men, and releuynvd vp their felawes that were ouerthrrown on the bridge / and thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and the 1Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his foot on the bridghe / but made to come there their 8 archers, & thenne bygan the scarmussling strong & grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the paynemys that they had withdrawe them self apart. For the knightes came to the oost and hercheered to

12 Uryan the tydinges therof, the whiche moch appertly armed hymself, and made lastly a thousand men of armes to take their harneys on them, & rode forth toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand 16 men of armes, & C crosbowe men to folowe hym, yf he nede had of them / and commanded that all the oost shuld be in ordynaunce of batayH, & betoke it to the kopyng & gouernaunce of guyon his brother, and of the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the standard to passe fourth rydyng in batayH moche ordynately / and was Vryan before, hauying a staf on his fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyped, that one marched nothing afore that other. But or they were come to the bridge there were come eight thousand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but 28 anoone came there Vryan, whiche alyghted / toke hys speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were the crosbowe men on bothe sydes of hym vpon the bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made them to withdrawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan cryed ‘Lusynen’ with a hye voys & lowde, and yede 36 & marched ayenst hys enemys, hys banere euery before and rescue some of their friends on the bridge from the paynims, 1 fol. 76 b. who retire to bring up their archers.

Uryan heare of the skirmish, and rides with a thousand men to the bridge, leaving his host in charge of Guyon.

Eight thousand paynims came against him, who at first press his company, but are at last repulsed. Uryan crying ‘Lusignan!’ rushes with his men against the enemy,
drives them over
the bridge,
presses them
hard,
gets his
horses over
the bridge.

His rear coming
up frightens the
paynims,
who flee toward
their friends.

Uryan’s com-
pány chase the
pagans,
killing many,
and cause them
to leave their
spoil.

The paynims
rally with their
friends upon a
mountain,

and hys men after that assailled the fals dogges
moche asprely; Whiche of the other syde bygan to
launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on je
brest with hys speere so demesurably, that hys speere 4
apered at bak syde of hym. they medled them
fyersly toigidre. but at last the paynemys lost the
bridge, and many of them fell down in to the rynere.
And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lyghtly / 8,
and there bygan the baytayl moche cruel. For there
were there sore hurt & slayn on both partes. but
euer the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of
ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he 12
perceyued that his enemies wold mounte on theire
horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the
arregarde that asprely passed overer the bridge / and
when the paynemys perceyued them they were sore 16
affrayed / and who that myght flee, fledd toward theire
folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes
& othre troussage. Uryan than lepte on horsback, and
made hys folke to doo soo, & commanded the arrer-20
garde that passed them over the bridge, that they
shuld solowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle / and
so they dyde / and Uryan & hys folke chaced the
paynemys that fledd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they 24
that were by Uryan, & they of hys felawship atteyned,
were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete
cocysyon & slaghter pe space of fyue ooures & more.
And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & 28
made them to lete behynd them alle theyre pray, &
came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce / and per the paynemys reassembled, & putte them self
in 2ordynance. but there came Vryan & his folke, 32
theire speris on theire fystes alowe / at that recount-
ryng were many one slayn & wounded sore, of one
syde & of other / the paynemys susteynd the stoure
strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but 36
Uryan assaylled them vygourously / and so moche he dide there of armes that aH were abasshed, and had grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde that was of a thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe men which entred, & marched sodaynly vpon theyre enmyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was 8 shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke, that soone they had the vyctory, and putte theyre enmys to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure thousand & more, without them that were slayn at for-

sayd bridge / and the chasse endured vnsto nygli the oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made lys folke to withdrawe them, and ledd with them the proye that the paynemys had lefte behynd. And 16 thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro other / and our folke returned to the bridge / and the paynemys went fourth to their oost cryeng alarme. Wherfore euery man went to harneys, & yssued out of 20 theire tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to the sawdan all thaduenture pat happed to them. And when the sawdan herd of it, he wondred moch who might haue brought pat folke, that so grete harme & 24 dommage had born vnsto hym. Thanne was there grete affray in thost, & grete noyse of trompettes. Wherof they of the Cite merueylyd what thing it might be, & armed them self / and eueryone was in his garde / and 28 there ¹came to the gate one of the knightes that were at forsayd brydge, whiche had putte hym in aventure to passe throug aH thost, and knewe the convoyne² of one parte & of other, also the grete fayettes of armes that 32 Vryan had don / he escryed hye with a lowde voys / 'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynges.' And thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he answerd, 'I am one of the knightes of the fortres of the

¹ Fr. commune.

but Urian and his guard

again put them to flight, and slay another four thousand of them;

after which Urian retires with the booty.

The paynims alarm the Sultan, who is surprised, and wonders who can have so defeated his men;

he sounds his trumpets, which alarm the people in Fumagowe, and they arm themselves.

¹ fol. 78.

A knight of Urian's arrives at the town,

and tells them that he brings good tidings;
blak mountayne.' And thanne they opend the gate, and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king; that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the 4 king, and made to hym the reverence / and the kinge receyued hym moche benyngly / and demanded to hym som tydynges; and he reherced to hym worde by worde all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued 8 the proye / also of thauenture of the bridge, and alle other thinges, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to gyue batayl to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / & that shortly / • 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that 12 man ought me god wyll, for to rescue my land of the fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth erysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, 1I shaff to morne doo fele to the sawdan pat my socour 16 & help is nygh redy to my behaup & playsire, & that I doubte hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the kyng to the knyght, 'goo & say these good tydynges to my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' 20 Then came he in to the chambre where the mayde was, and 2moche humbly salued her, and rehearsed to her al the auenture. 'How, sire knight,' said she, 'were ye at that bataylle?' 'By my feyth, damoyselle,' 24 ansuerde the knight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, ye more than a hounded tymes / For he ne dreddeth no 28 man, al be he neuer so grete & so puyssant. And wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one of the moost preu & hardy knyghtes that euer I sawe in my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoyselle, 'yf he 32 had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym, he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, I spake neuer with hym. but yet he is betre

1 Fr. Je ferai demain sentir.
worthy than I telle you.' Then she ansered to the knight, ¹ goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte.' And here leueth thyistorye to speke of the mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, pat abode at the bridge, and founde hys oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne pat had brought the men of armes, that he leuyed fro the garnysons & for-
8 tresses vnto the nombre of VML men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowe men / and also there were many footmen / And þey were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where 12 Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursyewte & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged þem that nyght the best wyse they coude, & made good watche. And here resteth thyistory ther-
16 of, and bygynneth to speke of the kynge of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regracyed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who 20 someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, ² and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in 24 herself, that yf he now had the vysage more straunge & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kynge in the world to hys paramour. And 28 so thoughte the damoyselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had brughte her therto. Here resteth thyistorye to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kynge her fader.

32 The thyistorye recounteth here, that on the morne at the spryng of the day, the kynge had hys folke all redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen;

¹ Fr. Amy, bonté vaut mieux que beaute.
and some brygandyners were embushed at bothe thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And pen the king entred in to thoost, & bare grete dommage to hys enimys. For he had commanded vpon payne of deth that none shuld take any prysoner, but that they shuld putte aH to deth / and this dide he for cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoylle & proye, 8 and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for to withdrewre them without any losse. And then the oost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the paynemys came to the medlee. And when the king 12 perceyued that they cam with puyssaunce, he remysed hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them at the lytill pas, and came behynde, the swerd in his fyst. And when he sawe a knight approuche, he retourned 16 & made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had langyng to siew1 hym. And there the kyngy dide so wel & so valyauntly, that every one sayd he was 20 moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne 2 was so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemmes, armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. 24 And thanne when he aspyed the king, that so eyl demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, & hytte hym at the synyster syde, in suche wyse that he perced hym thurgh & thurgh, For hys harneys coude 28 neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt grete anguysshe, and drew the dart out of hys syde, and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart 32 flougH besyde hym, & smote a payneme thurgh the body in suche wyse that he felt doune dede. And when the sawdan, that ouermoche had aunaunced hym

1 Fr. snyrir.
self, wende to haue retourned, the kyng smote hym with his swerd vpon the heed of hym, that he over-threw hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes there so strong that they made the kyng & hys folke to withdraw backe / and thenne was the sawldan redressed & remounted agayn vpon a grete hors. And thenne was pe prees grete, and the paynemes were strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his folke to withdrawe vnto theire barrers. Thanne bygan the Cypryens, that kept the passage there, to shote & to launche on the paynemes so strong that they dyed the place with the blood of theire enemyes. but so strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the crysten / and also the king had lost moche of hys blood, & wexed feble, and hys folke bygane to be abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche dolour & peyne, neuertheles he resioysshed moche hys people & encouraged them, and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them / but that they lost twyes 1 asmoche more / and was the scarmussching moche fyers & peryllous. And thus the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyauance & noble herte, recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete peyne & woo, he full wel remysed hys folke into the toune. And it was grete meuyH how so grete a lord, wounded to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke was noying mortaH but for the venyme, For the dart was envenymed / and wel it appered within a lytil tyme after, For he dide of that same stroke. but for certayn he had the herte so full of valiauntnes, as the faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe of eny bewayllnyng before his folke, vnto tyme that one of the barons perceyued aff his senyester syde dyed with bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: 'Sire, ye abyde to long here / come & make your folke to withdrawe them in to the toune or it be more late,
For the nyght approacheth / to thende that your ennayes putte not them self thrughe the medlee emong vs.' The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuered to hym thus: 'Doo therof after your wylle.' This knyght 4 themne made a houndred men of armes, that were reffresshed, to come before the barryere, & made to bygynne ayen the scarmussling with an C crosbowe men; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof 8 the sawdan was full of grete anger, and escryed to hys folke: 'fourth lordes & barons, peyne your self to doo wel, For the toune shalbe oures this day: hit may not escape vs.' And thenne enforced ayen the 12 medlee. And there ye had see wel assaylled & ryght wel defensed, of that one part & of that other. But whan the kinges of Cypre sawe that the paynemes strengthened them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne 16 vpon them vygourously / and there he suffred so moche peyne pat alt the synewes 1 of hys body were open, wherof, as some 2 sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by that same emuahissling were putte aback the paynemes, 20 & many of them wer slayn & sore wounded. The nyght thenne approched, and was nygh / and grete harme & losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the 24 king encouraged hys folk soo that they ne doubted no stroke nomore than yf ey had be of yron or of stele. And whan the paynemes were departed, the kinge & hys folke retourned in to the toune. And whan they 28 knew the eyyl aunterture of theire king, they beganne to sorowe & to make grete duel. And the kynge, that save this, sayd to them: 'My good folke, make no suche waymenting ne sorowe, but thinke wel to def. 32 fende you ayenst the Sawdan / and god our sauyour shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I shal soon be heelid.' Thenne was the peuple peased

1 Fr. raines.
ayen. but neverheles, the kyng that said suche wordes for to resioysshe hys peple, felt in hym self that he coude not escape fro deth. And thenne he commanded to his folke they shulde make good watche, and gaf hem leue, & came to the palleys, and there alyghtet & yede in to hys chambre / And thenne came hys doughter, that somewhat had vnderstand of hys mys-
8 aventure. but whan she perceyued that hys harneys was aH rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she felt dow in a swoune, & lay as she had be deed. Thenne commanded the kyngge that she shulde be borne 12 in to her chambre / and so it was dow. After the Cyruergiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was leyed on his backe along his beed / and they told hym that he was saaf fro pareH of deth, and that he shuld 16 not be abasshed. 'By my feyth,' said the kyngge, 'I wote wel how it is with me / the wylle of god be doo / hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe 1knowen througe the Cyte.' And thenne byganne pe 20 sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeyns & peple of the Cyte, and more without comparacion than it was byfore. But here resteth thystorye of the kyngge & of the siege / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother, 24 and how they exployed afterward. /

I n this parte, saith thystorye, that on the morow erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after hys masse herde byfore hys tente / and there he made come, 28 one aftir other, aH the Captayns & chieftayns with theire penons & standarts, and theire folke vnder them al armed of aH pieces, for to behold & vysyte theire harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the strauungers / 32 as hys owne folke / and beheld wel the mayntene & contenauence of them. And after this was doo he made them to be nombred / and they were founde by extymacion about ix. or ten thousand fyghting men. 36 Thenne saide to them Vryan: 'Lyste, aH fayre lorde,
'It is their duty to maintain the faith of Christ, who died for them.

even at peril of life,

though our enemies are ten to one against us.

Alone, Christ fought for our redemption,

2 fol. 81 b.

If you die, salvation and Paradise awaits you.

Soon I will march;

but if there be any whose heart is not steadfast, let him withdraw,

for one coward has often spoiled a great undertaking.'

we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jesu cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regenered and saued / as ech of vs knoweth wel younge he how he suffred cruel deth for the lone of vs, to thende he shal shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherfore lordis, seen & considered in our hertes that he hath doon to vs suche a grace, we ought not to reffuse the deth, or such aventure as he shal gyue vs, for to 8 defende & susteyne the holy sacrements that he hath admynystred vs for the saluac/on of our sowles / though that we now haue adoo with strong partye. For our enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of 12 vs / but what therof we haue good ryght, For they are come to assayll vs without cause vnto our right herytage / and also we ought not to resoygne ne dylaye therfore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre 16 for our redempciOn, And by hys deth alle good folke that kepen his comman?ments shal be saued, ye oughte theme to vnderstand aH certaynly, that alle tho that shuH dye in this quarelle, mayutenyng & 20 enhaunsyng the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the glorye of Paradys / And perfere, fayre lordes, I tell you in generaH that I haue entencyon, god byfore, to meve presently for to approche our enmys, and to fyght 24 with them as soon as I may. Wherfore, I praye you frendly, that yf there be ony man in this place that feleth not his herte ferme & stedfaste for to with/stande & abyde thauenture, such as it shal playse to god to 28 send vs / that he with/drawe hym self apart fro other, For by one ouly Cowarde & feynted herte is sometyme lefte & loste al a hoole werke. and wete it that, al tho that wyl not comm vn their good wyH, as wel of 32 my folke as of other, 3 I shal gyue them money

3 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?
Wha can fill a coward's grave?
Wha sae base as be a slave?
Let him turn and flee!' (Scots wha hae.)
ynough & syluer for theyre sustenaunce & fyndyng for to passe ouer the see ayen.' After these wordes he made his banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the 4 valey, vpon the mountayne, and ordeyned hys brother Guyon for to hold & bere it / and after he said, al on hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'Ahh they that entenden, & haue deuocion for to avenge the deth of Jesu 8 criste, to thenhaunysyng of the holy fyth cristen, Also to aye & helpe the kyng of Cypre, let heym with-drawe hym self vnnder my banere / and they that ben of contrary wyH, leto them passe ouer at the oper syde 12 of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes herde hym saye tho wordes. they held it to grete wysedome of hym, & of grete prowesse & worthynes, & went alle in a companye togidre vnnder his banere, wopyng for 16 Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had said / ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede ahh vnnder hys banere, as said is / Thennne was moche gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his 20 trumpettes to be blowen vp, and all was troussed & putte them self on theire way. And thanne the 2maister of Rodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson putte them self assembled togidre, and rode in fayre 24 batayH, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the place where the batayH had been the day before. 'By 28 my feth, lorde,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl we were refresshed. And in the meane while we shal see and aduyse how we shal for the moost surest way 32 hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they ansuered that so was good to doo. They went thenne ahh togidre, to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged hem self there. Now leucth here of them thystorye / and 36 bygynneth to speke of the Sawdan. / 1 Fr. troussé.
On the Sultan’s spies telling him the state of the city,
and of the socour coming, and of the illness of the king,
he orders an assault.

The townspeople defend themselves by shooting stones, pitch, hot oil, and overturning the enemy’s scaling ladders.

The Sultan urges on the assault,

... fol. 82 b.

and promises the first man that enters the city his weight in silver.

They attack vigorously, and are pelleted with logs of wood, burning oil, molten lead, quick lime, sulphur, and brimstone on fire,

and are obliged to retire,

Thystorye sayth that the Saudan had hys espies within the Cite, whiche aspyed secretly pe Convyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that socours & help came to the kyng / and also how 4 the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the peuple was gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do assayl the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes when pe sonne was vp, and ordeyned his bataylles, and 8 his Crosbowes & paeues; and came vnto the dyches & barryers. There bygan the scarmussing outrageousely fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn, 12 For they within the toune shotte many gonnes, & cast vpon them fro the batelments of their walles grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and reverced them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. 16 Thenne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high voys, ‘Now, lordes, defende yourself worthily, & letes vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemies, For on my god Machomete, he that first shall entre 20 the toune, I shall gyne hym hys pesaunt or weught of syluer in suche estate as he entre in to it.’ Who thenne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he 24 shuld haue be meruayled. But they that were vpon the walles within, fourth cast on them grete logges of wode, brennyng oyle, led molten / tonnes & barels full of vnquyched lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe 28 greycyd with oyle and mixtymoned with brymstone and sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them they were fayn to relenquyshe the place, and to remounte at another syde of the wall: and there 32

1 Fr. pavilliers. 2 Fr. gros canons et d’esprin galles.
3 Fr. pierres, pieues aus, huiles chaudes, plong fondu, poisons plains de chaulx vire, tonneaux plains destouppes engressées et ensoiffries tous ardens.
abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthened with new folke / but they within forth defenced them ful valyauntly as preu & hardy. Also they were more vygourous of herte, for that they knew there socours commyyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of his matere / and shal say how Vryan dide, whiche had sent hys espyes to knowe how it was of the siege / And they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete & contynuel sawtes to the Cite / and that without shortly it were socoured, they were within in grete daunger / and how the kynge was syke & sore wounded. Whan vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydynges, they were within them self wel angry and fyled with sorowe / but no grete semblautn they made of it, to thende their folke shuld not be of lesse courage therfore.  

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce.¹

¹ Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.
CAPTURE OF THE SULTAN'S CAMP.  

Urían encourages them to expect victory.

1 fol. 83 b.

They march forward; the paynims at first take them for friends, but recognizing them, are sore afraid.

Urían's battalion enters the fight; two other battalions march forward between the enemy's watch and the city.

At last all four battalions march together against the enemy.

The Sultan learns that his camp is captured, and sees the forces marching against him;

becomes angry, sounds for his warriors to retire.

But Urián's battalion falls on them before they have time to do so,

and god before they shalbe dyscomfyted by vs / and that right soone. goo wee thenne aynest theire oost / and so fourth without dylayeng to them that sawten the Cite. 1 and I wene with goddis grace that they 4 shal not endure long aynest vs.' And they answerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descende the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but when they supposed to haue passed 8 fourth, the paynmes perceived they were not of theire folke / they cryed alarme and were sore aferd. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with aH his bataill he shulde entyre to stools to fight aynest them that 12 were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede fether, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assaylled the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire 16 lodgis and of peire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontyne aH the foure bataylles in fayre ordynounce marched fourth toward the other that strongly assaylled. But one came to the sawdan, and said to 20 hym how the tentes & pauyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that haue doon pat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and feth folke that enuer I sawe ne herde 24 speke of.' The sawdan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standarts and hys enmyes commyng in fayre ordynance / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. 28 Thenne was the Saudan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrawe & assemble his folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayH / and with a grete 32 courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And yer began thoccyson & slghter moche grete / but for certayn the gretest losse tourned on the paynmes, For 2 they had no lesar for to putte them self in aray of baytaylle, and 36
were sore wery of thassawte / & none of them were vnder his banere when Vryan and his folke ranne vpon them, whiche were aspre & harde and futl wel wyst 4 the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes putte them self to flight. But the sawndan, that was ful of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke about hym, & deluyered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to 8 our folke moche proudly. There were many men slayn & sore wounded / and made hym self to be redoubted and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none 12 myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym. But whan Vryan perceyued hym put so sore demened his folke, he was full woo, and said in hymself, 'By my feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Turcke 16 blyeueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt of his hand; but for the dommage that I see he doeth on my folke, I ne haue cause to forbere hym ony more / and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes 20 may be holden.' Thenne he braundysshed hys swerd and with a fyers contenance rane vpon the Saudan / And whan he sawe hym commyng he refused hym not, but toke his ax and wende to haue smyten vryan withal 24 vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eschiewed the stroke; the ax was pesaunt and heuy, and with that vayne stroke it scaped fro the Saudans handes. And thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete 28 stroke with all his might / and was the sawndan so sore charged with that stroke that he was so astonyed and amased that he neyther sawe nor herde, and lost the brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where 32 he wold. And Vryan 1 pursiewed hym nygh, and yet agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt swerde betwix the heed & the sholders, For his helmet was att vnlace and his hawtepyeece fell of with the forsaid stroke, 36 wherfore with his second stroke vryan made hys swerde MELUSINE.

1 fol. 81 b.
and with a second blow wounds him so that he falls from his horse.

At length the Sultan dies from loss of blood.

Uryan, Guion and their followers fight so well

that in a short time they take or slay all their enemies.

After the battle they lodge in the pagans' camp, when the brethren fairly divide the booty.

This parte telleth vs thistorye that after ye dyscomfyture of the batayle the Captayne departed fro the two brethren, with hym xxx knightes of grete asseyre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke by the stretes, of whiche some made grete feeste, for 32 pat they sawe them deluyered of theire enimyse, and blessid the heure that euer the children of Lusignen were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

1 Fr. Lymasson:—Limassol, on S. coast of Cyprus.
land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete wep-
ynges, sore lawmentyng; and grete bewaylling; for
theire kynge that was wounded to the deth. Wherfore
he wyst not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the
kyng was hurt. And so moche he exployted that he
came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he
found the people wel mate / and he demanded of them
what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. 'By
my feyth,' said one of them, 'ye / and that ynoth;
For we lese the moost true & valyaunt man that euer
was borne in this royalme.' 'How thanne,' said the
Captayn, 'is the kynge syke? ' Ha / a! sire,' answered
to hym a knight, 'knowe you no more of it? We dide
yssue yesterday, and enuahysshed our ennyes / and
at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a
venymous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde
therto / For we supposed euer that these two damoy-
seaulx had come to our ayde & help at that day,
And wete it that the kingis doughtir demeneth
heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For
almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of
mete / woo & euylhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both our
king / our damoysselle & lady, For yf that happed the
land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.'
'Fayre lorde,' said the Captayne, 'aH is not yet lost
that lyeth in pareH. Haue lost in our lord Jhesu Criste,
and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward
the king.' 'By my feyth' / said 2 the knight, 'that
shall soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambre,
where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He
hath alredy made hys testament, & hath ordeyned &
bequethed of hys owne good to his servaunts, so that
euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath re-
ceyued our lord, and he is admynystred of aH his
rightes & sacraments.' 'By my feyth,' said the Cap-

1 Fr. mat. 2 Fr. fiance.

but find the folk weeping.

The Captain of Lymas proceeds to the palace,

where he learns that the King has been mortally
wounded by a poisoned dart.

and that the King's daughter is sore depressed
and will not eat.

The Captain asks an audience with the King,

who lies in the next chamber. It is granted.
On entering, the Captain makes his reverence, and is welcomed by the King, who asks him to bring Urian and Guion, as he desires to reward them for the help they have given him.

The Captain promises to bring them, and the King has the great street of the city decorated.

The history saith that so fast rode the Captayne that soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the tente of the two brethern, that moche humbly receyued hym. And theynse he recounted to them how the king was sore hurt / and that affectually he prayed them that they vouchesaaf to come toward hym, so that he might thanke them of the noble socours that they had doon to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of theyre peyne & dyspens to his power, and also for to speke with them of other matere. ‘By my feyth,’ said Uryan, ‘we are not come hither for to take sawdees

1 fol. 86.

Fr. soufolioer pour argent.
ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhainse the catholique feyth. And we wol wel pet ever man knowe that we haue hauoyr & syluer ynoough for to pay 4 our folke / but alway we right gladly shall goo toward hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayle; For yt he vouchesaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of 8 knighthode for the valyance & honour that every man sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle hym that to morne at that houre he hath poynted bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god 12 before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of our moost high barons with vs.' Thenne toke leue the Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued moche honourably / and soone he came to the paleys, 16 where he fonde the kyngge in also good poynte as he lefte hym. And there was his daughter Ermyne, that was fuil of sorwe for the eyyl of her fader / but that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of 20 this that men said to her, that the two damoyseaulx shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desired to see Uryan. And thenne the Captayne salued the kyng. 'Ye be right welcomme,' said the kinge / 'what tydinges 24 bryng you of youre 1 message / shal I not see that two gentil damoyseaulx?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne / 'they and houndred more with them / and playse you to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you / 28 For as they saye they be not sawdyours for syluer / but ey name them self sawdyours of our lord Jesu criste. And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to morne, god before, or it be fullys she pryme, he shal 32 come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he came fro the baytaylle; For he wyl receyue thordre of chenalrye and to be dowbed knight of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde our lord Jesu- 36 Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth
Hermine rejoices at the news,
she kisses her father, and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound, and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

1 fol. 87.
The King commands the inhabitants of the city to decorate their houses, and arranges for music in the streets.

Before prime (6 A.M.) the brethren on two courser arrive with many of their men. Urien armed as he was at the battle, and Guion in a richly furred damask cloth gown.

Hermine rejoices at the news, she kisses her father, and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound, and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

In this parte saith this history, that on the morne erly the king commanded that all noble and vnoble shuld make their houses to be appareyled and hanged without forth every one after his power, for to make feste and honour at the commyng of the two brethren and of 20 theyre folke / and that at euery corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dyuese Instruments of musyque making grete melodye / And for certayn the people en-denoysd them self wel / ye / more than the kynge had commanded to be doo. What shuld I make long prologue / the two brethren with in pryne came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete courser / and Vryan was al armed, even so as whaz he came fro the batayH, the sword naked in his fyst. And Guyon, his brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourrd / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble array / and nygh to them was the maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two brethren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knightes and theire squyres & pages in her companye / and in fayre array they entred in to the 36

hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prync / and wete it I shal thersore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermyne herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye thersore in her herte, that she coulde not holde her countenance ne manere / but therof she made no grete semblaunt, but shewd to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thanne lenue of her fader / and sore weeping kyssed hym moche swetly / and she went into her chambre / and there she bygan to bewayle her self sore / one houre for the doulour, & woo that she had for her fader / and another houre for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of 12 Vryan, whos taryng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith all that night she coude not sleepe /
Cype. There had ye seen the feste begynne moch grete / and the trompettes & menestrels dooyng theire crafte / And throught the stretes had ye sene folke of 4 grete honour that were moche wel and richely cloathed, whiche cryed with a hye voys / 'ha / a welcome be ye, pryncye vyctorious, of whom we hold and are aH sus- cited of the cruel servuytude & boundage of themeyes 8 of our lord Jeshu Cryst.' There had ye see ladyes & damoysselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thanncyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylled of the grete fyerste of the noble Aryan, that was al armed, Urian's fierce- ness, 12 the visage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed, an the swerd in his fyst. And the captain bare by- fore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a spere. And when they perceyued his fyers visage they said be- 16 twene them self togidre / 'that man is able and shappen for to subdue & putte vndre hym aH the world.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'he sheweth it wel, For he is entred into this toune lyke as he had conquerd it.' 20 'In name of god,' said other / 'the rescue of the daun- ger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough for a conqueste.' 'Certaynly,' said other, 'thaug his brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be 24 man of wele & of fayyte.' And so talkyng of one thing & of other they conueyed hem vnto the paleys, where they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke ony more of the peuple / and bygynneth to speke how 28 the two brethern came before the king /

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came before the kinpe, he beying in his bed syke. 2Thystorye sayth now that the two brethern moche 32 honourably came & made the reuerence to the kinge / and the kinge receyued them joyously / and thanked them moche graciously of theire ayde & socours/
and says they have saved his people from being either slain or perverted,

and as he owes them a great reward.

Urian replies that he wants none,

as he desires only honour, and that the Catholic faith may be strengthened, and says he would consider himself well repaid if he and his brother were dubbed knights.

The King consents and orders mass to be said;  

this done, Urian kneels before the King,

asking as his reward the honour of knighthood for himself and brother.

and said to them / that after god / they were they by whom he & al his realm was suscited fro the moost cruel passage, & more fel then eny deth, For yf they had not be, the paynemys had destroyed them aH / 4 or had constrained to be converted to their fals lawe, which had be to vs wers & heuyer than ony deth corporal. For they that to it had consented with herte, they had had for euermore damnação eternal / ' And 8 therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I reward you to my power, For I haue none other wyllle than to enduoyre me perio / how be it certayn that I may not acomplysche to the regarde of the grete honour 12 that ye haue me shewed / but lowly & humbly I beseeche you to take in worthye my lytly puysssauce.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to doubt / For we be not come hither neyther to haue 16 of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne landes / but only to seke honour and for to dystroye theenemyes of god, and to exalte the feyth catholical / and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our payne 20 wel employed, yf ye vouchesaf to doo vs so moche of honour that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knightes of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'noble damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to acom- 24 plysche your requeste, I consent to it / but first shalH the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me semyth wel doon.' And thanne the chapellayn 3 was soone redy. And thenne Vryan, hys brother, and aH other 28 deouly herde the masse & the seruyse deuyne, And after the deuyne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king. And thenne he drew the swerde out of the sheed & kneled downe before the kyng, where he laye, and sayd 32 to hym in this maner: 'Sire, I requyre you, for all the salary of my seruyse that I haue doo or may doo in tyme to come, that ye vouchesaf to dowbe me knight with this swerde / and so shuH ye haue wel 36
rewarded me of all that ye say that my brother & I haue doo for you and for your realme; For of the hand of a more valyant knyght and noble lord, I ne may 4 receyue the ordre of knighthede / than of yours.' 'By my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseau, ye shew me more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more of me than euer I deserved. but sene I considered 8 that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am agreeable therto / but after that I haue accomplysshed your requeste, ye shalH coumunaunt with me yf it playse you to graunte me a yeste, the whiche shal not 12 tourne you neyther to prejudice ne dammage, but only to your ryght grete prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to accomplyshe your wille & playssire.' Thenne had the kyng grete joye, and 16 dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therwith dowbed hym knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god, I adoube you & admytte you into thordre of a knyght, 20 prayeng god to putte from you aH euyH.' And penne gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde opend, and out of it ranne blood through 'the wraper, wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were aH other 24 that sawe hym; but thenne the kyng layed hym self ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none euyH. And after he commanded two knightes that they shuld fetche hys doughter / and they dide soo / 28 and brought her at mandement of her fader. And when the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter thank & remercye these noble men of thaye and so- coure that they haue doon to me & to you bothe, and 32 also to aH our realme, For yf had not be the grace of god & theire strengthe & puysaunce we had be aH dystroyed, or at leste exilled out of our land / or ellis vs to haue be convertid to theire fals lawe that had be 36 wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth before knighting him the King gets Urian to promise to give him a gift, the giving of which will not impoverish Urian;

then in the name of God, the King dubs Urian knight. The exertion opens the King's wound,

1 fol. 89.

but he is eased by laying down;

then he sends for Hermine,

and bids her thank the brethren;
which she does much humbly,

and is overcome by her feelings of sorrow for her father and love for Urian.

Urian seeing her emotion, raises her, and bows to her.

The people say that were Urian to marry their body, they would have no fear for the pagans.

The King tells of his approaching end,

and seeing his daughter's grief tries to console her,

by promising to provide for her,

temoraHL' / And thenne she knelted before the two bretheren & salued them, & thanked moche humbly And wete it that she was in suche manere commonyd as she had be rauyssbed, and wyst not how to hold 4 contenauence, what for the woo & sorowe that she had at her herte of thanguysshe that her fader felt / as of the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro 8 her dreme. But thenne vryan, that wel perceuyed that she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely, and enclyned hymself byfore her, makynge moche reuereence eche of them to other / and where as they 12 of the contre said / 'yf this noble man had take oye damoyselle to his lady wel it shuld come to passe, For thenne we shuld rede neyther payneme nor man that wold doo vs hurt.' And thenne called the kyng 16 his doughtir, and to her said thus: 'My doughtir, sette you here by me, For I deme that ye shall not long hold me company.' And she thanne wepyng satte herself by hym. And thanne aH they that were there 20 bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the kyng; And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne, his daughter, made so pitously.

Thystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfulle 24 when he sawe hys doughter take suche heuynes, and thenne he said anyably: 'My doughtir, lete be your heuynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it 28 is folye to make thereof grete sorowe / notwithstandying it is raison naturel that eneryche creature be sorowfuH for hys frend & neyghbour whan that he leisith hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruey for you 32 so that ye shal hold you content, or I departe fro this mortal world, and so shal aH the baronye of my realme' / And penne bygan the mayde to wepe more

Fr. esmene.
haboundantauntly than she dide to fore, And also all the barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pyte-ous for to see / but vryan and guyen were sorowfullest 4 of all. and the kyng perceuyng their doulour, he said to them: Fayre daughter, and you, vryan and guyen, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For ther- with I preuylye not nor you neyther in no manere / but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you com- mande that ye cesse of this heuynes yf ye loue me, and to haue me yet with you here alyne a lytil space of tyme. And thanne they bygan to cesse theyre 12 doulour in their best manere, for the wordes that the kyng to them said. And ouer that spake the kyng hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said: 'Sire knyght, thankyng be to you, ye couenaunted with me 16 a yeftte whiche I purpose now to take / and put shal neyther touche your cheuaunce nor honour.' 'By 1 my feyth,' sayd Vryan, 'demande what it playse you, For yf it be of that thing wherof I haue power I shal fulfyH 20 it voluntarilly.' 'Gramercy sire,' sayd the kyng, 'wete it that by this that I shal demande of you, shal retourne to you a noble thing'. Now, sire knight, I pray you that it may playse you to take my daughter in mary-24 age, and all my royalme with her / And fro this tyme fourth I gyue you full possessyon thereof to doo ther- with your prouffyt / And wel veray & truth it is that he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these 28 wordes he took it, & said / 'hold, Vryan, ne refusse not my requeste that I desyre of you.' Thene were the barons of the land so joyous that teeris fel fro theire eyen for pyte & joye that they had therof. And 32 when Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel remembraunce / and wete it wel he was sorowfull & dolaunt therof. For he was wylyng to seke the strange countrees of the world and poursiewe for honour. But 36 alwayes for as moche as he was accorded with the kyng
The Baron asks him if he refuses the gift?
He replies, no;
and takes the crown and puts it in Hermine's lap,
which gladdens the King and Barons.

Hermine says she will see the end of her father's sickness before proceeding further;
but the King upbraids her as desiring his death,
upon which she kneels at the King's feet, and promises to obey him.

The King bids her leave her sorrow and decorate the hall of the palace,
and prepare a feast.

of the yefte, he wold not gaynsaye it / And when the barons sawe hym so penseful they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pyteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou refusse the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclyned Uryan before the kyng wher he laye, and toke the crowne and putte it in Ermynes lap, sayeng /
'Damoyselle, it is your, and sith it hath fortuned thus 8 with me, I shalt you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subgection.' Thenne was the kinge joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide 12 make come the archebysshop of the Cite that asuryd them togidre. But Ermyne 1 said she wold see first the termynacion of her faders syknes or she shuld proicie ony further. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, 16 sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreeable therto.' Thenne was the kyng wooffull & dolaunt, and said:
'Fayre daughter Ermyne, ye shew wel pat lytel ye loue me, whan that thinge which I desire moost to see afore 20 myn ende ye ne wyl acomplysshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' Whan pe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolaunt & sorrowfull / and wepyng kneeled byfore the king, hir fader, and said in this 24 manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld refusse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playsire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to 28 say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorowe, and let this halle to be dressid and with ryche clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / 32 and aftir the deuyne servise do make the tables to be couered, and after dyner make here byfore me the feste as that I were now on my feet; For wete it wel / that shal helpe & conforte me wel.' And theunne they aH 36
endeavoured them self to fulfylle this that he commanded. Thenne was the masse said, and sate them self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her, And Guyon served Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the king grete joye, but he made betre semblant than his herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he made he felt grete peyne & grete doloure, For the venym though he is in that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng & rotynge of his flesshe / but for to rejoye the baronnye he made no semblant of no sorow ne douleure / and after dyner bygan the feest, and lasted til nyght came. The king thanne called to hym vryan, and said, 'Fayrc sone, I wyl ye wedde my doughter to morne, and I delyuere untyo you the Crowne and Ceptre of this UrianThathe*, for I wishes him to 16 realme, For wete it I may not long be aluye. Wherefore I wil that alle the barons of his land make theire hommage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan, 'sith that playseth you / your wyle & myne be one' / And there was Ermyne present pat refussed not to fullfylle her faders wyH.

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, daughter vnto the kinges of Cypre.

On the morne next, about the houre of tierce, was the spouse appareyled & rychely arayed, and the chappeH nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And the Archebysshop of Famagoce espoused them there. And after came Vryan before the kyng that toke the Crowne, and ther withaH crowned vryan, that moche of thankes rendred to the kyng therefor. Thenne called the king to hym aH the barons of Je lande / and commanded them to make theire hommage to kyng Vryan, his sone / and they voluntarily dide soo. And the masse than bygan, and after it was doo they satte
DEATH OF THE KING OF CYPRUS. [CH. XXIV.

A great feast is given, at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and endured tyl even / and after souper begane ayen the feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to bed / and anone after Vryan layed hym self by her / and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so thenne alt departred / some went to bed / and some retournd ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye with his wyf, and her acqueyntance toke courtysly & wel / And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kynge / the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the queene conueyed & lede of guyott her brother, and by one of the moost highe barons of the lande. 12

In this parte sheweth vs this storye, that on pe next morne after about the houre of prayme, kyng vryan acconpanyed with the baronnye of poytou and of the royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned 16 hym self & salued hym right humbly. Fayre sone, ye be welcome, said the kyng. I am full joyous of your commyng / make my daughter to come, so shul we here the deuyne seruysse. Thenne came his doughtir Ermyne, wel nobly acconpanyed of many ladyes & damoyselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: My wel beloued doughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joy- 24 ous when god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have purueyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to your lord / and wete it that therfore I shal dey more easely sith that you and al my land is out 1 of the 28 daunger of the paynemes, and no doubte ye haue to your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyaunt, that right wel shal kepe and defende you aenest alt your eyyl willers, and in especial aenest thinfineles & 32 enemys of Ieshu krist. And with that worde the Chape layn bygan the masse. And whan the masse was celbreed & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan & Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: My fayre 36
children, ryght affermuously I pray you that ye think to lone, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold & bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may hold you companye. Now thanne I recommande you to the blysful kyng of heuen, prayeng hym demouently that he gyue you peas & lone togidre, and honourable lyf & long.' And with these or semblable wordes he shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so sweetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe / But whan they were certayn of his deth the douleur & sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermyne had in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that grete pite it was to see. The kyng thenne was buryed and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost honourable guysse that coude be deuyed after the vse and custome of the land. And wete it that all the peple was sorowfull & dolaunt; but they took comfort of this, that they had founde & recovered a lord ful of so grete prowess as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede Vryan throgh al his realme to see and visite the places & fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon, his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes, and made them to be shipped on the se, for to wete & knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony tydynge that paynemes were on the se for to lande in his lande. 'For wete it wel,' said the kyng vryan, 28 'that we purpose ne think not to abyde turned to tyme they fetche vs, For we shaff & god before goo & vysyte them within short tyme, after that we have overseen the rule & gouernaunce of our land.' And forasmoch departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on the see with thre thousand fyghting men. And here leueth historye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how Vryan & Ermyne went and vysited their land.
Thistory saith that king Vryan, with Ermyne hys wyf, yede & vysited theire land al about, and ful gladly & honourably they were receyued in every burghe, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete 4 yeftes were presented to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to al hys fortres, of al suche things that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befeH in tyme to come. And for trouth every 8. one was meruaylled of his heght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssau?ice & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that serdfuH & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went 12 Vrian fro place to place thrughe his royalme. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al oper that operwyse dide than right requyreth, he purueyed of remede by 16 good & meure deliberacion of his counseiH. And commanded euery one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fauour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary 20 did to this hys wyH, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke retourned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete with child / And now resteth 24 thistorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tupple, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see 28 or not.

Now saith thistorye, that so long sailled & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aproch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, 32 but by liklyhode they might not be grete nombre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward our folke that al redy were in ordynaunce to wete what they were / but the galey came so nygh that the cristens, our folke, 36
toke it / and by them knew and vnderstode almaner of
tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastily,
and saylled anone toward their enimys. And whan the
4 paynemes percyued they they were mocy abasshed,
and gretly aferd, and wend wel to haue withdrav them
self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes ad-
vaunced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There
8 was grete occyson / and shortly to say the paynemes
were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and all were
cast ouerborde or slayne. And the nauye was full of
grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in
12 the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre. but
by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to
Cruly 1 in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye,
that was brother vnto the kinge of Cipre, knewe those
16 commyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they
were / And the master of Rodes said to them that
came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it
is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre,
that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe if
paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon
the Cypryens for cause of the saudan that hath be
dyscomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayll
24 of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there
ony other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By
my seyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the
king 2 was wounded with a dart enuenymed by the
28 sawdans hand in so mortal a wyse that he is deed
thorof, and he beying yet alyne, he gaf his doyghtir in
maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the saudan
& dyscomfyted all his folk.' Whan they thanne vnder-
32 stode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng,
which was sorowful of the deth of his brother. but
not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with
a grete company, and entred in to the vesell where

1 Truli in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt Cruli.

MELUSINE.
Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan guyon wyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and eche to ocher made grete reuerence. Thenne said the king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, ‘Maister, sethen this yong damoysean is brother vnto my nyghtis lord, I was vncurteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth. And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym 8 on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we can.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the grete Pryour / ‘that shal I doo gladly.’ Thanne he spak therof to guyon, 12 whiche ansuerd to hym right gladly, ‘I wold doo a greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake. For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.’ And theyne they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre 16 companye of knyghtes / but alwayes they had their cotes of stele on þem, and were in right good aray, as. folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And here spoke I no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the 20 doughter of the kyng of Armanye. /

This lady was joyful at the visit of the strangers, and dressed herself and maids richly to receive them.

The King of Armenia is a widower, whose heir is Flory. 1 fol. 94.

T

The historye sayth that the kyng of Armanye had a daughter, and none other children / but here.

1 And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it þat this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to their spouses the two sesters that were doughters to the kyng of Malegres / and eche of them gate a doightir on their wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused 28 was one / and that other was the pucelle florye of whom I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme at Cruly ryght glad & joyous of the commyng of the strauengers. She apparelyed and arayed her self 32 moche richely, and so ride af her damoyseelles. Soone after came the kyng her fader / guyon / the maister of Rodes, & their felawship, and entred in to the toune, and came to the palleys in to the grete halle. 36
And thenue Florye, that moch desyred theire com-myng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst her fader / and the kyng said to her, ‘Cherysshe and doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honourably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord & husband.’ And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she was full glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon / 8 toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: ‘Sire damoy-seau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalme,’ ‘Damoyselle,’ sayd Guyon, ‘gramercy to you.’ There / bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel 12 they were festyed, & seruyd with dyuerese meetes & wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste & gracyous talkyng. and wete it for certayn yf guyon had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to 16 her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a galeye arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and they that were with in were receyued honourably of them of the toune / and joyful & right glad they were 20 whan they knew that theire maister was there. Wher-fore one of them said to the peuple there, ‘Sires, vouchersaunt to lede one of vs there 1the lordes befor, to aduertyse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see 24 in grete nombre.’ Thanne was a knight brought there the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that paynemes with grete nauye were passed before the yle of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward 28 Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphe of Bandas with all hys puysauncc & power was there. Whan the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynges, he went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeving 32 hym self as constrayned, humbly said to the pucelle, ‘Damoyselle, right hertily I beseche you that ye vouchersaft, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call me ofte in your remembrance / For as to my part, 36 your vassall & servaunt shal I euer be vnder the
standart of your governance.' Florye thanne knowyng for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fyll with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenauence in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly be- held guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that conueyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8 that was good & propyce to them. And wete that Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to preserue hym from al daunger. / Thystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandymount in that, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16 tydynges how the saudan was slayn, and al his folke putte to grete dyscomfytur in the yle of Cypre. Wher-fore they beyng fuH sory therof assembled anone their power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred their 20 shippes, and toke theire way toward Cypre / and 1they supposyng the Cypryens had be without king, hyed them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but they 24 of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche perof vnto kyng Vryan, that alredy had assembled his peple, and putte them in aray for to receyue the batayH. and morouer had made good ordonnaunc and gardes for the 28 portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them com- myng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng of their enmyes, and euery man to be redy in armes 32 thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamacion vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes in the myddes of the portes of his royalme for to be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36
arraye to take theire landing / And the king made so
grete monstre & semblanct that he gaf his peple so
grete courage, that with hym & his enterpyse they
durst wel fght with the Caliphe, and with his puys-
saunce. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the
see was enragid throug the stormes and horryble
tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed &
abasshed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse
here & there, that within short tyme they ne wynt
where eyghte of theire galeyes were become. And on
the morowe about the hooure of pryme, thayer was al
clore, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone
clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes
held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port
of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal
16 shew you of the viii vessels that were sparpyld by
the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo
vessels was al thartillery of the paynemes, as gonnnes,
bowes, arowes / ladders / paneys, & such habylements
20 of werre as they had / and so it fortuned that guyon
and the maister of Rodes with their puyssaunce re-
countred them, and perceyued eche other. but whan
oure peple knewe that they were sarrasyns / and the
24 sarasyns knew that they were crysten peuple / they
bygane eche of them to lye and bord other with
shotte of gonnnes & crosbowes / and when they were
chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle
28 stones / and the batayH was so grete, hard, & stronge /
but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssaunce
assayld so manfully the paynemes that they knew
not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende,
32 For our people that were in the galeyes fught so
mightily that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There
might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that
withstanding they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And
36 thanne whan theire admyrah, that was maister of the
The admiral seeing he is defeated,
leaves the fleet in a boat accompanied with eight persons.

The Christians enter the ene-
my's vessels, and throw over-
board or take prisoners the Saracens,
The spoils are divided,
Guion sending his share to Flory,

1 fol. 96.

and to her father the King of Armenia.

The King welcomes Guion's knight, who con-
veys the present, and Flory is very joyful, for she
loves Guion much.

The King of Armenia learns from his Saracen
prisoners that their comrades have gone to Cyprus,

Guion defeats the Saracens.

[CH. XXIV.

artylery, saw the dycomfiture tourned uppon them/. he made to be haued a lytel galyote out of the grete galeye with viii hores/ and so entred he and eyghte personnes with hym of the secretest / and toke thanen-
ture of the wynd / & rowed so mightly that our people meruyllled pereof / but they made neuer semblance to pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels, & bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the 8 nombre of ij C sarasyns prysonners / wherof guyon gaf 100 hondred to the maister of Rodes to make them erisen, and also two galeyes / and guyon toke the other hondred sarasyns and two of the moost richest 12 vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght of Rodes / and thus said to hym, 'Conduyte me this two galeys, and pis hondred sarrasyns to Cruly, and recomand me to the kinge & his doughtir / and on 16 my byalue 1 presente to the pucelle Florye this two vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kynge the houndred sarasyns.' Wherof the knyght toke the charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the 20 Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen in commandement / and recounted to them the grete dyscomfyture and the valyaunt conduyte of guyon. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'ye be welcome, and 24 thanking' be to that noble damoyseau' / And the pucelle was so joyous of these nouelles that she had neuer in her natural lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she loned so entierly guyon 'bat aH her joye was of hym. 28 The king thanne & his doughter yaf to the knight a riche jewel, wherof he thanked hem, and toke leue of them, & retourned hastily to Rodes. And anone, after hys departyng, the kyng of Armenye questyoned with 32 the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was / and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in batayH. 'Par ma foy,' sayd the kyng, 'as for you, ye 36
haue faylled of your enterpryse / And thenne he commanded that they shuld be fetryd with yrons, and to be putte in to parfounde pryson / and the two vessels to be descharged, and aH the goodes that were in to be borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I spoke of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had questioned the sarasyns wher the Calyphe purposcd to 8 land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by thauys and CounseyH of his barons for cause they had many vessels & lytel nombre of people / commanded that al thartylery that they had wonne shuld be putte 12 into theire shippes / and also al other thinges that were of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also / 1he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes. And whan this was don they saylled, & hasted pem 16 toward Cypre. And here leueth thystory to spek of them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote where thadmyraH was in, where it became or toke porte. /

Thystory saith that the kyng brandymount & the 20 Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfuUl for their losse & grete dommage / and so longe rowed thadmyral on the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, & sawe grete nauye byfore the toune. And whan he came 24 somewhat nygli he herd shotte of gonnes & sowne of trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was pe Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puyssauence of kyng brandymount of tharse,2 that assaylled them of 25 the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne of the place & his peple3 wel pauncysed, that valyauntly defesnded the porte in so moche that the sarasyns gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and 32 wysshed ofte aftir theire galyes with their gonnes & artyllery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste / they wyst not where. Thene came to them thadmyral that thus said on hye: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, wu

2 Fr. Turche. 3 Fr. w. p]atout bons pavars.
may be to you, For your nauye that I conduyted is lost & take, For the Cristen recounted vs vpon the see, and hauie dyscomfyted vs / and none is scaped but only we that are here / and at oo wrok al is lost / for to hold 4 you long compte therof that shuld preyayll you nought.' Thenne whan the Calyphe vnderstode hym he was sorrow-
ful & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here ben heuy tydinges. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth 8 as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauour-
able & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For wel it appereth presently by vs / and so didde but of late by our Cousyn the saudan, the which & al hys 12 people also hauie be slayn or dyscomfyte in the same yle of Cypre.' Thenne said the admiral to hym: 'Sire, yf ye annouce or shew semblance of abasshement by-
fore your folke that shal cause them to be half dyscom-
fyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue of them of this parte & toune, that they be not shappen to lete you arryue & entre there land without sore fyghting and grete sawtes gyuyn. For they shew not 20 to be aferl of your pryssaunce. therfore I wold adnyse & counseyH you, that we shalH withdraw vs into the yse see, & lete coule them self / and about the sprynyng of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is 24 hens called the port of saynt Andrew / and there with-
out ony defense or gaynsayeng we may take land.' And this they dide. And whan the Captayn of Lymas-
son sawe hys emnyes departe, he made a rampyn or 28 smal galye to folow them of ferre, but it coude not be perceyued of them / and aspyed how at een they ancred aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte. Thanne retourned the rampyn hastily toward Lymas-32 son / and to the captayne recounted al that he had seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high vpon the garde for manere of token / and whan they of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of 36
fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde, 
that knowleche was therof throught at the royalme. 
Thenne every man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew 
4 them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al 
redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynemes 
shuld land, and manded to every captayne they shuld 
kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / 'For,' said he, 
8 'yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see. 
And here resteth the 1hystorye to speke of kyngs 
Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. / 

I n this partye sheweth thisstorye / that the sarasyns 
12 that were entred in to the see / as soone as saye 
apperecuyed the day spryng, they deceuneryd, & toke 
vp theire aneres, and came al in oo flotte to the porte, 
& there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey 
16 of saynt andrew perceuyed them wel, the whiche 
immediatly made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Captayne of pe place gaf vnto the kyng knowlech ther- 
of / the which had grete joye therof / and forthwith 
20 bygan to apparauy hym to go to batayH. And the 
Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his 
artillery out of the shippes / and dye make hys lodgis 
therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a 
24 grete ryure at a cornere of a lytel wode, to refreshe 
hym & his peple also; and lefte four thousand men 
within the shippes, for theire sauegarde / and in the 
meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire 
28 people arruyed to Lymasson / where men said to them 
how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye 
was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. 'By my feyth,' 
sayd Guyon, 'we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For 
32 who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of 
them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy' / 
and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the 
see, & went lightly sayllyng, that they came so nygh 
36 the panemes that they sawe the porte of saynt Andrew,
and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. Thenne they putte themself in aray and in good ordynance / and this done, they rane vpon theire enemys as thondre & tempeste, smyttynge vpon the shippes of the sarasyns byforce of shotte so horrybly, that yl bestade were the sarasyns, that wel happy was he that myght recouere the land. And by that meane were the shippes take / and al the sarasyns that were take were putte to deth. Thanne guyon sent to the abbey foyson of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns / and brought to Lymasson with them as many galeyes & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the sarasyns, except suche as they brent. And þe other that escaped, came to thooost of theire lord, cryeng with a lyye voys alarme / and recounted & said how the Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. Thenne was the oost gretily mevyd, & came to the port who best coude, and fonde many of theire peuple ded, and som were hyd in the busshes. And whan the Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete dommage, he was moche dolaunt. 'By machomet,' said he to kyng Brandymount, 'these Cristen that are come hithe fro Fraunce, ben ouermoche hardy & appert men in armes, and yf they soiourne longe here it shal be to our grete dommage' / 'By machomet,' said the kyng Brandymount, 'I shal neuer deporte fro this land vnto tyme I be al dyscomfyted, or þat I haue put them to flyght, & brought to an euyl end.' 'No more shal I doo,' answerd Caliphe. Thenne þey recovered there six of their galeyes, & eschiewed þem fro the fyre, and lefte in it good wared for to kepe them; and after they returned to their peple. And here cesseth thystorye of them and retourneth to speke of Vryan /

Now sheweth thistorye how the kyng Vryan was lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that self place where the fourragers of the sawdan were
dyscomfted at the brydge, as before is said. And had sent his espyes to haue knowleage where his enemyes had take theyre lodgys / And thenne came the maister of Rodes, whiche alighted before the kinges payyllon, whom he made reuerence moche honourably. And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng, receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how 8 guyon his brother dyde. 'By my feyth, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'wel / as the moost assurest man that ever I knew. Sire, he recommandet hym to you as affectually as he may.' 'Nowe telle me,' said the king, 12 'how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?' And the maister recounted hym fro braunche to braunche alt thouerntures that had happed to them. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye haue worthyly vyaged; I thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for myn vnclle, pe kynge of Armany, I am moche glad that ye lefte hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue aduys of our CounseyH, to see how we may dystroye the Sarays / and as touching me & my peuple, I am redy to departe for to approuche to them, For to long they haue soijourned in our land without to haue assayed vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that 24 I departe for to goo ayenst the paynemes.' The maister thanne take leue of king Vryan, and hastily retourne to Lymasson / and immedyatly the king & his peuple marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a leghe nygh to the Calyphes cost, vnknowyn the paynemes of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre & fyght with the saraysyns ; wherfore guyon commanded 32 his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in fayre aray ; & came vnto a ryuer, and lodged hym therby, vpon the which ryuer were the paynemes lodged, & no distaunce or space was betwene them & their enemyes, but a high mountayne. And now
Thystorye sayth that kyng Vryan desired mocli to
knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to 4
haue true knowleghe of theire conuynye; wherfore he
called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey,
and said to hym: 'putte on your harneyes, and take the
surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here byfore 8
my panyllon: and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come
with me there as I shal lede you' / and anone the
knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed &
armed retourned to hym byfore hys tente, wher he 12
fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which said to
some of his barons, 'Sires, meue not your self fro this
place tyl ye haue tydinges of me / but yf I cam not
hither ayen / loke ye doo that I shal lete you wete by 16
this knyght.' And they answered that so shuld they
do / 'but take good hede,' sayd they agayn, 'where
ye goo' / 'be not in doubte therfore,' said vryan to
them / And thenne they departed; and Vryan said to 20
the knight, 'conduyte me now the surest waye that ye
can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns
landed.' And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle
ryght high, & said: 'Sire, yonder is the porte that ye 24
desire to see.' 'And how,' said the kyng; 'it hath
be said to me that theire nauye was al brent, and yet I
see yonder some grete vessels? Fro whens myght they
be come now?'/ and thenne behild the kyng / at the 28
synerster in to the foune 1 of the valey, and sawe
his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere /
and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe þe Caliphes
oost, that were in grete nombre. 'By my feyth,' said 32
the kyng, 'yonder is grete multyte of peple pay-
neme / them I knowe wel ynoough; but þey 2 of this
other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

1 Fr. font.
here, and I shall goo wete what folke they be, yf I may.' The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his broyers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he knew wel; and anoon called hym by his name, and demanded of hym yf his brother guyon was there. When the knight vnderstode hym wordes, he beheld & knew hym, and soone kneeled before hym, say-

eng in this manere: 'My liege & souerayn lord, your brother guyon is yonder with al hys peuple, and the maister of Rodes also.' Thenne commanded hym the kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and telle hym that he shuld come & speke with hym vpon the said mountayne. And the knight went & tolde these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the maister of Rodes with hym, mounted on horsbak / toke the way to the mountayneward, wher as Vryan returned to his knyght, whome he said: 'Frend, wel it is with vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged yonder.' Thenne came per guyon & the maister of Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, eche of oper. The kinge after shewed to them thooest of their enemies / and whan they sawe it / they said / we wyst not them so nygh to vs.' 'Now,' said vryan, 'they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of yonder galeyes,' wherof guyon was abasshed / 'For,' said he / 'these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For within these foure dayes last passed we toke & bren 28 al theire nauye.' 'Thenne,' said the maister of Rodes, 'I suppose wel what that is / happly some of them were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes fro the fyre.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'thus it may wel be / but perto 1 We most puruey of gardes, For therby shuld mowe escape the chief lordes of their oost, that happily might adommage vs in time to come.' 'How, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'it semeth that ye haue dycomfyted them al reddy, and

and so rides to it. On the way he meets a knight he knows well.
The knight kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host belongs.
King Urian sends for Guyon, who, accom-
panied with the Master of Rho-
des, comes to the King.

Urian says that now the Saracens cannot escape, except by the vessels.
Guyon is abasshed at the Saracens having vessels, as he believed he had burnt or captured them all, but the Master says, these are some saved from the fire.

\footnote{1 fol. 100. The King orders guards to be ready to prevent any one embark-
ing,}
that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at pat porte.' "Cer- tainly," ansuered the kyngye, "yf they be nomore than I see, we nede not so grete peple as god hap layed vs." 4 The kynge thenne commanded his knight, pat he shuld goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray, and that he shuld conduyte them vnto pe foot of the said mountayne. The knight departed, & tide as it 8 was youen to hym in commandement / and al throost obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good ordyn- naunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made hys peple to be armed, and brought hem at the other 12 syde of the ryuere, so nygh the paynemes oost that he might wel perceyue their manyere & contenauce.

And the kyng commanded the maister of Rodes, that he with aH hys peple shuld entre in to pe see / and 16 that they shuld trauerne, rowyng nygh the porte, to thende yf the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them self into theire shippes, that they might not escape / 'And I goo,' sayd vryan, 'putte my peple in aray, forto 20 gyue batayH to these paynemes.'

The kyng thenne came to his oost, and made his archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth ; and after followed the wynges. & the arryergarde came 24 after in fayre ordonnaunce / and assoone as pe sarasyns perceyued them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme armed hym self / but or they were aH armed, Vryan sent vpon them a thousand & 1good men of armes wel 28 horsed, that moche adommaged them, for they fonde them vnpurued & out of aray. But notwithstanding, they assembled them in batayH & aray. Thanne bygan the stoure fyers & cruel. For there had ye seen arowes 32 flee as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys; and so manfully they faught, that they made the sarasyns to withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete 36
fayettes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recounted he smote & threw down fro their horses to the erthe, in so moch that his enemies fled before hym as the partrych doth before the sper headache. And whanne the Calyphe of Bandas perceyued hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, \textquoteleft if we be 8 abasshed and yl bestad of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubte vs nought\textquoteright; and sayeng these wordes, he broched his hors with hys sporys that blood rane out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this 12 Caliphe was one of the moost fyers & strengest man that was that tyme alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys sword, & rane vpon vryan, the whiche he recounted / and by grete yro gaf hym so 16 menuayllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys sword redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygh he cutte his throat of. Thanne came kyng Brandymount vpon vryan, the 20 which, seeynge his hors almost deed, stook vpon hys feet, & lete goo hys sword fro his hand, and embrased his enemy; and by the strengthe of his two armes, pulled hym from his hors doun to therthe. There was 24 the prees grete, both of Sarasyns that wold rescue theyre lord / and of cypryens also, that wold haue holpen vryan there kyng, to bryng hys enterpyse at affect. The batayll was there mortall fyers & doubtous 28 for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and threstid it vnder the gorgeret throug brandymontis nek, and thus he sleugh hym. Thanne stook vryan vpon his feet 32 ayen, and cryed \textquoteleft with a high voys \textquoteleft Lusynen, Lusynen\textquoteright;/ and the Poyteuyns that her\textquoteleft that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gyuyng so grete strokes that the sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the 36 place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng
brandymontis hors, and pursewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batayH to be reforched, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon 4 with his peuple, and courageously rane vpon theire enemes. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surprysed on eche syde by his mortal enemes / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out 8 of the batayH, and fled toward the see / where the admyraH of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nanye, that he saued 12 fro brennyng, to take vp theire ancre, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batayH. /

In this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth that whan 16 the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kyng bran-
dymount1 / and how the Caliphe on whos prowes & strengthe was al their hope & comfort 2 was thus departed and fled, they were aH abasshed, and bygan 20 strongly to breke their aray and to voyde the place, puttyn g themself to flight.3 What shuld I make you long compte / the paynemes were putt aH to deth, what in batayH, what fleyng as drowned in the see. 24 And after the chaas, returnedd kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & payyllons grete riches. And here thisto-
ye cesseth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you 28 how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the which swore by his machomet & his goddes, that yf he myght euer come to sauete in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hy-
deraunce & enuye to the Cypryens. But as he was 32 rowyng in the see / and supposed to haue escaped al

1 Fr. Brandimont de Tarse. 
3 xviii. viii. is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1d. a page.
parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and wayted after hym, as aboue is sayd, perceyued the sarasyns flote pat wold haue retourned to Damask / by-
4 gan to lye by them and sayd to his peuple in this manere: 'Fayre lorde and knightes of Iesu Criste, our desyre and wysshying is brought to effect, for know-
lege we haue ynough that the valyaunt & redoubted kyn g vryan hath obtayned the victory vpon his ene-
myes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyaunt, none of them shal neuer see Damaske.' Who thanne had seen the Cristen putte them self in aray, and theire meruayllable shottyng with gommes & arowes vpon the sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruaylled / and syn oure folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see. The sarasyns defendid hem self 1 manfully / but at last they were dyscomfyte. And the admyral that sawe the grete myschief pat feH on them hallid vp saylles / rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple toke the galeyes of thire enemies and al slew or casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes acom-
panied with C knightes, bretheren of his religyon, went toward king vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted to them al thire good fortune. but sory was the king that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped. kyn g Vryan thenne departed & dalt emong hys peuple at the proye of his enemies that he had wonne / sauf he reteyned for hym the artelry & some pauyllons & tentes, and gaf them lene to retourne in to thire Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyn g vryan in grete tryumphe & honour as vyetorious prynce, re-
tourned to his cyte of Famagoce, acoompanyed of Guyon his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the barons, wher the queene Ermyme receyued them right but his fleet is observed by the Master of Rhodes, who is on the watch. He is attacked, and defeated, but escapes with the admiral in an eight-oared boat. The master of Rhodes captures the navy, slays or drowns all the Saracens, and takes the vessels back to St. An-
drew’s Port. He recounts his victory to Urian, who is sorry at the caliphe’s escape. Urian and his companions return to Famag-
oca, MELUSINE.
honourably, thankynge god of the noble vyctorye that they obtayned vpon his enemyes. \\

Now sayth thisorye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made a feest to be cryed & proclaimed; For he wold in tyme of peas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynceys estrauengers & other his subjectes. Eyght dayes tofore the feste, begane grete multyde of people to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon peyne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytaylles. And trouth it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the queno Ermyne was delyuered of a fayre sone. Thenne bygan the feste to wax grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hyys auncestre hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yeftes. And there were some of the barons of poytou that teke theire leue of the kyng & of his brother, and of the quene, for to departe, whom the kynge yaf grete yeftes of riches. And they were in nombre six knightes and 20 peire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sumptuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. \\

Thystorye sheweth all thus, whan the feest was at best, there came xxiv knightes of the moost noblest barons of the royalme of armanye, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by theire contenaunce that they were sorrowfull in herte. And whan they cam tofore the kyng they didetheire obeyssaunce ryght nobly / and they said to him : 'Sire, the kyng of armanye, your vncle, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god
haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucello
begoten of his body by lawfull maryage / and she is
alone hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kynge,
that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this lettre, and
commanded vs to directe it to your noble grace / pray-
ing the same that the tenour of pe lettre ye vouchesaft
tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lorde,' said Vryan /
8 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal
fulfyH his wyH 1right gladly.' Thenne toke Vryan
the lettre & redd it, of the whiche the tenour was this:
'Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued nevew, I re-
12 commande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng
you right hetyly to haue me to my ryght dere & be-
loued nyghte your wyf to be recommended. And
where by these my lettres I make to you the first re-
16 queste that euer I demanded of you / also consideryng
that it shal be the last / For certaynly at the makyng
of thees my present lettres, I felt myself in such poynt
that in me was none hope of consuadaence nor of lyf.
20 I hertyly beseche you that ye haue it not in ressus nor
in dysdayne. It is so thanne that none heyre I ne
haue of my body, sauf only a daughter, the which
your brother guyor sawe but of late / when he was
24 with me. Wherfore I pray you that yo vouchsauf to
entrette your said broper in manere that it playse hym,
to take the cepter of my dignite ryah and my daughter
to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of
28 armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue
hym to her lord, yet is she come of royal blood. con-
sideryng thanne her consanguinite haue pite on her / 
and yf that mouyth not you to compassyon / yet re-
32 membre that yo be champyon of Crist, exaltung his
feyth. My royalme is now cristen, and hath be long
soo / Woo were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu &
valyaunt man it shuld retouerne in to the paynemes
36 handes. Wherfore, noble kynge, haue regarde to this

and that his
heir is a fair
maiden.

They bring
Urian a letter
from the de-
ceded king;

1 fol. 103.

paying respects
to Urian and his
wife,

and intimating
his near end.

The king tells of
his daughter, 
whom Guion had
seen,

and begs Urian
to entreat his
brother to marry
the heiress of
Armenia, and to
be king of the
country;

as the land re-
quires a valiant
man to protect
it from the
Saracens.
that forsaid is,' &c. Whan vryan understode the tenour of pe lettre he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth / & moyd by compassion & pyte, ansuered to the Armanyens, sayeng in this manere: 'Lordes & barons, I shall not say H you at your nede, For yf my brother wyll not accorde thereto, yet sahe I eneduoyre my self to gyue you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counseyl, as ferre as my power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, 8 hys broder, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wherof he was sorrowful / and vryan to hym sayd the wordes that here folowen: 'Guyon, receyue this yefte, For I make you heyre of armenye and possessour of the moost 12 fayrest pucelle that is in all the land / that is my Cousyn florye, daughter to the kyng of Armany, which by the wyf of god is passed out of this world / and I pray you that ye dayne to take this yefte, For it oughte 16 not to be refussed.' 'By my feyth, fayr brother and my lord,' said guyon, 'I thanke you moche therof, and hym also that is causer of hit, on whos soowe god hawe mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfual 20 & glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto, they kneelded byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen the feest greter than it was afoere. And in that meane 24 saison the king dide doo make hys nauye redy, that was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels he made to be putte grete rychesses / and guyon hys brother, accompanied with the maister of Rodes, & with many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys leue, & entred in to the see & saylled so long that they arryued in Armenye, 2 where they were receyued honourably. 3

2 Fr. Et tant allèrent, tant de jour comme de nuit, qu'ils apperçurent et visrent la ballet du Crub, qui est la maitresse ville du royaume d'Armanie.

3 There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled Comment Guion espousa la pucelle Florie et fut roy d'Armanie, as follows:—Adone l'uing des
There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the feste all the barons of the land came to Cruly & made theyre homage to guyon, whiche crowned himself king & regned honourably. And after these thinges doon the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke their leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yestes of ryches, & they entred in to their shippe and rowed 8 tyl they cam at Rodes, where as the said maister festyed worshipfully the estrangiers, and so dide al the knightes brotheren of hys relygyon. And at thende of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And recounted to Vryan al the trouth of the fayt, and how his brother guyon was honourably receyued in armayne / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there, wherof moche thankes rendred guyon to god. Within few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke their leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yestes of ryches / and sent word by them in wrytyng to his fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons & entred in to their shippe, whiche they fonde wel purveyed of al that was necessary to them, and toke their way toward Rochelle in poytou.

Now sayth thystorye, that the barons of poytou sailed so long that they perceyued & sawe 28 Rochelle, where they arryued with grete joye / and where he weds Flory. The barons do their homage to him, and he is crowned, and reigns honorably.

His friends set sail to Rhodes, 1 fol. 104.

and from thence to Cyprus, where they relate to Urian all the adventure.

Some knights of Poitou, after receiving gifts from Urian, and a letter for his parents, set sail for Rochelle.

They arrive,

barons d'Armanie parla mault hautl addressant sa parole à Guion, et dist: Sire, nous vous avons esté querir pour estre nostre seigneur et nostre roy; si est bon que nous vous delivrons tout ce que nous vous devons bailler. Et voiz cy ma damoiselle qui est toute prête de accomplir tout ce que nous vous avons promis et au roy Urian votre frère. Par foi, dist Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour moy; et continues then as above.

2 This begins a new chapter in the French version, entitled, Comment les messagiers apporèrent les lettres à Ramondin et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient voix.
and three days after rode to Lusignan,
where Raymondin and Melusine receive them
with great joy.
They deliver the letters from Crian and Guion,
which please their parents.

This year Melusine builds the Church of our
Lady and many other abbeys,
and Odo marries the daughter of the Earl of March.

Anthony and Regnald, hearing of the brothers' success,
desire to follow their example;
so they ask permission to go out into the world
to earn the order of knighthood.

there they refreshed them self the space of thre dayes,
and after mounted on their horses & rode toward
Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne
and their other children with them, whiche receyued 4
them with grete joy. And theye theye deliveryed to
them the letters of kynges Vryan & guyon their sones.
And when they here & vnderstood the tenour of
them they thanked god of the good aventure that he of 8
his grace had youen to their two sones / and yaf grete
jewelles & ryche yeftes to the barons that brought
thyngis of them. And that same yere melusyne fownded
the churche of our lady in Lusynen & manie other 12
abbeies in lande, and enowled them with grete pos-
sessionys. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage
made betwix Odon her sone and the Erle of marchis
doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in 16
a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /
I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondyln, 'doo your wyH therof, For what someuer ye wyd I me consent thereto.' 'Sire,' said 4 Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hens fourth they begynne to take on them som vyage & to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renowned & knowen / and to knowe & discerne good from euyl.' 8 Thenne the two bretheren kneeled byfore theire fader & moder, & thanked them moch humbly of the honour that they promysed them to 1doo. And here ceaseth thystory to spek of them / and speketh of another mateere.

In this partye sayth thystorye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the 16 Erledome of Luxembourgh, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre daughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her 20 fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightfutt heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was deed in her child bed at the birthe of a 24 daughter, whiche the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. When this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Luxembourgh was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a daughter, whiche 28 was the fayrest damoyseH of alH the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys CounseyH, to speke & treate the maryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold neuer con- 32 sent theerto / wherfore he waxed sorowfuH in herte / and sware god that outhre by force or by her wyH he shuld haue her, whatsoever it might faH therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & chalenged the mayde & alle 36 her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of their parents consent.

At the time when the ruler of Luxembourgh was a maiden named Christine, the wife of the King of Anssay died. He wished to marry again, and made proposals to Christine, but was rejected. In revenge he swore he would have her by force, and challenged her and her land.
the lande & all the commynalte wyst it / they said & sware that syth theyre lady wold not haue hym to her lord / they shuld shewe to hym that he dide wrong to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they garnyshed theire Cites, tounes, & Fortresses. 1And the moost part of the barons drew themself to the toune & Castel of Lucsembourgh with Cristyne, theire owne propre lady. What shuld I make you long compute / 8 they were nat that tyme strong ne puyssaunt ynough for to fyght ayenst the kyng of Ansay. For he came vpon them with a grete puyssaunce of peple & moche adom-maged the lande / and came al breynyg vnto byfore 12 the toune & Fortresse of Lucsembourgh, where he layed siege. And of faytte theire was grete scarmysshing & grete losse of one parte and of oher. It happe she that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche had be with Vryan at the conqueste of the royaume of Cipre, and euer was with hym at all the baytayHes that he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and 20 had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes of ryches / and sawe there Regnanld and Anthony, that were moche strong and grete, & of fyers & hardly contenaunce / and wel it semed to hym that they shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of theire bretheren, and theire high prowes & enenterprise / drew the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordeis, ye may conceyue and wel 28 perceyue that we may not hold lange ayenst the puys-saunce of the same kyng. Wherfore yf it seme you good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the 32 stable or euer the horses be lost.' And they answere, 'that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy therto without the grace of god be.' 30 'For southe,' said the forsaid baron, 'Without godis grace none may but 36
And that he knew for certayn that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and helpe of the two bretheren, they shuld come with grete puyssance, when they shuld have knowledge of the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say ful wel.' Thenne they fourthwith went tofore Crystyne theire lady, and wordes to worde they recounted to her all this affayre. And she said to them, 'Fayre barons, I recommande you my land and yours / doom what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for the commyn wele of all my land. For wete it for certayn, that for to dey or to be dysheryted, I shal not have the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that he wyl haue by force me & my land. And they ansuered to her / 'dubte you not therof, my lady, For yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puyssance as long as we shalH mowe strete our owne bodys.' 'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And theyn they departed thens. Thenne said one of the barons to the forsaid gentlelman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shalH deluyero me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf we can fynde there 2ony thing' to vs prouffytable.'
Thenne they anoone chose among them, that is to wete, two of the wysest & noblest men for to goo with hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted upon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were never perceyued / and hasted them self on their way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and speketh of Meluysyne & her children, that is to wete, 8 of Anthony and of Regnald. /

ThISTORY sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyamly. but abone alle the yonge squyers that 12 were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & commendacion of the ladyes and gentyl wymen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but always Melusyne thoughte to puruyee to 16 thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and puruyed of men to goo with them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endotryne them, & shew to tham the way of good 20 gouvraunue. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourg / pe whiche made theire obeyssance to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the companye / And joyously 24 they were receyued / & soone was there knowen the knight that had be with vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of 28 hym, yf it playesd hym to goo with hym & with hys brother Regnauuld in som vyage where he purposd to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be wel rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, 32 & whither is your entencion for to goo?' And he answerd: 1 At our ajenture there as god shal conduyt vs, for to gete honoure and chenalrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the 36
 moost honourable aventure that euere gentylman had that adventured hym self, and the moost honourable entrepyse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod 4 hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere: 'Noble man, vouchesauf to vttre to vs that noble entrepyse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,' said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous 8 you to see enhaunsed in honour, also for to susteyne ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you all the materre thereof. 

' Ryght dere lordes, it is trouth that aI theo that 12 loue ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes an orphenyng. And forasmoche, fayre lordes, it is soo that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardale is a moche 16 ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucem- bourgh, the whiche duchye a noble man governed long as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys 20 heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayre pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land haue as now don theyre homage & obeyssance. And where it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beaute- 24 fulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheryt- ance, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle refused hym bycause he had be wedded tofore, & of late he was wydower. Wherfore this kynge of Anssay 28 hath defyed her and al her land, and supposeth to haue her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byfore hym vnto the toune & Castel 1 of Lucembourgh, where as 32 he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne that he shal neuer departe thens vnto tyme he hath his wylle of her, other by force or by loue. Wherfore, lordes, me semeth that in all the world nys more honour- 36 able a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,
For alle theo that love honour & gentylnesse ought to draw them self that part. 'In good feyth,' said thenne anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shal show this matere to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyue vs / and how so ever it happeth, by thynde of god we shal goo and socoure the pucelle that the kynge of Anssay wyl hane by force, wherof me semeth that he is euyl coune-8 seylyd.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yl ye vouchesaf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knightes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And pe two bretheren thanked them moche, & said / 'no doubtwe shal goo thither, yf it be the playstre of god' / And thenne they retourned toward their moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to them how he had expoyted / and that no nede was to speke ne require Raymondyn ne Melusyne therof. 'Now, veryly,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / blessid be god therof.' /

Here saith this history, that Anthony & Regnald came to their fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and reherced them of help & ayde tacomplysshe this enterpryse. Thenne spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, herto they may haue a fayre begynnynge in armes. Wherfore I pray you that ye purueye for 1them in suche wyse that we may haue therof honour & pursuyft.' 28 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for tacomplysshe your wylle, I shal endeuoyre me so diligently therto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that ony man that wold take wages vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shul come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shul be payed of peir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou. /
In this partye reherceth thy\lorye, that within the day that Melusyne made to be cryed and anounced the said wages, I were assembled many genty\lmen in a meddowe bysyde Lusyen\; and grete foys\n men of armes, to the nombre of foure thousand helmets and fyue houndred, some archers & oper cro\bowe men / and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were 8 al lodged in fayre tente\s & pa\yl\lons, and so purueyed of all maner harneyes & of al other thinge\s necessary to them, that eu\ry man was content. And while Ray\mondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, & 12 purueyed for al thinges that were nedefull to theyre voy\g / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to them the very trut\h / and were joy\fu\l in theire her\tes of the grete apparay\H that they save so soone re\y, For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to socoure with al theire lady. Wherfor they thanked 20 god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth with a messager toward the barons of Luxembourg, for to anounce to them the noble socoure that god sent to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir 24 the barons went & told to theire lady the tydynges, of the whyche she was moch recomforted, and bygan moche deuotely to lawde god her creatour. And when the people knew therof, they had grete joye, and 28 thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed with a mery voys, sayeng thus: 'Joye & victory to our pucelle.' And when theire enemyes withoutforth herd them, they wondred moch, & went & denounced it to 32 theire kyng, wherof he was abasshed & penseful. And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said to hym: 'Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the toune awayte dayly for socours.' 'By god,' said the

On the day appointed for the meeting, 4000 helmets and 500 archers assemble. They are well armed; and are paid their wages.

The barons describe the state of the land to the brothers, and send word of the aid coming to Luxembourg, whereat the barons, the lady Christine, and her people are glad.

The king of Ans\say is informed of the rejoicing,
but believes he will starve them out, not knowing of succour on the way.

Melusine calls Anthony and Regnald, and gives them parting advice. She tells them to love God and keep the commandments of holy Church, to be courteous to all,

to be cautious in believing scandal,

to be fair to their comrades,

stern with their enemies,

kinge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no maniere fro whens socours shuld come to them; I doubte not / but that I shal haue them at my wyH, other by strength or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the kyng of Anssay assured hym self, But afterward he fond hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym, and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two sones.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Regnald, her two sones / and to them she said in this manere: 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my lord your fader & fro me / and happely we shal neuer see you agayn. Wherfore I wyl teche & introdruyte you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye vnderstand & reteyne wel that I shaft say, For that shal be to you nedefull in tyme to come. First, ye shal loue / doubt & preyse god our creatour; ye shal fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandements of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in our feyth catholical. / be ye humble & curteys to good folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & euyl folke / and be ye always of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and leste / and hold talkyng to euery one whan tyme requyreth, without eny dysdaiyn / promyse ne be- heyghte nothing but that ye may shortly acomplyshe it after your power; withdrawe not rapporteurs of wordes toward you / byleue not enuoyus / nor beleue not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme the frend to wexe mortal foo; putte not in office auarycyous nor fel folke / acoynte you not with another mans wyf / departe or deele to your felawes of suche things that god shal gyue you; be swete & debonnaire to your subjects / and to your enemies fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subdued & vnder your puyssanunce / kepe your self fro auautynge & fro

Fr. aoointez.
menace / but doo your faytte with few wordes this that
may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, thaugh he
be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche /
4 be not emonges your felawes as maister, but commyn
with them / and worship euerychon after his degre /
and gyue to them after your power, & after that they
be worthy. 1gyue to the good men of armes hors &
8 harneys & syluer as rayson requyreth. Now, my
children, I no wot nat what I shuld more saye to you /
but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes &
affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold,
12 wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that
as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer bo dys-
comfyted in batayH.1 And thenne she kyssed them in
moderly wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of
16 theire fader, that ryght doilaunt was of theire departyng.
They made thenne theire troompettes to be sowned &
blown, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the
auantgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the
20 grete batayH in fayre 2aray / and the arryergarde also
marched forth in fayre ordynauce. It was a good
sight to see the state of the vantgarde, which the two
bretheren delyuered to be conduyted to a noble baron
24 & valyaunt knight of poytou / and them self toke &
conduyted the gret batayH / and by them rode the
ambaxadours of Luxembourge. And of the reregardo
were captayns the two knyghtes of poytou that ledd
28 vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them
that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famaigoce.
And to these two knyghtes Raymondyn & Melusyne
had recomanded the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

1 Fr. Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, chevalz, cottes
d'acier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raisou, et vous
se vous voiez ung bon homme de la main qui vienne devers
vos mal vestu ou mal monté, si l'appeliez mont humblement
et luy donnez robes, chevaux et harnais, selon la valeur de sa
personne et selon le pouvoir que vous avez alors,
and march that night to Mirabel, nald & Anthony. And trouth it is, that on the first nyght they lodged them nygh to a strong toune vpon a lytel ryuere / and was that same toune named Myrabel, pe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same 4 nyght bygan the two bretheren to make good watche, as they had be alredy in land of enemyes, wherof many gaf themself grete merueyH; but they durst not refussfe it, For Anthony was so cruel that euery man drac 8. hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo / the two bretheren made cryees vpon peyne of hors & haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, pat eueryman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good 12 aray of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was it doo, Wherof they al merueyHed. & And in this manere they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & 16 ennuyed of theire harneys / as moche for pis that it was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that conduyed the vangarde cam to the two bretheren, & thus 20 said to them: 'My lordes, the moost part of your people is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye 1 con-strayne them to bere theire harneys; For them semeth no nede to doo soo tyll that they come nygh to the 24 marches of your enemyes.' 'And how, sire,' said Anthony, 'thinke you not that the thinge which is acustomed of long tyme be bettre knowen of them that exercice it, & lesse greuable than that thinge which is 28 newly lerned?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght, 'ye say wel.' 'morouer,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre for hem to lerne the peyne for to susteyne theire harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at theire 32 case, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them self, and knowe the manere how they myght easy susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For yf they muste be taught of theire enemyes / theire peyne 36
CH. XXIV. | A FALSE ALARM IN THE CAMP. 193

shuld be greter & doubtous / and ye wote ynough, that who lerneth not his crafte in his yongthe, with grete payne & harff it shal be for hym to be a good werke-
4 man in his old age.' 'Certanyly, my lord,' said the knyght, 'ye saye the playne trouth of it, and your reason is fulf good.' And thenne he departed fro hym, and announced to many one this rayson, in so 8 moche that knowlechi of it they had thorough al thoost, wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content / and al sayd that the two bretheren might not sayH to haue grete wele, yf god wold send to them long lyf, 12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.  

Thystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren made to be cryed alarme througH the oost right ferfully. Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they armed them, puttyng themselv in fayre aray of batayH. euery man vnder his banere byfore their tentes. And 20 wete it wel, that it was grete beaute to see the good contenaunce & the noble ordynaunce & fayre aray of the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went fro bataiH to batayH / and there as fawte was of ordynaunce, they redressid their peple to it. And 24 ordynaunce, they subdue & conquere yet a grete part of the world / now wel may say the king of Anssay, that dere he shal abyse his folye & proude enterpryse, and the dommage that he hath borne to owr lady, & to her land & subgets.' In suche partye they were long tyme, tyl the espyes that secretly were departed fro the oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countre about, yf enemyes were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that they

1 is in MS.  

MELUSINE.
They returned with the news that no enemy was in sight. At last it was known to be a false alarm.

The captains of the van and rear guards complained of the trouble, but Anthony told them he did it to test the troops.

The next day they marched to Dam Castle, which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambassadors advised the brethren to halt and refresh their men.

Anthony's method of discipline. [CH. XXIV.

aspyed no personne; whero[f] al gat them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was wel known that the two bretheren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two bretheren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lordes, grete symplenes it is to you thus to trauyyle your people for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them /8 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye not it to be essayed, for to knowe ye ony fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?'/ And they al answerd, 'For certayn, 12 sire, ye / and that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'yf I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my ned / sene & consydered that we approue our 16 enemys / to them? ye ony fawte we had fonde, to haue purueyed of conuenable remedy therto, at our lesse dommage / than yf in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard1] that word? / they answerd, 'my lord? ye 20 say but rayson / and they wondred moche of 2 theire gouernement, and of theire subtylte & wyt / sayeng betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse 24 was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sowne the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodge?, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & 28 lodged them vpon a ryuere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damcastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore Lucembourgh, were not past two days journey for them. Thenne came the barons ambaxadours of 32 Lucembourgh to the two bretheren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

1 word scraped out of MS.
fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng! and also is good to take aduyes & Counseyl how ye wyl doo.'/

4 Thanne answerd Anthony ryght boldly: 'By my feyth, fayre lorde, thaduys is ouerlong take, For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the kynge of Aussay, yf he wyl not doo after our wyH, he may hold hym sure to haue batayH / and the victory shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me semeth we haue good quareH, And therfor we haue hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we shal, or euere we fyght, demande of hym ryght & rayson / but it musste be aduyesd who shal goo on the message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the vantgarde, 'I shal be your messanger, yf it please you, and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony / that playseth me ryght wel / but that shal not be tyl myn oost be but thre leghes ferre fro them / to thende, '20 yf pe batayH muste be that we may be nere them for to fyght, and haue thayde of the toune with vs. 'For yf he wyl the batayH we wold be alredy by hym.' And thus they lefte to speke of this mater. And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo, thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel in fayre ordynaunce / and so long they rode that they arrayued on an euyn betwene vertone and Lucem- 28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vantgarde, and the said gentylman toward the kynge of Aussay, to whom they said the wordes that herafter folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they came to the siege, and were brought as messagers tofore the kynge, whome they salued, & made reverence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn 36 said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, hither we be sent
from our redoubted lorde, Anthony & Regnald, of
Lusynen bretheren, for to shew vnto you the fawte &
grete outrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady
of Lucembourgh / the which our lorde redoubted 4
mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restab-
lysshe the dommage, & to make raysonable & lawful
amendes of the Injury & ylonnye that ye haue don
to her / to her subgets & to her propre enhertyaunce, 8
and after to departe out of her land ye shal doo wel,
and they make them strong to make your peas with
her / and yf ye wyl not so deele with her / their
entencyon is for to take reparacion vpton you of the 12
dommages beforsayd by strengthe of theire arms & by
batayH. and gyue to vs an ansuere what your wyll is
to doo / and after moronuer I shal telle you as I am
commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the 16
kyng, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my
feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your
lettres ne to your preching, I shal not be letted of myn
entencyon / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I 20
vouchesaf. 1 For I take my dysport in your talkyng &
prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye
suche things but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,'
said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not 24
promptly & anoone this that our lorde mande by vs
vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastily
tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knyght,'
said the kyng, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs wynouge. 28
For other thinge ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me,
For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not
worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king' of Anssay, I defyfe
you on my ryght redoubted lorde byhalf.' 'Wel 32
thanne,' said the kyng, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng
& fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By 2 my sowle,
answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

2 M.S. read My.
soo,' And without ony moo wordes they departed / And when they were out of thoost or siege / the gentylman toke leue of the Captayne, and secretly entred in to the toune for to recounte the tydynge of the two brethern / and when he came to the gate he was anone known, and the yate was opened to hym, & gladly he was welcommed of eueryone / and they demanded tydynge of hym / whiche answerd to them. 'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shal haue the moost noblest socours that euer was seen / and wete it wel that the king of Anssay abydeth so long', that he shal be certaynly othere slayn or take, & his persone al dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne bygyanne the joye to be so grete throught the toune that they with-outforth herd the bryut thereof, and woundred moche what it might be / and announced it to the kyng. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, ‘they reforme them-sell for the commyng of thoo two children by whome that knyght hath defyed vs, For 1 as I trow, they haue herd some tydynge therof, and perfor they make suche joye.’ ‘In the name of god,' said an auncyent knight, ‘al this may be / but good were to take heed thereto / For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought to haue doubte therof. For I know them wel ynoth by semblaunt. For or euer they come hyther from poytou we shold haue brought about a parte of our wyH.' Now I shal leue to spek of the kynge / and shal retourne to speke of hym that brought tydynge of the two bretheren in to the toune. When the knyght thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was / and after hys obeyssance don vnto her, he rehearsed to her al the playn trouth of the mayntene & countenaunce of the two bretheren / and he said to her / ‘how Anthony bare a claw of a Lyon in his face’ / and shewed to her hys grete fyerste & his grete strengthe / Also how
Regnal had but one eye / and the beaute of theyre bodyes & of theire membres / wherof she merueyelled moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contruyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. 4 And now cesse thistory to speke of them / and retourneth to teH of the captayne that retourneth to thoost toward Anthony and Regnald. /

Thistorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne 8 that he came in to thoost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fulfylled hys message, & recounted word? by word? the proude ansuere of the king; and how he had defyyed hym in theire byhalf / 12 and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourgh to teH there 1 of theire commyng / And when the two bretheren her? hym they were fulH joyous / and soone made cryees thrughhe theyre oost, 16 that al they hat had no wyH for to fyght & abyde the batayH shuld draw themself aparte, & gas? to them leue to retourneth agayn in their Countrey / but they escryed them self with an hye voys. 'Ha / a, franc 20 demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sowned, & lete vs go forth vpon your enemys / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauenture with you suche as god shall send? vs / Ha, lorde, goo we 24 & renne vpon our enemys, For with goddes grace, & with the good? wyH that we be of, they shall soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren her? the ansuere of theire peple they were joyfull, and made 28 theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ryuere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataiH lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferper / and they soupped togidre, and after went to restes them, & made 32 good watche / and at day spryng they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes with an ℁ croisbowes / and theynne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see 36

The captain arrives at the two bretheren and their host, and recounts the king's proud answer, and how the knyght left him to go to Luxembourg.

The bretheren send word through the host that those who have no will to fight can go home, but the host cries, 'Let us go forth upon your enemies.'

The host marches forward to a little river, where they rest, sup, and appoint a good watch.

At day-spryng they are ready; 200 men of armes and 100 cross-bowmen are left to take charge of the camp.
baners & standarts in the wynd, and vnder them the floor of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynaunce / there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere / 4 and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld rode at the first frout, mounted vpon two grete horses 8 armed of all pieces. And in that estate and aray they went tyl they came vpon a lytel moustayne / and sawe fro thens in the valey the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh, and the gret siege that aduyrouned it 12 about. And wete it pat they of the siege had not yet perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were all assured pat they shuld haue the batayH. Theune sent anthony foure hounded helmets for to scarmysshe 16 the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas in fayre aray of batayH / And on the wynges of thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordynaunce. Now teH we of the foure hounded fyghting 20 men that went for to scarmysshi with them of the siege. / They march forth in good order; Anthony and Regnauld in front on two great horses. 1 fol. 113 b. They come to a little mountain, from which they see the town and castle of Luxem- bourgh and the siege around it. The besiegers do not see the relieving host. These knights slay all they encounter, and come nigh the king's tent, which was de- fended by his night watch. Anthony sends 400 skir- mishers in advance. The king arms himself, and asks his men what affray is this? A knight answers that men of arms have

Thystory saith that the foure hounded fyghtyng men entred vpon thire enemies, and slew & 24 hew doune all that they recounted / And when they were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night watche that were not yet vnaarmed went ayenst them, for the cry that they made that was 'Lusynen' / many sperys 28 were putte there all to pieces, and many one cast doune to the ground? / and the grestest dommage tourned vpon them of the siege / but sodaynly the kyng armed hym self, and putte hym vnder his banere byfore his tente / 32 and whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, & drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he de- manded of them, 'Fayre lordes, what affray is this?' 'By my feyth,' said a knight, 'they are men of armes 36 that entred in your oost ryght fyersly, and they cal
damaged them sore, but the night watch has driven them back.

1 fol. 114.

Anthony with his men comes up in battle array,
and the king comes forth to meet him.
The battle begins, and much blood is split.

Anthony fights so well

that the most hardy dare not abide him.

Regnald also does great feats of arms.

Lusynen, and they haue adommaged you sore / and yt it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter, For they haue faught with them valyautly / and haue made them to goo back by force.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said 4 the kynge / ‘these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am defyyed, haue not taryed long to come & bere dommage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.’ Thenne is come Anthony and his batayH, which made 8 his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And when the kyg perceyued them he came withforth the lodgis in fayre aray & batayH renged. And theume the bataylles recounted eche other / and archers & cros-12 bowmen approached & bygan to shoote, and there were slayne & hurt many one of the king of Anssay party, and neuertheles the grete batayH assembled togidre / and there was grete occysion & fyers medlee. And 16 theume anthony broched his hors with the sporys, the spere alowed, & smote a knyght by such vertue that the targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntysse hym, but that he threw hym doune to therthe al deed. 20 And thenne he drew out his swerfd, and smote on the lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so knowen throug al the batayH that the moost hardy 24 of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser callyng ‘Lusyynen,’ which made so grete appertyse of armes that alle his enemies redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytayH 28 fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayes the gretest losse & dommage tourned vpon the kynge of Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorowful, & enverted hym self strong, and made with his 32 handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym nought, For the poytevins 2 were ryght strong; hard, & fel lyke lyons / and their were the two lordes so puyssaunt that none so bold was there that durst abydo 36
them. Thence sawe wel the kynge by the puyssaunce & strength of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre theire force.

4 Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dys-comfyted the kynge of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take.

The kynge thence, which was a valyaunt man & strong, cryed with a hye voys 'Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abasshed, For the batayll is oures' / and at his callyng his peuple toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about theire kynge, that he myght no longer stand them. Thenne sawe wel the kynge by the puyssaunce.

The noise of the battle is heard by the towns-folk, and by the knight messenger who is with the maid Christine.

They rally and again fiercely attack the Poitevins.

And they of the toune that herde this grete affray, toke theire armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdful & doubtous of treson. And the knyght which anounced to them the socours of the two brefern was with the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that were come for to fight ayenst the king & his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, 'My lady, come hither & see thefloure of knyghthood, of prowess & hardynes / come & see honour in his siege royall, & in his mageste / come & see the god of armes in proper figure.' 'Frend, said the pucelle / what is that ye say to me?' 'I calle you,' sayd the knight, 'to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of aH champions, that fro ferre land is come hither for to fyght with your enymes for to kepe your honour,

---

1 Fr. enmeye = attack.  
2 fol. 115.  
3 for in MS.
your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of Lusynen, that be come for to defsend you ayenst the king of Anssay & all his puyssaunce, and to putte their honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your 4 honour sauf.' Thenae came the mayde at the wyndowe, & beheld the mortal batayH & horrable medlee / sayeng in this manere: 'O Veray god, what shall doo this pouere orphenym / bettre it had be that I had 8 drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed when I yssued out of my moders wombe / than so many creatures shuld be slayne & perysshe for myn owne 12 synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yong damoy-selle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in certayn thoccyson was grete on both partyes, For the king recomforted his peuple by his wo[...]y conten-16 aunces & valyaunt maynten; For wiþ his propre swerð he moch adommgad his enemys poyteuyns. 1But Anthony, seeying the grete dommage that the kynge bare vpon his peple / he was dysplayed wiþ, & sayd 20 in hym self: 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not be tong; For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my peuple so murdred before me.' Thezne he sporyd hys hors / and fyersly as a lyon raen vpon the king: 24 with his swerð of stele smote hym vpon the hyest part of his helmet by suche strength & vertue that he made hym to be enclyned vpon þe hors neck, so sore astonadyd that he ne wyst wheþer it was nyght or day, nor he 28 had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerð in the shethe ayen; & toke the king by the middes of the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast 32 hym to therthe that vnethe hym herte brake wiþin his bely / and after toke hym to foure knightes, and charged them on theire lyues that they shuld kepe hym, so that þey myght ansuer hym of it. And they 36
said that so shuld they doo / and they thauue bonde hym & lede hym out of the batayll, and called xxvi\(^{11}\) archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon 4 Anthony returneth in the pres, callyng 'Lusynen' with a bye voys, \& said: 'Now lordes \& barons, gyue grete strokes, \& spare none, For the journey is ours thankyng be to god; For I haue take the kyng of 8 Anssay my prysonn, that so grete vyonny ha\(p\) done to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.' Thenne was the medlee rude \& paryllous / and there dide the bretheren so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said that 12 they sawe never two so valyaunt knyghtes. What shuld preuyay\(H\) you long comple. 1 When the Anssays people knew that theire kyng was take, they never syn made no defense \& but wer alle outhre slayne or 16 take. And there gate the poyteyns grete conqueste \& noble proye, and lodged them self in the panyllons \& tentes of the kyng of Anssay \& of hys peple. And was the kyng brought in Anthonys tente, which a 20 lytel byfor was hys owne propre tente; wherfore the kyng\(s\) myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: 'By my feyth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouth that sayth / "that god doth / he doth anono"' / For this day, in 24 the mornyng, men had doo here within but lytel for your commandement.' 'Sire,' sayd Anthony, 'your folyshnes \& synne is cause therof; For tofore ye wold rayysshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this 28 toune / but therof ye shal be payed after your deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnder her subjec- tion.' Thenne whan the kyng\(v\)nderstode hym, he was shamfast \& woofu\(H\) / and as dysolate \& dyscomfyte, 32 fu\(H\) heuyly answere\(d\) in this manere: 'Sith now it is thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl day than to lyue.' 'Nay,' sayd Anthony, 'ye shal deluyere your self / no doubte of / vnto pe mercy \& subjuc- tion 36 of the pucelle.'
THE KING SENT TO CHRISTINE. [CH. XXVI.}

Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne.

1 fol. 116 b. Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons, ambaxadours that were come to Lusyney, with 4 the said gentylman fro Lucsembourgh and xx\textsuperscript{ii} other knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere:

's Now lede me this kyng tofore pe damoyselle Crystyne, and recomande vs moche vnto her / and that we send\& her / her enemy prysonner, for to do with hym her wy\textsuperscript{ii}.' And themne they departed, & lede the king as they were youen in commandement / and came to the toune, where they were wel festyed & honourably 12 receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them toward the pucelle, thire lady Crystyne, with grete joye. 'Noble lady,' said the messagers, 'the two yong damoyseaulx of Lusyney recomande them hertyly 16 vnto you, 2and send you this kyng\& your enemy prysonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon & wylle.' ‘Fayre lordis,’ answere\& the damoyselle / 'herto behoueth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssant 20 ynough for to reward them as they haue deseryud. I pray to god denoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde them to whom I am moch bonden / and I pray you, fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two 24 yong lordes that they vouchesauff to come and lodge them self here within, & as many of theyre barons with them as it shal lyke them good. & in pe meane while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed 28 horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counseyl shal take thire best aduys to see how I shal reward them of thire grete peyne & trauel, that they haue suffred for me vnworthy perof, and to recompense 32 them of thire grete expenses & dommages in the best wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kyng of Anssay, ye swere vnto vs by your ryalte that ye shal

Anthony despatches the King of Anssay under guard to Christine.

Anthony despatches the King of Anssay under guard to Christine.

who gives great thanks,

and hopes God will reward them.

She says her council will consider how to recompense her deliverers,

and binds the king to promise that he will stay.
not departe from hens without the wyff & gree of the
two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward
me. For yet so mochI I knowe / thankyng to god /
that I shuld mysdoo to cast you in pryson / not for
your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent
you.' Whan theane the kyng vnderstode the wordes
of the pucelle, he answering al ashamed, 'Noble damoy-
selle, I swere you on my feyth that neuer I shal
departe without your leue & theirs also; For so moch
of wele / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene
in them, that moche I desyre to be acounted with
them / how be it that grete dommage they haue borne vnto
me & my men.' And theane the noble mayde made
hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with
hym ladyes & damoyseulx, also knyghtis & squyers,
for to make hym to forgete his losse, & forto reioye &
haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the
messagers retourned toward the tentes, & reported
the mandemement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto
the two bretheren, whiche were counselled to geo thither;
and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne
theire peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and
also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to
be buryed, & to make the place clene where as the
batayll had be. Thenne they departed, accompanied
with theire baroanye / and ayenst them came, in theire
best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the
barons of the land mete with them, & made theire
obeyssaunce full honourably vnto the two brethern,
prayeng them yet agayn, on theire ladys behalf, that
they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the toune /
And they ansuered that gladly they wold doo soo.
Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he
had on hym a jacke of Cramesyn velvet, aH brouded &
sette with perlis, and held a grete vyretton in his hand.
And in lyke & semblable manere went dys brother
in the town until the brethern are satisfied.

This done he is given a fair chamber.
Knights and
1 fol. 117 b.
ladies are sent
to keep him
company.
The guard of the
king returns to
the brethern,
who leave their
army in charge
of the marshal,
The barons of Luxembourg, who come to meet them, are astonished at the appearance of the brethren, and marvel at Anthony's claw,

and at Regnald's one eye. 1 fol. 118.

They enter the town amidst the sound of trumpets.

The houses are richly decorated, and the windows full of women.

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

Regnald. And when the barons of Lucembourgh saw the two brethren, they wondred most of their fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might with/stand ne abyde their 4 puyssauce / and moche they merueylled of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthonys cheke, & said that yf ne he had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but 8 one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulde al oper men.

In this partye sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & fayre aray entred the two brethern in to the toune 12 of Lucembourgh; & before them sowned trompetttes in grete nombre, with heraults & menestrels; And Cyte-seyns had hanged their houses withoutforth toward the stretes, with their best & rychest hangyng clothes / 16 and the stretes where the said lordes passed were couered on high with lynen clothes, that no rayne or other fowil wedryng myght lette peire entree within the toune / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys 20 wyues / damoyselles and fayre maydens, were in their best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokynge out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethern & their felowship. 24

Thystorye thanne sayth that the two brethen de-parted out of theire tentes with noble companye, as barons, knightes, squyers, & other gentylmen / and as vyctorious prynces rode full honourably vnto 28 Lucembourgh, and throug the toune, where as they were behold with joyous herte of every one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, brethern that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse 32 that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonyes cheke / and also for certayn it was a strange thinge to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that incommueny. 36
ence to be forgotten / And thus they rode toward the Castel. The ladyes & damoyselles beheld them out of the wyndowes / and said that they neuer sawe two
damoysaulex of more noble affayre. And themane they
came to the Castel, wher they alightted, and entred
fourthwith into the hal, where as the noble Crystyne
mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes &
damoyselles in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyers /
and with a joyous contenaunce & gracyous maynten
honourably receyued them & gretyly festyed them.
The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after
the use of the land, and fro the halle they went in to
another chambre, mocfi noble & ryche, & þere the
pucelle Cristyne bygan to say to them in this manyere:
‘My right dere lordes, I thanke you mocfi, as I may
of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I
am not so mocfi worth as ye ought to be rewarded of /
not that withstanding I shaH endeucyre me therto / al
shuld I laye of my land in pledge this tene yere day.
And also, my lordes, of your noble grace ye haue sent
to me the king of anssay, myn enemy, of the which
plaise it vou to knowe that I am not she to whom
oughte þe punysshement of hym / but to you appara-
teyneth to dow therwith your playsire & volente, that
haue had the parcel & payne for to overcom & take
hym your prysonner / wherfore after that right re-
quyreth he is yours, & may doo with hym whatsoeuer
it plaise you / and I remys hym in your posession.
For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you,
& loke not to medle ony more with him tofore you.’
‘Noble damoyselle,’ said thanne anthony, ‘sethen it is
your playsire, weshal ordelaye wel þerof, in suche wyse
that it shall be to your grete honour & prouffyte / and
to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And
wete it that my brofer and I are not cõme hither for
loue of your siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /
also considered that all noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenemy, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that the kinge of Ansay made grete werre 1anest you & 4 your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of aH your goodes we wyl not take the value of one penny / but alonely to be receyued in your noble fauour & good grace, aH vylounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle 8 Cristyne vnderstode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dine vnto her / not that wiltstanding she answered in this manere:

"For southe, my gracuous lorde, at lest it were no 12 raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers. 'Damoysselle,' said pene Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, 16 haue payed them alredy for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue ynough. 20 Wherfore, noble damoysselle, ye lesse your wordes to speke therof, For certyn it shal none other be'/ and she thanne thanked them in her best mane nye right humbly.

The steward an- 

nounces dinner; 

they wash, 

and send for the 

King of Ansay, 

who sits down 

to dinner with 

them. 

3 fol. 119 b.
tables dressed, wherat sette all other gentylmen, barons & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the servyse I nede not to hold you long compte, For they were so nobly & haboundauntly served, that nothing accordyng to such a ryalH feste they wanted of. And whan they had dyed they wesshe handes, and graces were said, and all the tables voyded. thanne said the king of Anssay in this manyere: 'Lordes damoyseaulx, vouche-sauff to here my wordes. It is trouth that the wyH of god & myn vnfortune hath brought me to that caas, that by your valiauntnes & prowesse I am & haue be 12 bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye haue take me your prysoner / but I ensure you, consideryng your high prowesse, your bounte, & your noble aaffayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now 16 with you, For I shal be the better thefore al my lyf naturel; and syth, fayre lordes, pat my presence & long abhydyng here with you may nought preuylye to you / humbly I besech you, as I best can, that it playse you 20 to putte me to raisonable munsion & payement port-able to me, so that I be not al dysstroyed nor dys-herytet / thaugh it lyeth now in your power / but haue pyte on me, & punysshe me not aftir the regarde 24 of my poylysshe enterpyse / how be it pat rygour of justice requyreth it.' 'By my hed,' said Anthony, 'who that shuld punysshe you after the regarde of the grete iniurye, vylonnye, & dommage that ye haue don, 28 and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoyselle without eny lawful cause / ye were not puyssant to make amendes suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that ye knowleche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye 32 haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother & I be not come from our countre hither for hoop of getyng of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for desire & hope of getyng of honour & good fame or 36 renommee, without to haue ony wyH or appetyt to
hau mortal rychesses. Wherfore, as touchyng our part, we now remyse & putte you free quyte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucello all such dommages that she hath had at your cause / and perof ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swore vnto her vpon the holy Euaungiles, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of dommage ne 8 dyshonour to the foresaid pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyne her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst all them that injiurye or dommage wold doe to her. And wel I wyl that ye 12 knowe that yf ye wyl not swere & accorde to that I haue said with your good wylle, I shal send you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kynge vnderstode these worDES 16 he aNSwered in this manycere. ‘Sire, I am wylyng & redy to swere that conuenanci, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said she, ‘I consent me therto, syn it is my 20 lordses plaissure’ / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

Ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelve 24 monkes & the Pryour, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & empossesse them with rentes & revenue conuenable for theire lyuyng & for their successours for euermore / the said monkes & 28 Pryour to pray there for the soles of them that have be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayH.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said theame the king, ‘I promyse you that so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shal gyue 32 you, & to my lady to be asurred therof.’ Thenne sware the kynge by hys feyth vpon the holy EuauNGILeS that he shuld hold & accomlysshe al that beforesaid is / & gaf & delyuercd good hostages / & lettres patentes were 36
CH. XXVII. | THE KING MAKES A SUGGESTION. 211

Thereof made vnder hys seal, & the seales of all the barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said to the kyngge / ‘I now gyue you, and deluyere free all the prysonners that we & our folke haue take, and your tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed amonges my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld to you / And thenne he made to be deluyered to hym foure thousand prysonners or therabout, al men of estate & faytte / And thenne the kyngge enclynet hymself, & thanked hym mocli therof. What shuld I make longe compte / the feste bygane sumptuous & grete thrugh the toune of Lucembourgh, & specially in the Castel / and eueryone spake of the grete noblesse and curtoysye that Anthony & regnalde his brother had shewed to the kinge of Anssay /

16 Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseyle.

Thenne called the kinge of Anssay al the barons of the land to CounseyH, and said to them : ‘Fayre lorde, Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged; how be it thenne that I haue be yf wyller bothe to you & to your lady / the tyme is now come that I wold her honour and prouffit & youre also / lyst & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you, yf ye can take it in gree.’ Thenne said the barons : ‘Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed pe materere / vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.’

‘Yo moste,’ said the kyngge, ‘fynde the manere & meane that Anthony take your lady to his wyf, and he to be your lord, For thenne ye shal mowe saye surely, pat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so hardy were to take an hennes from you ayenst your wyf.’ And they answered thus : ‘Sire, yf Anthony

1 fol. 121. The King of Anssay calls the barons of Luxembourgh to council, and advises them to find means to make Anthony marry Christine.
They say they will be glad to do so.

The King of Anssay goes to Anthony and asks him to send for his brother and his council.

This is done.

Anthony and his people come to the barons of Luxembourg, who do them reverence.

The King of Anssay, in the name of the barons of Luxembourg says, seeing that Anthony and his brother will accept no gift of Christine, will Anthony grant them a gift of a kind which will not lessen his possessions?

Anthony answers he will, if it is something he can do honourably.

wold do soo we were therof full glad & joyous.' "Now theane, sayre lorde, lete me deele therwith / and I hope to god I shal brynye the mater to a good ende. Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with hym.' Themne came the kynge tofore Anthony, & said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseaux, the barons of this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, & your CounseyH come and entre in to this chambre. 8 For they desyre moch to speke with you for your prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony, 'ryght gladly.' And themne he called to hym hys brother & them of theire CounseyH / & syn entred in 12 to the chambr / and the barons of the land that were there enclyned themself, & made grete reuerence to the two brethrn. Themne spake the kynge of Anssay, & said: 'Fayre lorde, these two noble damousiaux are 16 come hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now to them your wyll.' And they ansuerde to hym: 'Noble kynge, humbly we beseche you, that ye annouce & shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe 1wel 20 ynowghe.' 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'I wyl.' And themne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say / 'A nthony, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight, pe barons of this Countree haue had regarde to 24 the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to theire lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue considered how nought ye wyl take of theire lady ner of them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & 28 honour, they humbly beseche your good grace that it playse the same to graunte to them a yefte, the which shal not lasse your good nor hauoyr / but shal rather augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kynge, yt 32 it be of that thing: that I may recouere / touching myn honour, I graunt it rigut gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the king, 'theire requeste is theane fulfilled, For they desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, sey theane, 36
said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoyseau,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchess of Lucembourgh, peire liege lady, to your wyt / refuse not that noble yefte'/

When anthony vnderstode hym he stood penseful long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, fayre lordes, I supposed neuer to come vnto this coutry for that quarrell; but sethen I haue accorded to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be sent for, For yf she be played therwith I consent me perto.' Thenne was the damoyselle fete thither by foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblaunt. And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her obeysaunce tofore antony, & salued alle the barons there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to wexe in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thenne the barons reherced & shewed vnto her all this affayre.

And whan the pucelle had herd them speke she anssuerd to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, I renderd & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to haue to my lord the flour of knighthode and the noblesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my self / wold not counsellye me that thinge, but it were to my grete prouffyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof your playssire.' /
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh. 

1 Forsoothe, noble lady,' said the Barons, 'ye say right wel & manerly.' What shuld I bring forth prolique or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre with gret joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & maryed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple 8 of the land was ryght joyous when they vnderstode & knew therof / and pat same nyght lay Anthony with the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyant heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste 12 themne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lords & barons of the land. And the king of Anssay yaf leue to his peuple 16 to retourne into theire Countrees / and abode with anthony with a pryuy 2 meye for to fulfyH & accomplishe that he had promysed at traytee makyng of the peas. And soone after the duc Anthony withe his 20 brother Regnald and the king of Anssay and the baronnye, went throught the land to vsyte the tounes & fortresses & putte al thing in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the 24 moost wysest prynce that euery they sawe / and when he had vysyted all pe land he returned to Lucem- borough, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyously / And thanne by thatdys of his Coun- 28 seiff he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wherof the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fere. And thus they soiourned at Lucembourgh with grete dysport & 32 joye / tyl that a messager came fro the king of Behayne there, which was brother to the king 3 of

1 fol. 122 b.

Anthony and Christin are assured together, and on the next morning they are married.

That night Anthony begets a valiant heire, who is called Bertrand.

The King of Anssay gives leave to his people to return home, while he remains to fulfil his treaty.

Anthony, Regnald, and the king go through the land and visit the towns and fortresses.

After his return Anthony adds the figure of a lion to his armes.

2 fol. 123.

A messenger arrives from the King of Bohernia,

2 Fr. privat maignee.
Anssay, and was besieged within his toune of praghe by the paynemes & sarrasyns.

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng, of behayne sent a messager toward the king, of Anssay his brother.

Thystorye sayth that a messager came to Lucem-bourgh fro the kyng Federyk of behayne, that was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong susteyned the feyth catholicke ayenst the Sarasyns / It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and seeyng hym self not puyssaunt ynough for to gyue unable to give battle to the Paynimes, withdrew to Prague.

12 them iourney of batayH, drew hym self & his peple with hym in to hys toune of Praghe / and had this kyng Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre, whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he 16 was brother to the king of 1 Anssay. Wherfore he sent a messager to Lucembourgh there as the kyng of Anssay his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke, the messenger came & directed his lettres to the king 20 of Anssay, whiche opened & redd it / by the tenoure of whiche he understode & knew the myschief where his brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng of eueryone there in this manere: 'Ha / a, Fortune, how art thou so peruerse & so cruell, certaynly wel is he deceived pat trusteth in the nor in thy yeftes by no manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrown me fro the uppermost stepp of thy whole vnto the 28 lowest / but utterly wylt dysstroye me for euer, whan my brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt kyng in the world, thou wylt so dysemoji & putte out fro his royaume, ye god of his grace purueye not of 32 remedy therto' / and thenne he retourned hym self toward anthony, & sayd: 'Ha / right noble & valiaunt who is besieged by the Sarasins at Prague.

The valiant King Frederick of Bohemia, unable to give battle to the Paynimes, withdrew to Prague.

His heir is his only daughter, Eglantine.

1 fol. 123 b. He sent a letter to his brother, the King of Anssay, telling him how matters stood.

The king after reading it complains against fortune.

2 Fr. version reads: C'ertes l'homme est bien deceu que en toy ne en te dis ne fi en riens.
because now that Anthony has overthrown his chivalry,

he is unable to help his noble brother Frederick against the infidels.

Anthony is sorrowful to hear these complaints.

He is given the letter to read, whereby he understands that Zelodius, King of Cracow, is besieging Frederick of Bohemia at Prague.

Anthony asks the king whether he could be soon ready to accompany him to succour Frederick.

prynce, it is now with me wers than euer was / For your noble cheualrye & puysaunce haue not only mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye haue dyscomfyted with me the moost true & valianst kyng & that euer was of my lynee, & that more valauntly hath defended the cristen feyth ayenst the enemes of god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng of Behayne, byeng sore oppressed & besieged within his 8 tow of praghe by thinfiideles & enemes of god, writeth1 vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure / alas, now your grete fayttes in armes haue kept me therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al 12 this commeth through myn owne fawte & folyshe enterpryse, For god hath punysshed me lasse ynoough then I haue deserye.2 And them he bygan to make suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see./

1 T hystorye sheweth in this partie that the due Anthony was ryght dolaunt & sorrowful whan he vnderstode the pyteous bewayllynge of the king of Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, telle 20 me why ye demene & make such dueyl.' 'By god,' sayd the kyng, 'wel I have cause / loke & see what the tenoure of this lettre specyfyeth.' Thenne toke anthony the lettre and redde it al ouer, Wherby he 24 vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief wherein Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, held Federyk3, kyng of Behayne, besieged within the Cite of praghe. And them the noble due Anthony consideryng the grete 28 myschief wherinne the Cristen peple was hold by the puysaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenysse with pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the Sarasyns shuld bye full derly the payne whiche they 32 made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said to the kyng: 'Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure your brother, wold ye not be sooner redy to goo thither-

1 viriteth in MS.
ward?' And when the kyng* understoaked thereof wordes he kneled doune toefore the duc, & said: 'Sire, yf ye wyl graunte me so moche of your grace / I swere & promise you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your brother kyng of Behayne after the decesse of my brother, whiche is elder than I almost xx\textsuperscript{ii} yere. For wete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre daughter, which is cleped Eglantyne / and she is about xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyue, yf ye vouchesauf, to Regnald your brother.' 'By my feyth,' said theane Anthony, 'and I accorde therunto. / goo thanne 12 hastily to Assay and make your mandement, and be with ys ayen within this thre wykes, and lodge your people in yonder medowe, Where your tentes \textsuperscript{1}as yet ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men, 16 whiche are with a knyglt of myn at the Lefse, where men had doon wrong\textsuperscript{2} to hym.' And the king anserde, 'Noble & curteys lord, he rewarde you therof, that suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.' And thenno 20 he toke his leuo of the duc and of the duches, of Regnald, \& of all the baronnye there, \& syn mounted on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he came in to his land of assay, sorrowful for his losse 24 \& joyfuH for the socours that the Duc Anthony promised to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the panemes \& enemesys of god. /

The veray hystorye testyfeyth that so long\textsuperscript{3} rode the kinge of Assay that he came in his land, where he was welcommed of his baronnye / and soone went to vysyte \& see his daughter Metydee, that was not yet two year old / and syn retorned with his barons / to whome he shewed al his affayre, and how he moste go socoure his brother; Also how Anthony \& Regnald his brother shuld helpe hym therto with al theire pus
saunce. 'By feyth,' said theane the barons, 'synth it is soo that thoo two brethern medle with this enterpryse,
hit may not fare but wel. For ayenst theire puyssance & worthynes may none withstand nor abyde / hast you thenne to make your cryees & mandement, For we al shal go with you.' Thenne made the kyng his oost 4 to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & alyez / & within a lytel space of tyme he assembled about seuene thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his royalme, whiche he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a 8 noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by his journeys, that at thende of thre wykes he came & lodged hym & his oost before Lucembourgh, 1 in the medow where his tentes were lefte. And thenne were 12 also come the dukes peple, that were in nombre fyue thousand helmets and a thousand V.C. archers & crosbowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were in nombre thre thousand, of pe whiche anthony toke 16 with hym two thousand & the other he lefte behyned for the sauegarde of the lands / of pe whiche heordeyned chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou / and that was the lord of Argemount. /

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leve of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost.

Now sayth here thystorye, that when the Duc 24 Anthony toke his leve of the Duchesse hys wyf, she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she durst make no semblantz / but she prayed hym to retourne assoone as he goodly myght / and he said 28 to her that so shuld he doo / And, morouer, he said to 2her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of your fruyte that growtheth in your blood, and cherysh your self / and yt goddis grace gyue that it be a sone, 32 make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand, For thus is my playsire. Thenne they embraced & kyssed eche
other, takyng leue one of other / and syn departed the duc & came to hys peuple, and made his trompettes to be sowned. Thenne mounted spere men on hors-
4 back, and bygane every man to marche forth in fayre aray. The vantgarde conduyted & ledo the kynge of anssay and Regnald with hym, which was mounted vpon a hye Courser, armed of al pyeces except his 8 helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte his men in ordre ful wel, & semed wel to be a prynce courageous & of hye enterpyryse / and after folowed the Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batayH / and 12 after siewed the ryergarde, whiche Anthony conduyted in fayre ordynaunce of batayH, For it was tolde hym put in that countre were many theevys / but the duc Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse 16 that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys peuple ony thing, that he shuld punysshe them in suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof. And so he passed throug aH the Leffe / and no man 20 was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost. It is trouth that on an euene he lodged hym tofore the Cite Acon1 with aH hys oost / and the Citezeyns there made & presented to hym grete yefes of ryches, wherof 24 he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his ser-
uyse, yf they mystery of it. And on the morn after the masse he deslodged, & so longe marched fourth on his way with his oost, that he came & lodged vpon 28 the ryuer of Ryne, which is grete & meruayllous. And 2 they of Coloyne made grete daunger to letre passe the oost thrugh the Cite at brydge / wherof anthonye was angry & dolaunt, and fyersly sent wordede 32 to them how he had entencion to reysse the siege, that the king of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand Sarasyns tofore the Cite of prague, wherinne was in grete oppression and dystres the king of behayne,

The army marches away to the trumpet sound. The vanguard is led by Regnald and the King of Anssay; then cometh the baggage in the middle, as Anthony was told the country was full of thieves, and then the rearguard led by Anthony in good order.

1 Fr. Ays:—Aix la Chapelle, Ger. Aachen.
and asks if they are on the Paynimes’ side or not.

When the men of Cologne understand how matters are,

they send four burgesses,

who tell Anthony they will let him pass through on condition that the citizens are protected from all damage by Anthony’s men.

Anthony replies that he wishes them no harm,

and inquires if any of his ancestors had at any time done them any mischief.

The burgesses return to the city, and tell their story to the Council,

who can remember no quarrel with the Dukes of Luxembourg.

and that they shuld send hym word yf they held with the paynemes or nat / and vpon that he shuld take hys aduyes what he shuld doo / and also that magre them he shuld fynde good passage, but not so short as 4 by theire Cite. And when they of Coloyne understandstode this mandement, & were wel infourmed of the grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they were dredful & doubtous. And soone after they sent 8 toward Anthony foure of pe notablest & moost worshipful burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym ryght honourable and humble reuerence / and wondred moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenounce / not 12 that wythstanding, they said to hym in this manere:

‘right high & myghty prince, the Citezeyns and commynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good grace. And know ye pat gladly they shal suffre you 16 & al your oost to passe peasibly througli the Cite, soo that ye shal kepe & preserue them fro al dommage that your peple might bere vnto them.’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd Anthony, ‘yf I had be wylyng to doo the 20 contrary of theire wyH, they shuld haue had of me knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo, For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of ony thing, nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause 24 me to thynke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf they remembre not of old some mysdede don to them by myn auncyest, or of the Dukes, my predecessours, wherof as yet they be 1not pacyfied & accorded / 28 that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or ellys to sende me wordes therof.’ When they undersdde hys wordes & knew his wyH, they returned to the Cyte, & announced to the Commynalte the mande- 32 ment of the Duc Anthony. And they anone assembled theire counseyH, & the auncyent men / and found that neuer they had no hate ne dyscorde with the dukes of Lucembourgh, nother to theyre frendes 36
nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passo, and al his oost also. And they remanded to hym theire wylle with 4 grete yeftes of ryches that they made to be presented to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost moch of vyta\textsuperscript{H}, as bre\textsuperscript{k}, wyne, and fleshe / \& ootys for theire horses / And when the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere 8 & sawe theire grete yeftes, he thanked them mocho / and was joyous of that they of Coloyne wold be hys frendes. Wherfor he said to them, that yf they had nede of hym \& of hys powere, he was redy at theyre 12 commaundement / and they thanked hym ryght humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to them that had brought to hym the said presents of vyta\textsuperscript{H}, many ryche yeftes, that asmoch were worth, or 16 more than the presents \& yeftes gyuen to hym by the toune, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte shuld suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of them for nought.

I

nyght soiuerned the oost byfore Coloyne, \& was wel refresshed of them of the Cite \& of theire vyta\textsuperscript{H}. For as the dukes commaundement was / they were 24 departed in suche wyse that[e]t euery man there had part therof. And on the morne erly, \textsuperscript{1} the Duc entred into the Cite with hym, two houndred men of armes / and made his cryees, vpon peyne of deth, that none 28 were so hardy to take ony thing of them of the toun; but he payed wel for after raison. And soone after passed the vantgarde in fayre aray ouer the bridge, and so forth through the Cyte. And so passed al thooest, 32 and lodged them at the o\textsuperscript{p}er syde of the ryuere of Ryn / and it was about euentyme, or euuer al the Cartes, Charyots, \& bagage were past. And that nyght the Duc \& grete part of his baroanya lodged within the 36 Cyte, where as grete honour was doon to them. The

They agree to let Anthony and his host pass, and send him many gifts for himself and virtuals for his host.

When the duke understands their answer, he thanks them, and gives them as rich gifts and presents as had been sent to him.

The host remains opposite Cologne for the night.

In the morning the river is crossed, and the host marches through the city.

The duke and his barons stay all the night in the city.
duc Anthony bode at souer with hym all the ladies of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yeftes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be theire lord.

In the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the town / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuered all with one voyce: 'Noble Duc / 8 the Cite / we & all our goodes ben at your commandement more than to any other lord that marcheth about vs / and spare vs not of nothing that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shall euer be, redy to do you 12 playsure, ayde, & comfort at your manedement and first callyng' / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for 16 to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure knightes wel mounted on horsbak, & armed of all pyeces sauf the helmet, whiche alyghted byfore the duckes tente with foure hountred men of armes, and 20 C crosbowe men in theire felawship. These knightes made their obeyssance / and syn sayd in this manere: 'Right noble & puyssaunt duc, the Cite & commynalte of Coloyne recomande them to your good grace / 24 and where as pyn haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / 1desyryng right affectually to be frenedes & alyez vnto you, they send you foure hountred men of armes & an C crosbowes, al payed of theire 28 wages for tene monethis day, for to goo with you where so euer it playse you to goo.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'thankyng be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be refussed / 32 & wete it I shal not forgete it / but remembre in tyme & place.' 'Sire,' said one of the foure knightes, 'there nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it myster, we shal guyde & lede 36
you wel & surely thrughe al the passages & ouer al the ryueres betwix this & that. To that ansuerd the Duke & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre, 4 and I gaynsay not your sayeng, when tyme shalbe.'

Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued them vnnder his banere. And penne desloged the vantgarde, the grete batayH, & the ryregarde, and marched 8 on theire waye in fayre aray so long, that they entred in the land of Bavere, nygh to a grete Cite named Nuenmarghe, where as the Duc of Ode was with a grete companye of people, For he doubted the kyng 12 Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kyngo Federyke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite, For he had with hym foure score paynemes / and the Duc Ode was doubtous lest he shuld come vpon hym, 16 yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke. And therefore, he had assembled hys Councely to knowe & see what best was to doo. /

Thenne cam to the Cite an annecynt knyght that was of the Duc Ode, to whom he said after his obeyssaunce made: 'My lord, by my solowe I come from the marches of Almayne / but there is commyng a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of 24 armes and best arayed that ouer I sawe in my dayes / but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so moche I know, that they draw them self hitherward.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc, 'I gyue me grete wonder 28 what folke they may be, yf the king of Anssay had not be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh, I shuld suppose that it were he that wold socoure his brother Federyke ayenst the Sarasyns / and on my solwe yf it 32 were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.' 'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to have knowleche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they purpoe other wyse than wele.' 'Sire knyght,' said thanne 36 the Duc, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte
the certaynte of it, syn ye haue sene them' / And he ansuerde, 'By my feyth, my lord, I am redy therto.' And soone he departed, and so long he rode that he perceyued thoost in a valey by a ryuer. There he saw grete companyes of gentyl men here & there, some castynge the barre of yron / other held their spere & shild and esproued them self that one on pat other / some assayed their hearnes with shoot, with 8 strokes of swerdes, and in many other appertyse of armes they exercyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said the knight / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble contenauce of men of armes / suche folke is to be 12 doubted and drede.' Thenn he loked on the ryght syde vpon a lytel mountaynne & sawe the grete batayH, and sawe the watche and the scourers al about the oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knight that moche thing 16 had sene in his dayes / 'this ben 1 worthy men of werre and able to subdue ony lande.' And thenn he entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had the gouernaunce & guydyng of it / And soone he was 20 brought tofore Anthony. And when he saw the Duc he was moche abasshed of his facion / but always he salued hym ryght curtoysly / and syn said to hym, 'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to 24 wete of you what ye seeke in hys land / and ye thinke or purpose other wyse than wel / also what ye be that conduyteth so fayre company of people that I see here assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither 28 with suche a felawship without it be for som grete affayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'tell your lord that we ne demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to dommage his land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the 32 kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucembourgh, and Regnald his brother, with theire puy-saunce that supposen to goo reysse the siefe of praghe, that the Saraysns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thau- 36
cyent knyght, 'god graunte you good vyage.' And so he departed and retourned toward the Duc Ode of Bauyere, to whom he reherced as aboue is said, and shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and the contenawnce of his oost / sayeng' that they were folke to be redoubted & dreft. 'By my feyth,' said thewne the due Ode, 'It commeth of noble courage to

The knight returns, delivers his message, and describes the host.

The King thinks the brethren courageous, and resolves to go with them

and presents himself with his company to the King of Anssay and the brethren, against the paynims. 1 fol. 129.

He assembles four thousand men,

and scarmousshed ofte with his enemys / but almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete & stronge / and there were within the toune about a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyaunt

36 knyghtes & good men of wrre / the whiche yssued /

MELUSINE.
Early one morning the pagans assault the town.

Frederick drives them back to their camp;

but the king of Cracow comes with fifteen thousand Saracens,

and forces Frederick to retreat.

Frederick sees Zelodius, 1 fol. 129 b.

cuts his way up to him,

and smites him on his helmet.

Zelodius is succoured by his men;

and launches a dart at Frederick,

ofte & dide grete dommage to the sarasyns. It happed on a mornyng erly that the paynemes gaf a grete sawte to the town / and the king Federyke with his peuple yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmyssh-4 ing bygan grete & mortaH / and so manfully faught the kyng, that with the help of his men he gretly dommaged his enemyes / and made them to cesse of the sawte / & made them to goo back vnto their lodgys. 8

And that tyme was the kyng of Craco mounted vpon a grete hors, his banere to the wynd acompanyed with xv M! sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynance to the batayH. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued / 12 and by force of armes the kynge & his peple was constryaned to witdrawe hym back vnto the barrers.

There was grete occysyon made, For horryble strokes were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re-16 comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued 1kyng Zelodyus that sore dommaged his peple, he sporyd his horse and toke his swerð in his fyst / and 20 rane smytttyng on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde vpon his enemies tyl he made place, and came & smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strength & vertue that he made hym to enclyne vpon his hors neck 24 al astonyed / and lytel fayllid that he was not ouerthrown to the erthe, For he lost bothe the steropes / but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreece hym up ryght / and the king Federyk adreece hys 28 swerð vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym that he slew hym therwith. The kyng of Craco was thene redreece as said is / and he perceyuyng the kyng Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & castes 32 therthe al that he recounted of the sarasyns / had grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body 36
that the hede of it was sene at the back syde of hym.
That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of
deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but felt
& reuersed deed fro his hors to the ground. Thenne
was his peple full heuy and dolaunt, and withdrew
them self anoone, and reentred into the toune & shutted
the gates after them. And thenne byganne the sorowe
8 to be grete in the town al about.

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do
take the body of kynge Federyke that he
had slayn and commended it to be bren.

The king of Craco thenne glad & joyous for cause of
kyng Federykes deth, commanded the corps to be
brought before the gate, & there to be bret for to haue
abasshed the more pom of the Cite, seying theyre king
16 in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of
praghe knew the deth of their kynge / and the grete
tymynye of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in
especzial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorrow-
20 ful in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented,
that grete pyte it was to here & see / sayeng such or
semblable wordes : ' Ha / god ! who might comforthe me
when I see my faders deth before me, & the total dys-
24 comftyure of hys peple, & also the destruction of my
self, For I see no way wherby myght come ony socoure
vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vncl, the
kynge of Anssay, on whome I trusted more than to
28 aH 2other men in the world, hath be dyscomfyted
tofore Lucembourgh. Ha, veray god ! creatour of Cre-
tures, I ne wote other resuffle for me for to escape the
tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyful bosom
32 of your grace to hyd me therin. O ryght noble, ryght
puysaunt, & ryght excellent pryncesse! virgyne &
moder of god ! Marye, my.lady & maistresse / haue

which pierces
his body through
and through.
He falls to the
ground.
His people with-
drew to the town
and close their
gates.

The citizens of
Prague are sor-
rowfull for the
death of their
king.

His daughter,
the maid Eglan-
tyne, piteously
mourns her
father's death.

and calls on the
Virgin Mary.
A PROPOSAL TO CAPITULATE. [CH. XXXI.

Those who see her grief are full of pity.

The commonalty propose to yield,

but two true knights upbraid them,

and advise them to wait tidings from the King of Anssay:

and bid them trust in Christ.

The people are comforted, and refuse to yield,

whereto Zelodius is angry.

He sorely assaulds their city.

compassion on me! pourre orphenyn & faderles.' Certainly the pucelle Eglantyne bewayled, syghed, & complayned so piteously that no personne beheld her / but they were of pyte constrained to wepe how hark! that their herthes had be, For in her anguysshe & sorowe she made none ende, but euery she wept & rendre teeris habundauwtly. Theyme the commynaltee of the toune, sore agast and timerous, were in propos 8. & wylle for to yeld the toun & themself ouer to the kyng Z[el]odyus, hat made them to be requyred & admonnested\(^1\) therof / shewing to them how they myght not long endure nor withstand ayenst his grete puys-12 saunce / & that their CateH & goodes shuld be saued to them / but if he toke their Cyte byforce, he shuld make pem bothe their wyues & children to be brent al to asshis, as their kyngge was. Wherfore the eyte 16 henge in balayce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the Sarasyns. But emonge other were there two good men, true & auncyent knightes, that said in this manere: 'False people, what wyl you now doo, yet is 20 not the messager come agayn that rode toward the king of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort your self, For within short space of tyme ye shul here good tydynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that 24 Criste shal helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they herd hym so speke they were aH recomforted, & ansuerd to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld neuer yeld\(^2\) them ouer vnto the last 2mans lyf of aH 28 them. And whan the kyngge Zelodyus knewe their wyll, he was wood\(^2\) angry & sorrowful, & smare he goddes that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

The kyngge\(^3\) Zelodyus was mouyd to yre & grete 32 anger for thansuere of the commynalte of Pragh, wherfor he searmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes to their Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

\(^1\) Fr. faisoit remonstrer. \(^2\) kyngge of: MS.
were within defended it strongly. I wyll now retourne to speke of the Due anthony and of hys brother Regnauud, of the kynge of Anssay / and also of Ode, Due 4 of Bauyere, whiche conduyte theyre oost, & marched fourth hastily, For they had tydinges of the myserye that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew of the deth of king Federyke. And on a thursday at 8 euen, they lodged themself nygh to a grete ryuere, a leghe & a half fro the Cite of Praghe / and that same euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in theire felawship commanded that on the morn he 12 shuld announce theire commyng to them of the Cite / and he on the morn erly mounted on hys hors, and toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte was seaced for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel 16 posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone, and let hym entre the toun / and as soone as he was entred he rode softly along by the gardes, cryeng alowde in this manyere: 'Lordes, desende you wel, For hero 20 commeth the floure of knighthode to your socours & helpe with the kinge of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see them bygynne the bataylle / and be a good chere, For on my hed not one Sarasyn shal escape, but he be 24 dead or take.' And 1 whan they vnderstode hym, they bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was wonder to here sayeng: 'Lawde & thankinge be to god almighty perof.' And thenne they employed them self, 28 & defended so valiantly, that no sarasyn durst no lenger abyde nygh the waft a bowe shotte / & many paynemes were thenne slayne, in so moche that the dyches watre was as tourned & dyed with theyre blood. 32 And whan Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageous defense of them of the toune he was abasshed, & meruaylled moche of theire joyful contenauance. / Thenne whan Zelodyus perceyued that his folke 36 withdrew them self thus backward, he was
Zelodius is sorrowful that this assault has failed.

Anthony and his host approach.

They see the Saracens' camp.

Anthony calls a halt, and orders archers to his wings.

1 fol. 132.
The paynims perceive their coming, and tell Zelodius.

He is wroth, and commands his men to assemble in battle array.

Anthony's host advances against the paynims.

The air is full of arrows.

Christians and paynims fight manfully.

sorrowful & dolaunt, & had grete merueylle, why & wherfore they of the town were of so courageous defense more then in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soone after hys doleur & sorowe encreeced moch more, For 4 anthony approached in fayre aray. He, & Regnald hys brother, conduyted the first bataylle; and the kyng of Anssay, & his Cousin the duc of Bavyere, ledd the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre companye of 8 gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dys-played / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed fulH clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynemes assaylled, 12 & gaaf grete sawte / & sawe theire tents & puyllions, where were grete nombre of sarasyns. Theyne made Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryergarde were nygh to them / and ordynawed archers 16 & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys bataylle. and thence they were apperceyued, 1 and seen of the paynemes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kyng, sayeng in this manyere: 'Sire, leue the 20 sawte, that in an euyl heure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be commyng hitherward that all the fieldes be couered with.' Whan Zelodyus vnderstode these tydynges he was woost 24 wroth, & gretly abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retraye, & that euery man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere. he thenne ordyned his bataylles as he coude best. 28 And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned for to bygynne the bataylle / and they approched the paynemes, keping good ordynauce. Thence bygan the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / and syn the men of armes medled& togidre, and entred one vpon other, & valyauntly brake speres, & ouerthrew eche other as it happe. The Cristen faught courageous / and the paynemes withstode & susteyned theire 36
There was many sarasyn reversed to therth & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteuyns them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon their enemyes. But the king\'s Zelodyus putte his shield tofore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten; and aftr hym folowed xv Mt paynemes. Zelodius did grete merueyttte of armes, and ouerthrew many a Cristen to therthe, & gretly dommaged them. For his folke that followed at back syde of hym faught meruayllously. Thewne cried the kyng\'s Zelodius his baner: \‘Lords, barons, auauance, the journey isoure, And they of poytou receyued them mocfy hardy fly, and wete it wel that there was grete losse of peple of bothe partyes. Thenne came duc Anthony with the sword in his fyst / and when he perceyued his peple recule a lytel, nyght he deyed for sorowe / and cried: \‘Lusynen!\' with a high voys, and putte hym emong the sarasyns more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and ouerthrew all them that he recounted, and his peuple folowed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of his grete fayttes & valyautnes, For there ne was so hardy a sarasyn put durst hym abyde / but fledd & reculed vnto their tents. And this seyng: the king\' Zelodius, he cryed: \‘auauant, lords & barons, and defende\' you / how is that for one man alone that ye flee / it is to you grete shame.’ And aftr these wordes he retourned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poyteuyns. Thenne came thadmyral with ten thousand fighting men / and thenne enforced the batayl ryght horryble, For there were many of the sarasyns slayn and sore hurt.
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle.

Thenne came the ryerward that the kinge of Ans-say and the Duc Ode conduyted pat entred 4 vygourously into the batayH, where was grete occysyon, For the batayH was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that 8 there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he meruaylled of ye meruayllous strokes that they gaf. And in con-clusyou there was none so hardy a sarasyn that durst withstande them, For wher someuer they sawe them 12 they fledd, and so strongly fought the cristen / that the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng them self to flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valy'^auntly encouraged & reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide 16 grete dommage to the Crysten. But when Regnauld perceyued the king Zelodius, that rendred so grete a stoure & batayH mortaH to hys folke / he swere that he shuld dye or he shuld deluyere the place fro the 20 sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe beliynde and Regnauld spurs his horse against him. 

Zelodius hurts him in the thigh,

but Regnauld hits him back,

1 fol. 133. The rearguard, under the King of Ans-say, comes up and fights vigorously.

Anthony and Regnauld give marvellous strokes, and wherever they are they cause the Sar- cens to run.

2 fol. 133 b. Zelodius en-courages his folk, and does great damage.

Regnauld fights Zelodius.
And fourthwth was the prees grete aboute hym bothe of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And when the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And the cristen peple pursiwe them manfully and slough them bothe in feld & in wodes. And wete it wel that there escaped but few, and thus was the batayH fynyshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern / the king of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with 12 a C. 1knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so grete Joye of the vyctorye that they had wonne upon the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at 16 the palays ryaH. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne and recounted her uncle the king of Anssay and all his barons.

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius & the other saraeyns were brent and bruyled.

The pucelle Eglantyne was thenne joyfulH & glad for the dyscomfyture of the paynemes and also of the commyng of her uncle. But not withstanding she had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth, that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, when she cam byfore her uncle she enclyned & honourably made to hym her obeyssaunce, sayeng: 'My right dere uncle, ye be right welcomme / playsed god that ye were arryued two 2dayes rather, For thenne ye had found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne & made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytopere & shame of the Catholycal feyth.' And when the kynge of Anssay vnderstod it he was wroth & dolaunt, and swore that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the
to treat the Saracens the same way.

The King of Anssay is woful for his brother's death.

He has the cathedral prepared for his brother's obsequies;

and goes toward the Saracens camp,

where the brethren were dividing the spoil.

kyng Zelodius and of all the sarasyns, that he coude fynde decr or alyue. And anoon were cryees made through the town, that of every hous one man shuld goo in to the field for to assemble the deed bodyes of the 4 sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men shuld bryng thither worke ynough for to brule & brene the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen above 8 al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and so they were al brent & bruled / and all the deed bodyes of the cristen men that were found were buryed there as cristen people ought to be. And these thinges 12 doon, the kyng of Anssay made al thing to be rety for to make thobbley of the king his brother, and that moche honourably as it is shewed herafter. /

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that wooful & sory 16 was the kyng of Anssay for the deth of his brother / but syth it pleased god to be so he lefte & passed his deuel the best wyse that he coude. Thappareyl was the same made for the obsequye whiche was 20 don in the Chirche Cathedrall of the Cite. And syn the kyng of Anssay and the duc of bauyere mounted on horsback and many barons of behayne with them, and al clothed in black went toward the sarasyns tente, 24 where the two bretheren were whiche had do comé per all the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And syn departed amonge theire people all that they had wonne vpon the paynemés /. Thenne arryued there 28 the kyng of Anssay, the duc Ode, and all the baronnye and nobly salued the two brethern, And the duc Anthony, & Regnauld hys brother recyued them joyfully. Thenne recounted the kyng of Anssay to be 32 two bretheren how the kyng of ederyk was slayn in the baytayH, and how Zelodyus had made hys body to be brent in despyt of all cristianye / and therfore he had doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of all the sarasyns 36
that were founde alyue or deed. And Anthoney þenne answered, 'On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and veryly kyng Zelodius mysdede ouermoch grete cruelte, 4 For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy to touche hym ony more.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the duc of Bauyere, 'ye say trouth, but the kinge of Anssay is come hither to you for to besech ye & your brother to come to the obsequye of the kyng Federyko his brother.' And thenn answered the bretherne, 'we shal thither goo gladly.' Thenne they mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, where 12 as the ladyes and damoyselles, knightes & squyres / cytyzeyns & commynalte beheld them fayne and mer- nuyllled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in Anthonyes cheke / and preysed moche his fayre & wel 16 shappen body, and also of Regnauld hys brother / and said emong themself, 'these two bretheren ben able for to subdue al the world.' And thus they came to the churche where thobsequye shuld be made and there 20 alyghted.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kyng Federyyk of behayne.

24 Eglantine that was in the Cirche came and rec- counted the two bretheren, whom she made humbly her obeyssauce, thankynge them mekely of their noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had 28 saued her honour, her lyf, and her land. And thenn anthony answered humbly to her, sayeng, 'Damoyselle, 2 We haue nought doo but that we ought to doo, For euery good cristen is hold & bound aftir the playsire 32 of god toppresse & dystroye thenemyes of God.' The pucelle was there nobly aconpanyed of the ladyes & damoyselles of the land, thobsequye was honourably &
n nobly doon as it apparteyned to suche a noble kyng as he was. And after the seruyse fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire meyne also, and conveyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the 4 paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the halle where the tables were redy covered / and theme they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd & festyed / and after dyner the tables 8 were voyded & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn sey conveyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, that was erer sorowful for her faders deth. And peane the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the baronnye of the land, & 12 said to them in this manyere:

L ordes, barons, ye muste CousenyH emong you, & take your best aduys how ye myght haue a valiaunt man for to gouern the royaume, For the land is 16 which is in the guydyng & gouernaunce of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke thenne what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for pe common wele of this land. Thenne answered 20 one for them alle & sayd: ‘Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royalme of Eehayne shuld appar- 24 teyne to you. Wherfor we al bes[e]che you that therto ye puruey after your playsire.’ Thenne answered the king, & thus said: ‘Sire, as touching my persone, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protector 28 of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynough to entretayne myn estate with / but in conclusyon let me my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shal deffende the land ayenst the enemies of god.’ Thenne answered the barons fourthe with, ‘Sire, yf it pleaise you pat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & oure, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withaH.’ Thenne 36
answerrd the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal pursuyde therto to her honour & prouffyt & to yours also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for this cause.' The kyng thenne departed and came in to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche humbly recyued hym. And the kyng said to her in this manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyng to god your affayres be now in good party, For your land is deluyed fro the paynemes by the puyssaunce of god & of the two brethren of Lusynen. Now it must be aduyed & sene how best your reasone may be guyded in good gournaunce to your prouffyt & honour, and of your people also.' Thenne answerrd the mayden, 'My right dere vnkle, I ne haue noon of Councye & comfort but you / so I requyre you that of good remedye ye pur-ueyde therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I obey you more than any other personne in the world, & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kyng pite on her & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alreyd purueyed therto / ye muste be maryed to suche a man that can kepe and deffende you & your land aynst alle enemyes, the which is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, & not ferre hens.' 'Certaynly,' answerrd the pucelle. 'Dere vnkle, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold neuer Councye me pat thing but it were to my grete honour & prouffit, and for the commyn wele of all my land / but ryght dere vncle, I to be maryed so soone after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblant of ducye for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre semblant byfore me, that wold moke me at a pryvy place /.'

To that answerrd the king, & said: 'My right fayre Cousyn, of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

2 Fr. qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.
He would like to wait to be at her wedding, but he lives afar off.

Then the brethren must be rewarded, but half of her kingdom would not be sufficient for this, and she is not worthy to have Regnauld as her lord.

Then the maid was ashamed, and told her uncle to do with her and her kingdom as he thought best.

The King bids her cease weeping.

He goes to the brethren, Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng it were your honour / but what, fayre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens / and here I may not make long soiourne, without my grete dommage, as wel of other mens goodes as of myn. Also the two brethren must be recompensed & rewarded of theire noble socours, outre of my goodes or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to hauo 8 more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raison of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you; the half of your royame shuld not suffice. And ouer 12 more, fayre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffysaunt for to haue suche & so noble a man to your lord as is Regnauld of Lusynen, For in certayn he is wel worthy to maryl ye grestest lady in the world. What 16 for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble prowesse.' Whan the noble pucelle Eglantyne vnderstode the kyng her uncle, she was shamfuH & hontous / and on that other part, she consyderynge the daunger 20 where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wyster what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last she ansuered in this manere: 'right dere vncele, all my trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor 24 doo with me & with my reaume what it playse you' / 'Fayre Cousyn,' said the kyng, 'ye say right wel / and I sware you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best. 28 Now thence, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng; & delynere you of this affayre, For the more longe that these baronye with theire peple that be in nombre xv. M. be soiournynge in your land the grete dommage 32 shal ye hauo.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth, ansuered to hym in this manere: 'Dere vncele, doo ther-of al your playsyre.' Thenne came the kyng in to the grete halle where the two brethren were, & the 36
baronye with them, and said to Anthony in this manye: ‘noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my words, the barons of this land that be here present, besechi your good grace / & as touching my self, I hertlyly praye you that it plese you, that Regnauld your brother be king of this royalle, and that he take Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayenge hym that he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land desire hym moche to be there lord.’ ‘Sire,’ answerd anthony, ‘this requeste is worthy to be graunted, & also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble da'moy-selle.’ And fourthwith the kynge & the Duc Ode yede & fette the pucelle, and despoyled her of her dueyl & black clothing / and syn was arayed ful rychely of her noblest raymentes, and accompanied with her ladyes & damoyselles, she was conueyed by the forsaid lorde into the presence of the noble brethren, whiche merueylled moche of her grete beaute / and she humbly enclyned byfore them, mak-yng her obeyssaunce. Thenne bygan the king of Ansay to speke, & thus said /

Noble Duc of Lucembourgh, hold ye to vs your couenauentes; this is wherof we wyl hold oure promesse.’ ‘For sooth,’ said Anthony, ‘it is wel reason. come hither Regnauld brother, receuue this pucelle to your lady, For she maketh you kyng of behayne.’ Thenne said Regnauld, in heryng of alle that were thare present / ‘thankyng be to god, to the kynge, & to all the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour that they doo to me. For yf thys noble pucelle had not one foot of land, yet wold I not refuse her lone to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god requyren. For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquere ynough to hold & entreteyne therwith her noble estate’ / ‘Fayre brother,’ said penne anthony / ‘ye say raison / this royaume ye haue wonne alredy / god yeue and asks Anthony to make his brother marry Eglantine and rule her Kingdom. Anthony agrees. 1 fol. 153.

The maid, richly arrayed, is brought before the lords and the two brethren.

The King asks Anthony to keep his promise.

Anthony calls on Regnauld to take the maid to wife.

Regnauld accepts her for her merits, not for her lands, and says he hopes to conquer still more.
Anthony hopes that he will. The bishop comes and af-
fiances Regnauld and Eglantine; after that the feast is great, and the towns-
folk make much joy.

[1 MS. the the]

Many riche rayments & robes were made what for the spouse / as for the ladyes & damoysselles. That nyght passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed & ledd vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of gold / And that night was good watche made as be enemyes had be nygh to them / and there the feste encressed, & were honourably seruyd at souper. And whan tyme was, euery one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when Aurora shone clere. /

Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne. /

Here sheweth thisorye, & sayth that when the day spryng appiered, & the day was ful fayre & clere, the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth of gold, & fourrede with Ermynes, & purfylled aH with precious stones, accompanied with grete nombre of ladyes & damoysselles, was right honourably conueyed vnto the place where as the masse shuld be sayd; and solemnly the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir the masse, she returned to the puyyllon with al the noble baronye with her, where they fonde al apparyllled & redy to dyner. They were ful wel & nobly seruyd of al thinges that to suche a feste be requysite & con-
uenable. And after they had dy ned, graces were said, & wesshe their handes, and syn were the tables voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete joye. / 

Cap. XXXVI. How the kni ghtes & esquy ers jousted after dyner.

The storye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the ladyes & damoyselles mounted vpon the seafoldes. Thenne cam the kni ghtes rychely armed, & bygan to jouste / trompettes sowned, & kni ghtes reuersed eche other / but none might wi thstand the noble bretheren, but he was overthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no man dide there nought to the regard of their prowess. Wherfore, they seyn that the joustes affetysshid for cause of them, they departed fro the lystes & toke of their armeures / and syn duredd the jousting tyl tyme of souper came. And thenne the joustes seaced, and the kni ghtes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed them. Thenne mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments of musique sowned & played melodiously the first cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of al maner wynes / and after souper they daunced. But whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnauld there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thenne voyded euery one the cham bre / some to their rest / some returned to the daunce / some sang, & other made grete reu eyH. Regnauld, thenne that laye nigh Eglantyne, swetly embraced & kyssed her / and she to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere : 'My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your curtovsye & prowes, this poure orphelym had bee / no doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherfor, my ryght redoubted lord, I yeld thankyng to god, & to you also
that haue dayned to take to your wyf her that was vnworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnauld, 'dere herte, & my best beloved, ye haue do moche more for me than euer I dide ne possible is to me to doo for you / sene & consydered the noble yefte youen by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde that of your noble royame ye haue endowed me / and with me nought ye haue take / sauf only my symple 8 body.' Thenne anserued Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha / noble lord, your valyaunt body is derer to me & bettre worth than ten other suche royames as myn is / & more it is to be preysed.' Of theire wordes 1 wyl 12 seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme after- ward grete faytte of armes, and subdued & gate al the low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreyght, & the 16 Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of North- wegte also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere. Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne ledd to here the masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoysselles, accom- panyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo, they returned to the ryche paullon / and as they were redy to sette pem at dyner / came there two knightis fro Lucemboourgh, that brought lettres to Duc Anthony 24 from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after theire obeyssaunce honourably made, said to hym in this wise: 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye / For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most 23 fayrest sone that euer was seen in no land.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the lettres.

T

historye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucem 32 bourgh, was joyful & glad of these tydymges, and so was his brother Regnauld. Thenne opened he the lettres, wherof the tenour was acording to that the knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of 36
them, gyuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured the feest eyght days, sumptuouse & open houshold. 4 And whan the feste was fynysshed, they reentred in to the Cite with gret honour & joye. And on the morn next the kyng of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, & al theire baronye toke theire leue of 1Regnaulde & of 8 Eglantyne, whiche were dolaunt of their departing. And anthony made coënaunt with Regnaulde his brother, that yf the paynemes made ony moo werre with hym, he shuld come & aff his baronye with hym 12 to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng Regnauld thanked hym moch. And echo of them thanked & kyssed eche other at departynge / Soo long marched thost pat they came to Mouchyne2 in Bauyere / & lodged them in a 16 fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode festyed them right honourably the space of three dayes / and on the foureth day they departed & toke theire leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long tyl [they]3 20 came a day journey nygh to Coloyn. And there the foure knightes that conduyted the Coloyners auanued them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this manere: ‘My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore 24 you toward the toun, to apparyH & make al thing redy for your passage.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the Duc Anthonye, ‘that playseth me wel.’ Thenne departed the foure knightes & theire men with them, & rode 28 tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyn, where they were receyued with Joye / and the Cytezeyns & gouernours of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted in theire vyage / And they recounted to them all the 32 trouth of the fayte and the valyauntines & noble proves of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng [of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyn 4understode them they were ryght glad & joyous, sayeng they 2 Fr. Muchin. 3 MS. has day. 4 fol. 141. The Cologners are glad
 Numerous lords were well pleased with the friendship of two noble lords. Anthony and the king arrive at Cologne. They are nobly feasted, and promise the townspeople their succour if it should be wanted. Anthony arrives near Luxembourg. Christine is joyful at her lord's return. The ducesse Cristyne was replenished with joy, when she knew the comming of her lord Anthony and immediately she, nobly accompanied, issued out of the town and all the noble cyteseyns followed her to meet with their lord, the which they recounted a half a mile from the town. What shall I say: greater joy was never seen than that was made for the returne of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her obeysaunce vnto hym and hertely welcomed hym. The people cried on hye for joye, sayeng thus: 'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was grete throug the town where the Duc festyed the kyngye of Assay by the space of six dayes contynuelling, and for gaf & rendred to hym aH his obligacions, and held hym quytte / except the Foundacion of the pryore, where as sowles shuld be prayed for / for the loue of Regnauld Anthony Arrives Home.
his brother. And the kinge of Assay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Assay, where as he was receyued with joye / And the 4 Duc anthony abode with the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward delyuered the Countrey of Ardane fro thevys, murderers, & robbeurs; and in the 8 wodes there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it with grete possessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryuere of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland / 12 and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes with the king Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kynge Regnauld. It happed not long after the kynge of Assay was retourned in to his royame, that warre meuyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerbourgh. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes 20 the Erle of Fyerbourgh / and syn pas'sed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batayH, and made hym to be pacyfyed with the kynge of Assay, to the grete proufyt & honour of the kinge. And bertrand 24 theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured with Melydee the sayd kynge of Assays daughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kynge of assay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourgh, after 28 the decease of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this mater I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyn, and of theire other children. / 

32 N ow sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn by hys noblenes & grete vasselage conquerd grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayne. And Melusyne had two yere after 36 that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that
who became a monk, and Theoderick.

Geffray with the Great Tooth was the most enterprising of all his brethren. 1 fol. 142 b.

He hears tidings that the people of Garande will not pay his father their tribute.

He goes to Garande against his father's will.

Raymondin's partizans there offer to help Geffray.

He thanks them, but declines their aid.

They tell him his enemies are very powerful.

entierly louyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende. For he was professi<e>l monke in to thabbeye of Maillezes, wherof there be<e>H a grete & an horryble myschief, as ye shal here hereafter by thystorye / and 4 the other child that they had the yere folowyn<e> was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght batayll<ous>. Here I shal leue to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete tothi, that 8 was yrous & hardy / & most enterpyrse diode of aH hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thystorye 1sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he fought ayenst a knight, that was 12 gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here hereafter. It is trouth that them<e> Geffray was grete & ouergrown / and herde tydynes that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to 16 hys fader / them<e> sware Geffray by the good lord that he shuld make them to come as reason requyreh, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyn<g> / and had with hym to the 20 nombre of fyue hounded men of armes, and a hounded balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enquir<<ed> after them that were dysobedyen<<t> / and they that held the party of Raymondyn shewed hym the 24 Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemies. 'By my feyth, fayre lordes,' sayd Geffray with the grete tooth / 'ye are ryght true & loyal peuple / & I thanke you of 28 thonour that ye profire me / but as for this tyme pre<sent> I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for taccomplyssah myn enterpyrse.' 'For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your 32 enemyes ben ryght strong & of meruayllous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood of al the Countree.' 'Fayre sires,' said Geffray, 'doubte you not, For thrughe thayde of god 36
omnipotent I shall the mater 1 wel redresse. And wete
it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shall make
them to obeye my commandement or to deye of an euyl
4 deth. And also, sayre lorde & true frendes, yf I nede
you I shal sende for you 1 / And they ansuered, 'we are
now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it
playse you vs to calle.' 'Fayre lorde,' said Geffray with
8 the grete toth / 'that ought to be thanked for.' Themale
toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his
way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within
the same was one of the enemies of geffray that hight
12 Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were
the thre brethren yrours & proud & wolde haue sub-
dued and putte vnder their subjection all their neygh-
bours. Themale sent geffray with the grete tooth wordes
16 of deffyanuce / outhre to come & make their obeys-
sauence to hym for Raymoundin his faders. And they
ansuered to the messager, 'that for Raymoundyn ner for
no man on his byhalf they shuld nought doo / and that
20 he shuld no more retouerne to them for this materre, for
than he were a fole.' 'By my feyth,' said the mes-
sager, 'I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng
with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make suche
24 a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonne<
& syn hanged by the neck.' And of these wordes were
the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that
28 yf the messager had not hasted his hors away he had
be take & deed without ony remedye, For 2 they were
fulH yrours & crueH, and doubted not god nor no man
lyuyng! Themale retourned the messager toward geffray
and recounted hym the grete pryde & auautnyng of the
32 bretheren. 'By my heed,' said Geffray with the grete
toeth, 'a lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wyndt / & doubte
you not but I shal pay them wel there wages.'

Thystorye sayth, that when geffray vnderstode the
36 grete pryde & the fol ansuere of the thre brethern,
without any more words he came & lodged hym & his peuple half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne toke he his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / mounted on horseback / commanded his men that they shuld not meue them thens vnto tyme they had word of hym, & departed with hys squyer / but there was a knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & 8 that he doubted nothing of the world / which toke x. men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, foloyng hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray rode so longe that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon 12 a hye roche. 'By my feyth,' said thenne geffray, 'ye the Fortresse be so strong at that other syde as it is at this syde, hit shal gyue me moche peyne or euere it be take, I must see & know ye it be also strong at that 16 other parte.' Thenne he & his squyer aduyronned the Fortresse about, al along by a lytel wod, that they might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & descended in a vally / and euere the forsaied knyght that 20 was named Philibert folowed hym a ferre / and so long rode geffray thay had euere sene the said fortres al round about / and hym semed wel that it might be take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of 24 it / Thenne entred geffray & hys squyer in a lytel path, & retourne vpon the mountayne toward hys lodgis, where his peple were hym abydyng. Philebert, that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he would lete hym 28 passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his fellowship recueld within the wode, to thende thay shuld not be perceyued of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men of warre comynge that same way that geffray came toward the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiii persone wel armed. Wherfore the said knyght philibert was abasshed & agast, lest thay shuld mete with

2 Fr. Ver. Philibert de Mommoret.
geffray. For wel he wyst that geffray wolde fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here herafter. / In this partye, saythe thisyorye, that vpon the topp of the mountayne geffray recounted the said companye, And who that shuld enquere of me what folke they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that came toward his brother at his mande-

8. And were it wel, that the way was there so narow that vnneneth one hors myght passe by other. And when Geffray with the grete tooth recounted them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he shuld tary and make his company to stand asyde tyl he were passed the mountayne. 'By my feth,' said he pat was proude & orgueyllous, 'Sire daw folke,' wel we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we retourne vs for you.' 'By god,' said Geffray with the grete toth / 'that shal ye knowe anone, For I shal make you retourne ayenst your wyH. I am Geffray of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to 20 retourne by force.' Whan Guyon the brother of Claude of Syon understode hym & knew that it was geffray with the grete tooth / he cryed to his folk, 'aauaunt, lordes barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to 24 vs / in an euyl heure is he come in tooure land for to demande seruyltyde of vs.' Thenne when geffray understode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote the nethermost of alle vpon his hed, so grete a stroke 28 that he ouerthrew hym all astonyed doun to the erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym that laye along the way, in suche wyse that he al to brusid the body of hym / And thenne geffray atteyned 32 another in the brest foynyng with hys sword, so that he feH doun toed to therthe / and syn cryed aftir the opere, 'False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal retourne to your euyl helthe.' Thenne he passed fourth

2 Fr. damp musart.
He cuts open the head of a third.

Gyion is wroth because he cannot get at Geffray.

He commands his men to retreat.

They flee to a field.

Geffray pursues them.

Geffray's men set on Geffray on all sides.

He and his squire fight bravely.

to the iii\textsuperscript{de}, which was grete & strong, 1 & smote Geffray upon the helmet with all his strength, but the helmet was hard & his sword glanced aside & dommaged hym nought, but Geffray take his sword with two 4 handes and smote hym upon the coyffe of stele vnto the brayne, & reversed hym deed to the earth. And whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode wroth & full of yre, For he might not come to geffray, & wherfore he commanded euery man to retourn, that they might haue them self at large to defende eche other. Thenne euery man tourned back & fledd, & yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn fielde, And 12 geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the sword in his hand. Now shall I speke of the knight philibert, which was approched nygh the said way, and herde the noyse / so he called to hym his felawes. 16 And thenne guyon and his men were in pe playn & assaylled geffray on al sydes of hym / but as preu & valyaunt he defended vygorously his fleshe / and also his esquyer bare hym valyauntly / and was ryght 20 strong the batayll. Now most I speke of hym which geffray first ouerthrew to therthe in the path forsai, For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourned by the force of geffray / and sawe his two felawes lyeng 24 deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, and beheld 2 all about hym & fond his hors, wher on he with grete peyne mounted, for he was al to brusyd in hys body, & hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan 28 he came to the fortresse he fond Claude at yate and some of his men with hym / the whiche perceyued that he that was comyng toward hym was al bloody and knew hym wel / & of hym demanded who so had 32 arayed hym / And he recounted that adventure how they had recounted geffray, and how he adommaged them and had made guyon hys brother to retourn fro the narow lane by force, & that yet lasted theyre batayll. 36
Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorrowful
& angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men
to be armed?

4 Moche dolaunt was Claude whan he vnderstood
the vylonne & dommage that Geoffroy had don
to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were fyghtyng
togidre / & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode
8 thitherward / and were in nombre thre score bassynets.
But for nought he toke his waye, For philibert with
his ten knyghtes were come to the batayH, & faught in
suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he
12 take / and soone swarre Geffray that he shuld make
hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said
esquier, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land,
to fette a fayre swerd, that he tofore sawe fall fro one
16 of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere,
'My lord, I haue herewith grete bru vt of men armed
commynly' hitherward.' And whan Geffray vnderstode
hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound at a tree
20 within the woode hygh by them, & syn retourned with
hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde
there his aventure. And philibert rode vnto the top
of the hyH, and perceyued Claude & hys felawship
24 that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his
felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can
doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here côme your ene-
myes.' And Geffray with the grete teeth ansuerd:/
25 'doubte you not / but it shal be wel kept & desfeunted.'
Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come
with hym, & said: 'Renne hastily towards thooest, &
make my folke to côme the hither.' And he anone de-
32 parted toward thooest, and whan he was there arruyed
he said to hym, 'Fayre lorde, now lightly on horsback,
For geffray fyghteth ayenst his enemyes.' And they
armed them & soone mounted on theire horses, and
36 hasted them to folowe the squyer that guyded them

Claud orders his men to arm,

He rides to aid his brother,

as the men are slain and his brother is Geffray's prisoner.

A knight tells

Geffray that

more men of

arms are ap-

proaching.

Fol. 146,

Gulon is bound
to a tree.

Geffray and his

company return
to the path to

wait the arrival

of Claud.

Geffray sends a

messenger to his

host.

His lords laste
the nearest way there he supposed to fynde. Geffray, fighting with his enemies.

The story sayth that Geffray, Philibert, & their knights were at thentre of the path / and then came Claude & his men with grete puysaunce along thrugh the lane, & wel they supposed to have mounted the mountayne. But Geffray was at thentre of the path that vygourously & valyauntly defended the passage / and wete it wel there was none so hardy but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended fro their horses, & stode at eyther syde of geffray, & proudly rebuckyd Claudes 12 men with their spere, & many of them were there slayne. Philibert was thenne descended from his hors, and thre othere of his companye, and recovered the montayne aboue the pathe, where as they gadred 16 stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, thrugh suche yre & grete strength, that there was none so strong as bassynets nor armure but it was perced; and therwith they were astonyed or elles ouerthawen / and wete it wel pat there were more than xxth slayn. Thenne came there the squyer with the batayll that he brought. And when geffray knew it, he commanded thre houndred men of armes, that they shuld 24 draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retowrne to theire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his companye departed, & came hastily to fore the medowe, 28 & passed byfore the Fortresse. And wenne Clerevauld, the iii brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land shuld haue be so many enemies. 32 The whiche esquyer with his companye came with amyable contenaunce, shewyng no semblaut but as frendes. And thenne Clerevauld, that byleued wel that they were theyre frendes lete falt the bridge, & opened the 36
yate where he stode with xx\textsuperscript{ii}. men of armes. And when the squire & his company perceyued that the bridge was doun & the gate open, they drew them hastily in the way to passe the Fortres. And passyng by the Fortresse, Clervauld demanded what they were / and they answerd: *We be frendes,* and in approach- ing of the said\textsuperscript{e} bridge to the nombre xx\textsuperscript{ii} knights, they 8 enquyred after Claude of Syon: *For sayn we wold speke with hym.* And Cleruauld them approached, sayeng: *he shal retouerne anoone, For he is departed to fyght with Geffray with the grete toeth our enemye, 12 that he & Guyon our brother haue enclosed in yonder mountayne that is there before you / and wete it wel that Geffray may not escape them, though he were tempred with fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne 16 or take.* *By my feyth,* sayd the squire, *this be good tydrynges.* An thenne he approached with his xx\textsuperscript{ii} knightes nerer & nerer, askyng hym where shal we goo to helpe hym. *By my feyth,* sayd Cler- 20 uauld, *gramercys it shal not nede at this tyme.*

Thystorye sheweth that the squire approached to Cleruauld so nygh by his fayre wordes, that he & hys company came vpon the bridge / & thenne he 24 cryed to hys peple / *auaunt, lordes, the fortresse is oure.* And when Cleruauld herd these wordes, he supposed to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge / but the squire & his people came so rudly that it was not in theire powere to haunce the bridge / but bare it doun by force, and anone alighted & entred in at the gate / and with two speres vnderset the portecollys / & immedyatly descended more than an houn- 32 dred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into the Fortres. Thenne was clereuauld\textsuperscript{e} take, and al hys peple that were there with hym, & brought vnto a chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept 36 with fourty men of armes / *And after this don, they

He allows them to come near the fortress.

Clervald asks who they are; \textsuperscript{1} fol. 147. "We be friends," they answer.

The squire and his company by fair words get on the bridge. He then cries, *'The fortress is ours.'*

Clervald tries to pull up the bridge, but is too late.

He and his men are taken prisoners.

\textsuperscript{2} fol. 147 \textsuperscript{b}.
assembled them, & toke Counsey how they might best send word vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them with in the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retorne / And thenne 4 said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue Geffray knowlege of this aventure. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed all the trouth of the faytte / and when geffray knew 8 thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a hounded men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anoone in to the countrie, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none oper way, but 12 the way to the Fortresse; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bettre it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym. ‘Sire,’ said the new knight, ‘doubte you not he 16 shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.’ Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne with hys men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily fought with 20 his swerde vpon his enemyes. And wel fourty knyghtes were alighted on foot vpon pe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & hys peuple was constrainyd to retorne / And 24 Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced hem / but vnnethe he might passe to pursiew men for deed men that were slayn with castynge of stones. Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was com- 28 myng at the other lanes ende with his company / but when he herd the bruft of the horses / he thought wel that 1 Claude retourned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward 32 the Fortresse.

Thystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to saue hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the folc 35
thinketh of tymes commeth to foly. It is veryn trouth
that he spede hym so fast that he was out of the lane
& came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for
one nor for other / but came walapyng toward the
Fortresse. And when he was nygh, he cryed with a
high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and
thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted
8 afore that he percyued that he had lost the Fortresse / 
and fourthwith he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemies.
Thenne was he gretly abasshed ; For he sawe not about
hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this?
12 where are my men become? ' 'By my feyth,' said a
knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge
with them' / And so immedyatly he was brought to
the chambr e where Clereuauld, his brother & his people
16 were in pryson. Thenne when he percyued them bound
& kept as they were, he was ryght dolant. And when
Clereuauld sawe hym, he said: 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre
brother, we are falt by your pryde into grete captiuite /
20 and doubto it not we shal neuer escape from hens with-
out losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And
Claude ansuerd hym: 'We muste abyde al that therof
shal falt.' Thenne came Geffray ryght foorth to the
24 Fortresse, & had slayn or take al that the residu of Claudes
peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought
with hym, & putte prysonner in the said pryson where
as Geffray entred / and emong al oper said to Claude:
28 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so
hardy to hurte or dommage my faders Countr & his
people, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the
feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punysshe the, in
32 exemple of al other, For I shal doo the hang' byfore
Valbruyant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Gueryn,
that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.'
And whan Claude herd that gretyst, wete it wel / he
36 was not therewith played. But whan the peple of the
The people of the land were glad that Claude and his people were taken or slain;

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

Geoffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claude, but spares his two brothers. Geoffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight,

and departs to Valbruyant.

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claude and his brothers, and orders them of the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrayn to have counsel.

Country knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethren were take & there peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other eyyl caas vpon Claude & vpon his peuple, & within that same Fortresse 4 were fouunde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Country, as marchants & strangers that were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnspoyled. And 8 when geffray herd of this tydynes, he made to be sette vpon the syde of the hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethen he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the 12 Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Country that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym to vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed hym so to doo, For he gouerned the coutrye wel & rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the the brethen with hym, the whiche had grete fere of 20 deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here herafter.

Thystory sayth that geffray & his peuple rode tyl they cam tofore Valbruyant / wher as tentes were dressed & sett vp, and evry man lodged in ordre. Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incon- tynent Claude & his two brethren / and sent worde to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd these tydynes, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouthe, madame, that ageynst this strong dyueH I ne may withstand ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe & goo vnto mountfrayn to Gueran my neveu, & to other my frendes for to haue CounseyH how we may haue 36
traytys of pais with Geffray.' And thenne the wyf that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / 'go forth / by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn tyl ye haue tydynges fro me, For by thayde of god I hoop that I shal purchase a good traytye with geffray for you; For had ye don after my CounseyH, & byleued me, ye shuld not 'haue meddled with the werkes of Claude & of his brethren / not with standing yet haue ye no falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Ray- mondyn of Lusynen.' Thenne Gueryn her said: 'My dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl byleue aH that ye may counsaylle.' And thenne departhe he by a pryvy posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the courns of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fery lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his 20 wytt / & thanked god moche when he fonde the theatre of the Forest pat dured well two leghes / and toke the way toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.

Thystersy testyfeyth, that so long rode Gueryn that he came to mountfrayn, where he found Guerard hys neew, & recounted to hym al these werkes; and how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude theire Cousyn & his two brethren, & brought tofore Valbruyaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and how he was departeth thens, doubtyng to be take with- in the Fortresse. 'By my feyth,' said Guerard, 'Fayre vncle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men spoke of Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of hye & puyssaunt enterprypse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be doubted. Woe is to me that euer we went to Claude! For wel we knew that he & hys brethren were of euyl governement, & that none passed foreby theire For-

His wife tells him not to leave there till she sends him tidings;

she declares she will make a treaty with Geffray.

1 fol. 149 b.

Guerin tells her to do her best, and leaves on a swift horse by a pryvy door.

He rides fast, as he fears to be seen.

Tells Gerrard the news, how Geffray has hanged Claud and his two brethren, and how he had fled to escape capture.

Gerrard says he has acted wisely, and is sorry they had had to do with Claud, because Claud and his brethren were of evil con-duct.
tresse vnrobbed. Now pray \(^1\) We god, that he preserueth bothe our lyues & honour in this affayre. Fayre vnclle, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lette hauve knowledge to our parents & frendes \(^4\) perof, pat haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryn answerd: 'that is truth.' Thenne they sent wordes to theyre frendes that they shuld al come to mountfrayn, so that they might hauve Counsell togidre 8 vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escuse them toward geffray. Now resteth thystery of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruyant that was moche subtyl & sage / and she euer blamed her lord of that he \(^12\) had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a daughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & graeuous; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctrnyed. And theune 16 this lady as she had of nothing\(^1\) be abasshed\(^2\) mounted upon a palfray rychely arrayed, & diye do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auncyent gentylmen to conduyte their horses / and 20 acompanied with six damoyselles, dide open the gate where she fonde the new knight that brought the manement of geffray, which she receyued benyngly, and he that coude moche of honour made to her the 24 reuerence / and the lady seyd to hym temperatly: 'Sire knight, my lord is not within / and therfore I wyl go myself toward my lord your maister to knowe \(^3\)what is his playsr, For it semeth me that he is come hither 28 to make werre / but I byleue not that it is for my lord nor for none within this fortresse. For god defende that my lord or ony of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and 32 by adventure ye some of his synester frendes hauve in-formed geffray otherwyse than raison, I wold humbly beseeche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

\(^1\) Fr. Adono la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbahie.
said lord & husband in his escuses & defenses / and thesame whan the knight herd her spoke so sageously / her ansuerde: 'Madame, this requeste is reasonable, 4 wherfore I shal conduyte you toward my lord / and I hope that ye shal fynde hym freely, & that ye shal haue a good traytyle with hym / how be it, he is informed of gueryn your lord ryght malyceously / but I 8 byleue that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of your petycion' / And thenne they departed & came toward the lodgys of Geffray.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the comportyng of the lady he yssued out of his tente & came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made humble reverence / and thenne geffray enclyned hym to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said: 'Madame, ye be right welcome' / and 'my lord,' said she, 'I see pat I desyre' / and themne her two children dyde obeyssaunce in the moost humble wyse / and 20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady the worke / and feynynge as though she had known nothing of hys euyl wyll / said vnto hym in this wyse: 'My lord / my lord! myn husband as for this tyme he 24 is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as many of your peple as shal you playse; For, my lord, 28 thanked be god, there is ynothing to plese you with / and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you gladly, as we owe to do the sone of our souerayn lord naturalt.' Whan geffray vnderstode her requeste 32 he was grety abasshed how she durst desyre hym / consyderying how he was informed ageynst Gueryn her husband. Neuerthele he sayd, 'By my feyth, fayre lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men
who says that he has been told that her lord does not deserve such recognition,

but that in her lord’s absence she and those in the fortress are safe.

The lady answers that neither herself nor her husband have done wrong;

and hopes that Geffray will hear her husband’s excuses.

Geffray promises to listen to them, and gives him a safe conduct for a week.

The lady goes to Mountfrain and tells her lord of her interview.

An ancient knight says that they will have a

haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how be it, my latey lady, I wyl wil that ye knowe that I am not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy- 4 selles / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you nor to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, ye your husband? be not there ’ / And she themse said: ‘gramercy, my lord. But I require you, that it playse 8 you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that ye haue vnto my lord myn husband?, For I am in certain notion he nor I haue nener do no thing to our know-leche that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleue 12 that ye it might plese you to here my lord & husband & his excuse, that ye shal fynck them that thus haue informed you, be not matere of trouth / and my lord?, therupon I make me strong that in conclusyon ye shal 16 fynde as I say.’

In this partye sheweth thes story, that whan geffray herd the lady thus speke he thought a lytel, & syn ansuered & said: ‘By my feyth, lady, ye he goodly can 20 excuse hym that he haue not falsed his feyth, I shalbe glad thereof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excus- acys with his felawes & all theire complyes / and from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooyng & 24 conmyng, and fourty personnes with hym.’ Thenne toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbryuant, where she lefte her children / and accompanied with ten knightes and squyers, & with thre damoysselles 28 departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfrayn, where she was receyued joyously of her lord & his frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lord had safconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personnes 32 with hym / & sy he may excuse hym geffray shal here hym gladly, & shal admynystre hym al rayson.

‘By my feyth,’ said an aunceynt knight, ‘thenne shal we haue a good traytys with hym / For there nys none 36
that may say that euer we mysdyde in eny thing ayenst our souerayne lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & \(\text{we had promysed hym to helpe hym} / \) for that we ne haue yet mysdon / nether geffray nor none other may not say that euer we had the helmet on heed, nor pat we yssued euer out of our places for to comofte or surely toward geffray, & lete me doo there with\(\text{h, For I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytye with hym.} \) The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confirmed this propos, & made theire appareyl for to goo toward geffray on the iii\(\text{de day folowyng. And the} \)mme the lady departed, & retournd to Valbruyant, where she sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & suche vyty\(d, \) with hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray / but he neuer receyued of it / but suffered that who wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady lete geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes shuld come toward hys grace. /

Here sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant & guerard hys neuew, taryed for theire frendes at mountfrayn / and when they were come they mounted on theire horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant / and on the morne \(\text{they sent word to Geffray of theire commyng, and that they were al redy to come toward hys good grace to theire excuse. And geffray answered:}} \)

\(\text{pat he was apparylled to receyue them. And penne they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the tente of geffray, to whom they made theire obeyss\(\text{aunce ryght honourably. And there thauucynt knight of whiche}} \)

I spak tofore toke the word, & said: "Mighty & puys-saunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse for this, that we understand how ye are infromed ayenst vs, that we were consentyng to the ylnesse & dysobedyence of Claude ayenst our souerayne lord
naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouthe that the said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysse enterpryse, he assembled vs toigidre, & thus said to vs: 'Fayre lorde, ye be aH of my lynage & kynrede / & I of 4 yours / wherfore rayson requyreth that we loue eche other.' Thenne sayd we / 'by my feyth, ye say trouthe / but wherfor say ye soo?' And thenne he answerd courtely: 'Fayre lorde, I doubt me to haue 8 shortly a strong' werre & to haue a doo with a strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe me' / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom / he answerd: 'we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that 12 he was not parfytte fren^, who that relenquysshed hys cousyn at hys node.' Thezne said we to hym, 'we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so grete in this countrye, 1ne so myghty, yf he wyl 16 hurt or dommage you, but that we shal helpe you to kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.' and vpon that he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst some where we ayded hym / but my lord wete it wel 20 that fro the tyme of hys dysobedyence to my lord your fader, we ne doubte nor fere neyper god nor man that we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of vs aH yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for 24 his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knownen nor fon^, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contruyed vpon 28 vs thrugh enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne owe to be therfore indignd ayenst vs, but are very subjets & obeydent to my lord, your fader Raymondyn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or 32 moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs / and herof I can no more say, For we can not thynke that none of vs dide euer that thing that myght dysplayse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present 36
beseeche & pray you that ye be not inflamed but of rayson."

When Geoffray had heard the excuse of the old knight that spake for all, he called his CounseyH to hym / and syn said to them: 'Fayre lordes, what seme yow of this fayte? I me semoth that these folke excuse them self full wel.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they al in commyn, 'that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy Euaungylles, that ye the siege had be layed tofore syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayenst you /

12 and ye they swere ye / they are your enemies / and to the contrary, ye they swere that noo / ye owe not to bere to them euyl wyH.' To this they al accorded / & therewith concluded theire counseyH. And thenne

16 were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore Geoffray / and after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon / they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde. Wherfore they had peas with Geoffray, and syn went

20 with hym al about the Countre vysytyng the Fortresses & places by the space of two monethes. And after Geoffray toke lene of the Barons there / and lefte gouern-ours to kepe & rewle the Countrey / and syn departed

24 & retourned to Lusynen, where he was gretly festyed of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne. Thenne was there come a knyght of poytou fro Cypre, whiche had reported tydynges how the Calyphe

28 of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryyed in Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynge Guyon. Also how kynge vryan had tydynges how they entended to make werre ayenst hym in Cypre.

32 Wherfore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of shippes, for to recountre & fyght with them in the see,

2 For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his land. Whan thenne Geoffray vnderstode these tydynges

36 he sware by the good lord, that shuld not be without and beg to be informed of their fault.

1 fol. 153 b. Geoffray tells his council that he thinks they have made a good defense. The council advises that Guerin and his friends should be made to swear that they would not have helped Claude had his castle been besieged.

Guerin is ready to swear; so he has peace with Geoffray.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, and is greatly feasted.

News comes from Cyprus that the Caliph of Bandas is attacking Guion, King of Armenia.

Urian is assembling ships to fight his brother's enemies.
Geffray resolves to aid his brethren.

Geffray asks the knight from Cyprus to accompany him.

He assembles xiii. C. men of arms and iii. C. archers, and marches them to Rochelle, where Raymondin had provided and victualled many vessels.

Geffray sets sail.

The Saracen lords resolve

Geffray resolves to fight the Saracens. [CH. XXXVI.

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre and said to Raymondin his fader, & to Melusyne his moder that they wold make hym cheuyssauce of help for to goo ayde his brethren aynest the enemyes of god. And they accorded therto so that he promised them to retourne within a yere day toward them.

Rygth joyous was geffray when his fader had graunted hym his wyff. and thezne he prayed the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward hym wel therof. 'By my feyth,' sayd the knight 'men telleth me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I 12 shal go with you for to see ye can doo more than Vryan & Guyon your brethren; For tho tho I knowe ryght wel.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said geffray, 'it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng the puys-16 saunce of my lordes, my brethren / but I thanke you of this lyberall offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte you, therfore, ye it playse god.' Thezne he made hym mandement & dyde so much, that he assembled xiii. C. 20 men of armes, & wel iiij. C. arablestres, and made them to drawe toward Rochelle / And raymondyln & melusyne were there, whiche had don arryued many veselles, & wel purveyed of vytayllles necessary. 24 And thezne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of his moder, & entred into the see with his companye, & saylled so pat they lost syght of land, For they made good wy. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28 and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was newe to the sawdan that was slayn in the batayl upon the heed of Syntyndrew aboue the black montayne.

Thystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas & the Saudan of Barbarye / the kyng Anthenor of Anthioche / and the admiral of querdes had made

1 Orig. of of. 2 Fr. Cordes.
togidre their affyaunce, that never they shuld retourne
tyl they had distroyed the kyng Vryan of Cipre, and
guyon the kyng of Armanye his brother / and had wel
4 assembled to the nombre of xvi. sarasyns, & had
their shippes aH prest to thentent to arryue first in
Armanye / & first of aH their werkes to distroye
the yle of Rodes, & after the royalme of Armanye / &
8 so passe in to Cypre to distroye & putte to deth / &
had sworne that they shuld make kyng Vryan to dey
on the crosse / & hys wyf & his children they shuld
brenne. But as the wyse man saith / 'the folo-
12 poseth & god dysposeth' / and at that season were
many espyes emong' them as wel of armenye as of
rodes / and there was one of the maister of Rodes spyes
that was so 1Lyke a Sarasyn that no man mysdymed
16 hym for other than a Sarasy, & had the langage as a
man of the same Countrey; the whiche knewe the
secretes of the sarasyns / and syn departed fro them &
came to baruth, where he fond a barke fat wold sayH
20 to Turckye to fette marchandyse, and entred in it. And
when they had good wynd they toke vp their ancres
& saylled so long that they sawe the yle of Rodes,
where they came to refressh them there / and soone
24 after the sayd espye went out of the shipp and toke
hys way toward the Cite of rodes, where he fond the
maister of rodes, that welcommed hym & demanded
what tydynges. And the spye recounted to hym al
28 that the Sarasyns entended for to doo / the whiche
 tydynges the maister of rodes dyde doo knowe by
wrytyng to the two bretheren kynges of Armanye & of
Cipre / and that they shuld entro in to the see with
32 peire power / and that he shuld mete with them at the
porte of Japhe / and thene when guyon kyng of
armanye vnderstode this he entred in to the see, & had
with hym to the nombre of six thousand men of armes,
36 & wel iii. balesters, & came sayllyng to Rodes, where

1 fol. 155.
A spy of the Master of Rhodes among
the Saracens

They intend to
first destroy the
Isle of Rhodos,
afterwards the
kingdom of
Armenia, and
then to capture
Urian of Cyprus,
and make him
die on the cross.

Word is sent to
the Kings of Ar-
menia and Cy-
prus, and they are
asked to set out
to sea and to
meet the Master
of Rhodes at
Jaffa.
Guion sails to Rhodes, where the prior receives him joyfully.

1 fol. 155 b.

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson.

takes leave of Ermine,

and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

as he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And whan the grete pryour of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthwith he entred with hym & al his puysaunce into the see to the nombre of 1 iii.C bretheren men of armes, 4 & vi.C balesters or crosbowmen. Whan they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, 2 For by very estymacion they were fonde to the nombre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii.C what balesters 8 as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayued with the wynde / and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplendysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete meruayH / and 12 syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter. / 16

Thysteroy sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement throug al his landz of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre with theire puysaunce, & when they were assembled at the porte of Lymasson he 20 toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiii.M. And peyne they departed fro the porte, & saylled by suche force of 24 wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, within three days after arryued vnder Lymasson / but the maister of the porte 28 suffred them not to entre within the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wyst not what to deme or say; wherfore he went anoone to the 32 Castel & announced these tydynges to the quene / And she pat was full sage, said to hym / 'go ye to know

2 Fr. six mille hermins et bien trois mille arbaléstriers. Hermins = Armenians.
what folke they be, For without treson, they are some of my lordes lynée / spoke themne with them, hauyng your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf 4 they wold arrayue by force, that ye may withstand them’ / And he anone fulfilled the quenes commande-ment & came to the barryers of the clos & demanded of them what they sought. Thenne answerd the knight 8 whiche tofore that tyne had be in Cypre / ‘lete us arrayue, For it is geffray, kyng vryans brother, that commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarayns.’ And thenne whan the maister of the porte vnderstode 12 ane knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: ‘Sire, the kyng is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, & hath take hys way and hys puyssaunce with hym toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he 16 may, that paynemes entre in his royame / but pray, my lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to come & see the queene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng.’ And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoon entred 20 into a lytel galyote, & with hym the said knight and other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne that anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen, where as they fonde many noble men that honourably 24 receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, & brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym, holdyng her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray 28 approched to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and geffray to her made his obeyssaunce & toke her vp & kyssed her / & syn said to her, ‘Madame, my sustir, god yeue you joye of al that your herto desyreth’ / And 32 she welcommed hym frendly & honourably. And thenne geffray toke vp his neew Henry, that kneled tofore hym. What shuld I now make long compte. Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys 2 Fr. chainne.
Geffray sails towards his brother. [CH. XXXVI.

His navy enters the port and is refreshed.

Geffray asks for a pilot.

The queen orders the portmaster to prepare a galley with the sagesst mariner that can be found.

He has a rampin ready, which guides Geffray, who soon sails out of sight.

1 fol. 157. Urian comes to Jaffa, and sees the Saracen fleet there.

The Saracens intend to sail against Rhodes.

nauye entred, & whan they were wel refreshed geffray said to the quene: 'Madame, I wyll derparte, let me haue a marowner that wel knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynde my brother.'

To this answerd the quene, 'My right dere brother /

By my feth, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now with my lord, your brother, For wel I knowhe shal haue grete joye of your 8 commynge.' and theenne she called to her the maister of the port, & sayd / 'go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sagesst marowner & best patron that can be fond, for to conduyte my 12 lord my brother toward my lord.' 'Madame,' answerd the maister of the port, 'I haue wel a rampyn alredy shipped to rowe, wel armed & vytaylled, & resteth no more than to mue & departe.' Theenne was geffray 16 right glade & toke hys leue of the quene & of his nevew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or galley gyded hym / & so departed with hys flote, & rowed & made good way, so that in short space they 20 of the porte lost the syght of them. And the quene Ermyne prayed deuotely to god that they myght re-tourne with joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broper rowed so longst yyl they perceyued the 24 porte 1 of Yaphe, & the bygge & grete vesselles that were there assembled / and theenne was there comme the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kyng 5 of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, with their puys-28 sauce. And was by them concluded the kinges anthenor & thadmyral shulde make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / & yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Saudan, 32 whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and the kyngs anthenor of Anthyoche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Yaphe with fourty thousand panenes, & toke their way toward Rodes by suche 36
wyse that Vryan knew nothing of their departure
and had rowed but two dayes journey when they per-
c eyued kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the
4 Cristens percyued them / Thenne was there grete
alarme of bothe partes, and soone they borded togidre.
There was grete occysyon & horrorble medlee / and at
the first recountyng were six galleys of the sarasyns
8 souken & peryshed in the see / And the noble crystens
endeuoyred them self wel & faught valyauntly,
but the force & the quantyte of the Saracen was grete/
but because of the multitude of Saracen the
Christians would have been de-
feated,
six Saracen gal-
leys are sunk ;
but because of
of the Saracen
Christians would

Thystory saith, that geffray & his peple saylled
in the see by force of wynd pat they had at theire
16 wyff so long, that they approuched the place where
the bataylle was. And first of all the rampyn that con-
duuyed them approuched so nygh that they sawe them
fyght / and anone retourned & said to geffray, ‘Sire,
20 commande al men to be redy, For we haue percyued
the bataylle / & as we suppose they are sarasyns &
crysten fyghting togidre.’ Thenne rowed the galyote &
came so nygh the baytaylle that they herde crye on hye,
24 ‘Cordes & Anthioche’ / and at the other part ‘Lusynen
& saynt Johan of Rodes’ / and immedyatly retourned the
rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, ‘Sire, at that one
party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part theire
28 callyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but cer-
taynly it is not the kyng vryan / but I byleue, my
lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the
maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Sarasyns.’
32 ‘Ryght foorth,’ sayd geffray, ‘goo we to them asprely’ /
thenne they hauued saylles vp & saylled foorth by
such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyreton of a
Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarasyns in suche
36 manere that they were sparylled, so that there rested

They meetGuion, and fight.
There is much 
slaughter,

Geffray is told
that it is a fight
between Christi-
ans and Sarac-
ens.

He sailes swift as
an arrow and
breaks up the
Saracen fleet.
not four of all the flote, and cryed 'Lysynen' with a high voy. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes bylened þat it had be the kyng Vryan that were cóme fro cyprē. And theane toke they good herte to them courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche 1 & thadmymral of Cordes gadred ayen theire peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys peuple, that were freshe & new, ouerrane them in suche manere that they dommaged gretily the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borded the vessel of the kynge anthenor & were chayneđ to gidre. And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng & bygan 12 to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peuple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strenth that there was no sarasyn so hardy that durst shew hym or make deffense / and many of them for theyre 16 relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmymral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admiral, guyon & his peuple assayled strongly, & drowned fouré of the sarasyns shippes.2 The batayH was fyers & horryble 20 & thoccysyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had nopings them to deffende. /

Moche was the batayH hard & strong; but abone al 24 other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteuyns that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abasshed for this that they cryed 'Lusynen' / 28 but theane it was no saison tenquere. And theane the kyng anthenor & thadmymral perceyued wel þat the dyscomfiture fyH on them, For they þenne 3 had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they 32 made the resydu of theire people to withdraw them

2 In Fr. et toutesfois le roi Anthenor se salua au vaisseau de l'admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et puys fut effondé en mer.
toward the port of Japhe to have socour / and the said kynge & admiral put them self in a shipp of auaun
gage & made grete sayv from the batayll, and when the sar-a
4 syns perceived they went after, he that might. But
the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertooke the moost part
& putte them to deth & threw them ouerbord. But
whan geffray perceived the departyng of the kyngs
8 anthenor & the admiral, he dyde make sayll & went
after with al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone
he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne.
And whan the rampyn ship of auaungage perceived
12 geffray, the patron cryed to hys peuple with a hyo
voys / 'after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth
his way & fayletth to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer
dare returne to my lady.' And thenne the kynge
16 Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron
what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them.
'By my feyth,' said the patron, 'it is geffray with the
grete toth, your brother.' And when the kyng guyon
20 vnderstood it he cryed with a hyo voys, 'make more
sayll, pat we were with our brother, For yf he were
perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.' But pe
rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouer-
toke geffray, that was neer the sarasyns that ap-
proached the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to
speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was
come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes
28 there / but the paynemes rescued them in their best
manere / not that withstanding there were more than
ten vessels brent.
In this partye sheweth thyestorye that Geffray with
32 the grete tooth pursewed so long the king anthenor
& thadmyral of Cordes, that they approached nyght to
the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray
after them; For by no manere he wold leue them /
36 though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Geffray chases them,
paynemes that themne were entred in to the vesselles to socoure the kyng' anthenor. But he anoone bygan the batayH that was harf & mortaH, in so moch that the kyng and thadmyraH were constrayned to take land, and went to the toune of Japhe, where they fonde the calyphe of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that were gretly abasshed that so soone they were retournd, and demanded of the cause wherfore / and they re-8 counted to them al thadventure, And how the kyng of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted, had not a knytgh araged or wodë that came & so-coured them with a few peuple that cryed 'Lusyynen' / 12 & there may none willstand hym, which is now yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our peuple / and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende. And whan the sawdan vnderstoH it he had no wyH to 16 lawghe / but said, 'By machomet, it is tolde me of olH that I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall susteyne grete parels vpon the see, by the heyres of Lusyynen / but yf we might haue them on land, and 20 that our peuple were ouf of pe shippes they shuld be soone aH dyscomfyted.' 'By aH our goddes;' said the Caliphe, 'ye say trouth, / and also yf they were here dystoneH we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24 armanye / Lete vs themne make our peuple to come to land, and suffre the Cristen to take peasybly theire landing.' But in certayn for nought they spake soo, For they yssued out without ony commandement, by 28 the vertue & strength of Geffray that therey constrayned them / and Geffray with his peuple pursiewed them at land, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all thoat that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32 that entred in the toun cryed 'treson, treson!' Thenne were the gates shette, and euer man went to hys garde / and geffray retournd to his shippes / and com-manded that the horses shuld be hald out aland. For 36
he said that never he shuld departe but he shuld dey or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the grete toth hath be here.

4 Thysterye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the rampyn perceyued the banes & penons of the kyng vryan, that mochi strongly scarmysshed the nauye of the sarasyns that knew nothing; that geffray had take land; For they had take the deep of the porte. And the kyng and thadmyraH were arryued at the narowest syde to be the sooner on land. Themne departed the 12 rampyn shipp of auuautage, and rowed toward vryan. And thenne they recounted Guyon, whiche asked of the patron tydynge of geffray. 'Yonder he hath take land,' said the patron, ' & hath chaced the paynemes 16 vnto pe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your brother, that scarmyssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo for to announce hym your auenture, and the commynge of geffray, his brother' / And thenne the rampyn 20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his obeysaunce don, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof Vryan thanked god deuoutely / & cryed to hys peple, 'auaunt, lorde, thinke to doo wel, For our enemies 24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slayn or take.' Themne the crysten borded their enemyes, the which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had knowleche that the kyng anthenor & thadmyraH were 28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan the Calyphe and the saudan sawe theire peple aland, they dyde send ambaxades toward the prynces Cristen 32 for to haue trews the space of thre dayes, & that they shuld suffre theire landings, & on the foureth day they shuld gyue them journey of batayH. Kinge Vryan accorded therto, and sent word therof to his brethern 36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and
assembled theire peple togidre. Thanke 1 was the Joye grete emong the thre brotheren, and theire oost was nombred xxii. 2 what men of armes / balesters & archers.

Thy storye sayth that the thre brotheren and theire people made moche eche of other, & refresshed them during the trews. But jame the Sawdan of Damaske that had knowleche of the crystens landing 8 sent word to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght with the crysten tyl he were come with them, & that they shuld take othre thre days of trews / & so they did; whereto the 12 noble prynces crysten accorded. And duryng that terme the Calyphe & 2 the sawdan of Barbarye dyde withdrow theyre peuple toward Damaske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more within the land, 16 so that none might fle to therye nauye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wen to have all theire wyf vpon the Crysten. For they were after the sau- dan of Damaske was assembled with them to the 20 nombre of VII score thousand fyghtynge men / and pe crysten were but xxii. 31 good men / the which, when they knew of the departynge of the sarsyns fro Japhe, they were fulf dolaunt; For they supposed they had 24 field / but for nought they wen soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batayH. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the 28 tentes of the thre brotheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym 3 gretyng / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of their noble maynten & fyers contenance / and in especial 32 he meruaylled moche of Geffray that was the hyest of personne, & saw the tooth that passed ouer the lyppe along hys cheke; wherof he was so abashshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to 36

1 fol. 160 b.

4
kynge Vryan in this wyse. 'Noble kynge of Cypre / my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye & of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyraft of Cordes send word by me to you that they be prest1 redy to luyere you batayH, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder Damaske where ye, with al your puyssaunce may 8 come / saf and peasybly there to make and take there your lodgys tofore them wheresoever it playse you / and by aucture whan ye haue sene their puyssaunce ye shal fynd some good & amyable traytye 12 with my said lordes. For certaynly it is not to your power to withstand their strength.' And whan geffray here there wordes, he sayd to hym / 'goo thou to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say 16 them that yf there were none only but I & my peulple, yet wold I fyght / & say them pat of their trews we haue nought to doo / and when thou shalt come to them say that geffray with the grete toth deffyeth them / 20 and anone after that thou art departed from hens I shal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shal fyre it / and al the sarasyns that I shal fynd, I shal putte them to deth / and say to them, as thou passe by 2 that they puruey 24 them wel, For I ryght foorth shal departe to asayH them.' And whan the trucheman or messager here this ansuere, he was al abasshed / and without eny more proces he leapt vpon his dromedary, For he had so greto 28 feer of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loket behynde hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / & sayd in hym self: 'By mahon, yf al the other were suche as that with the grete toth, our lordes, nor there 32 puyssaunce were not able to withstand them.' And thenne he came to Japhe, & said to them that geffray with the grete toth wold come anoon tassayH their Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in
1 Fr. prets.

He delivers his message, that the Saracen lords are ready for battle.

He suggests a treaty.

Geffray bids him return to the Caliph with his defiance, and the news that Geffray is about to assai Jaffa and to slay all the Saracens he finds there.

The interpreter leaps upon his dromedary and full of fear rides away, thinking that his lords cannot withstand many Geffrays.

He tells the people of Jaffa that Geffray is about to assay them.
subjection of hys sword al them that he fond. Thenne were they all abashed / and weto it wel that the more parte of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske, and toke with them theire goodes. And anoon geffray dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went incontynent to sawte the toun, and wolde neuer cesse therof, For ony thing that his brefern said / and sware by god that he shuld shewe them suche tokens that men shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth thisorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messanger that rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of the sarasyns at Damaske.

In this party, sayth thystory, that the messager rode so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto thoost tofore Damaske / & fond in the tente of the Calyphe the two sawdans, the king's anthenor / thad- myral of Cordes, the kyng's golofryn of Danette, & many other that asked tydynges of the Cristens. And the messager them said / 'I haue don your commande- ment & message / but when I shewed vnto them, yf that they had seen your puysaunce it wold haue be a meane of traytye with you / and themme one of them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng of Cypre to haue the wordes, but he hymself said pus, "Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we haue not to doo with theire trews, / & that yf there wer but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you" / and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come to you that I shuld take you ayen pe patents of your trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in despyte of you ah he wold assawte Japhe, & putte the fyre throuh al the toun & destroye them for euer / and thus I shuld say to them whan I passed by the Cite / and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more part of the Cytezyns be come after me, & immedy-

2 MS. has more twice.
atly after my departynge: I herewithal my trompettes blewethassawte of Japhe / & ye coude neuer thynke thorryble & fyers contenaunces of the prynces crysten with theire 4 puysauance / And wete it wel after the semblauance that they shew, ye bo not of power tabyde them, & in especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere but that ye shal flee or they come to you.' And whan 8 the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it, he bygan to lawgh, & said, 'By machomid, in asmoche as I haue perceyued now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batayH ayenst hym with the grete toth.' Wherto answered I the mes-sager / ' vnhappy be that heure or day that I approche hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym & me / and yf I doo other, let my lord mahomid 16 drowne me,' / & therwith bygane euery personne to lawhe. But there were suche that lawhed, that afterward, yf they might haue had leyser, they wold have wept. Now shal I shew how geffray assawted Japho, 20 and toke it by force, and putte to deth all the sarasyns there, and toke their hauoir and goodes out of the Cyte / & bare it vnto the vessels, and after sette fyre on the Cite / and this don, returned the crysten to theire 24 lodgys, where geffray requyred his bretheren that they shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys people, to make the vantgarde / & they were agreed / and that same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe. 28 The next day, as the hystory wytnesseth, after the masse herewithal, desloged the vanward, and after the grete batayll, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde / and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre 32 ordynaunce to departe. Theune came a spey to geffray, & hym said: 'Sire, about half a leghe hens ben a thousand sarasyns, whichy drawe them toward baruth to kephe the hauen of the toune.' to whom 36 geffray asked / 'canst conduyte me thither?'/ 'ye, by He tells the Saracens that he thinks they are unable to withstand the Christians.

The Sultan of Damascus jeers and says he will make the interpreter the first to fight Geffray.

The interpreter declares he will not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults Jaffa, slays the inhabitants, and takes their goods to his vessels.

The battle is arranged.

The host marches in good order.

A spy tells Geffray of the march of a thousand Saracens to Beyrouth.
my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thence said geffray to
the maister of rodes, that he shuld condyte the
wanarde, puttyng fyre vpon the way where he went, to
thentent he shuld not sayH to synH hym by the trasse 4
of the fumyer / and the maister of 1 Rodes said / 'it shal
be don.' And thence departed geffray with the spye,
and went before, where he perceyued the sarasyns
commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the 8
sarasyns, which was joyful therof, & hasted hys peuple.
and whan he had ouertake them / he sayre : 'by god /
ye gloutons! ye may not me escape' / & so rane vpon
them, & ouerthrew the first that he recounted to the 12
erth, & syn drew hys swerd, & dyde meruayllous
fayttes of armes, & his peuple in lyke wyse. What
nede is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dys-
comfyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the 16
chaas. And whan the sarasyns of baruth sawe the
fleers, they anoone knew them, & lete faH the bridge,
& opened the gates & barryers / thesme the fleers entred
within the toune / but always geffray folowed so 20.
hastly, that he entred with them within the town with
wel fyue C men of armes. And whan Geffray was
entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate2 tyl the
resydu of hys peuple were come / And thence bygan 24
the batayH to be fyers & strong / but neuertheles the
Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out
of the toune. And he that thence had a good hors was
wel bestad, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite 28
of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray &
his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fondH in the
toun, and threw them in the see / and he that sawe
the toune strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porte 32
garnysshed with toures for the sauegarde of the nauye /
sayd / 'that place shuld be kepe for hym self' / and
there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes & a

2 Fr. à garder. MS. has repegate = kepe [the] gate.
C balesters of his peple / and he hymself 1 soijourned there all that same nyght. And on the morne he toke leue of his men that he lefte there, & rode after thoost 4 by the trace of the fumye & smoke / but the maister of Rodes was afer? lest he shulde haue grete empesche-ment/. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, which 8 came to thoost at the tente of the Sawdan, where as the lordes sarasyns were / and pyteously recounted to them the dysstroction of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte to deth bothe yong & old, & sette fyre on eche part 12 of the toun. Whan the saudants & kynges sarasyns vnderstood it, they were fuult dolaunt. ‘By al our goddes,’ said the saudan of Damaske, ‘Moche hard ben the crysten, & they doubte nought as it semeth / 16 but fuult wel they knowe that they are not of power to withstand our grete puysaunce; wherefore they make semblaunt, that nought they fere vs, & make suche sawtes while that we are ferre fro them / but yf we 20 marched foorth / no doubte they wold recule & with- drawe them in to their shippes.’ ‘By mahon,’ said the sawdan of Barbarye / ‘yf they were here alle rosted or soden, & yf it were custome to ete suche fleshe, they 24 were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a breakfast / by my lawe, yf there were but I & my peuple only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.’ But whan the trucheman or messager here? hym so speke 28 he coude neuer holde hys tonge, but that he sayd / ‘myghty sawdan, yf now ye sawe the kyng Vryan / the kyng guyon hys brother, & he with the grete toth, therei horryble & fyers contenuevaunce, shuld cause 2-you 32 to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And weto it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shall not haue them fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & afterward 36 ouerthrown’ / And thenne when the saudan vnder-
stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym: 'By Mahomid, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold fayne be ordelyned at the first recountre of ye batayll ayenst Geffray with the grete 4 toeth.' & he answerd: 'By my lawe, sire, ye be not reconynted of none other but of me / he may wel come surely; For I shal tourne myn heelys towarde hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his personne.' Thenne the lawhyng was there grete / but sooner after they here other tydylnges, wherof they had no wyll to lawhe, For the fleers fro baruth forsayd came to thost, and to them recounted the dommage & pyte of 12 the toune of Baruth, and how Geffray with the grete toth had chaced them by force, & al the resydu of them he had slayn / & 'by mahon,' said they, 'wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garyson 16 at Baruth, & wel vytyaylled it, & committed hyderward in al haste to hym possible / & men see nothyng throug al the Countrie where he passeth but fyre & flame, & the wayes be aH couered with sarasyns that he & hys 20 peple haue slayn.' Thenne whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch dolaut & angry. 'By mahomid,' said he, 'I byleue fermely that he with the grete toth hath a dyuel in his body.' Thenne said 24 the saudan of Barbarye, 'I am in doubte of that is told me.' 'What is that?' said the saudan of Damaske / 'it is said that the heyrs of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by their strengthe be hurt & dom- 28 maged.' Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarasyx but that he shoke for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to Geffray.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye, that so long rode 32 geffray with hys felawship, that he ouertok the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had exployted. And Geffray recounted to hym how he & his 36
peple, with thayde of god, he had wonne tho toune, castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had chased a grete part of them that were within, and the resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte certayn nombre of his peuple to kepe it. 'By god,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'ye haue wel don, & nobly & valyauntly exployted' / and soone these tydynge were knoen throug thoost / & Vryan & Guyon were joyful therof. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan to Guyon: 'Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght The brothers speak of the prowess of Geffray. Long tyme went the two bretheren thus spek- yng of the prowes of Geffray / And so long marched peir 12 oost, that on an euyn they lodged them by a ryuere fyue myle fro Damaske / & there came their espyes, that declared to them all the manyere & contenaunce of the sarasyns. And thenne they toke Counseyl to 20 weto what best was to doo, & they concluded that on the morne their oost shuld lodge a leghe nygh to the Sarazyns as they dide. And thus on the morne they departed, & was commanded that none shuld sette fyre on his lodgys, nor in none other place; to thende that the Sarazyns shuld not soone perceyue their commynge. And briefly to say, so long they went tyl they came to the place where they lodged 28 them togidre, & made pat nyght good watche toward their enemies. & after they souped & lay al nyght in their harneys. And anoone aftir middenyght geffray, accompanied with a thousand fyghting men, toke a 32 guyde that wel knew the Countre, & went toward thooest of the Sarazyns al the couert. & nygh therby was a forest that dured a myle, and there he embusshed & sent word to thooest that they shuld be redy as to 36 receyue their enemys.
Thystorye testyfeth that geffray at the day spryng, mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng men, & commanded them of thembushe pat for nothing that they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sawe 4 hym & hys company recule, and them same vpon them of the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffray, & went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the sarasyns cost aft styl, & herz nothing, as nobody had be there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had not knowen theire contenauence, For yf hys bretheren had be there with theire peple, they shuld have had good chep of sarasyns / but not withstanding, he sware that 12 syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them to knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hys felawes: 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe as they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal command you.' 16 And they said that nomore shuld they doo. Thenne they rode al the court nygh togidre, & and entred into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslepe on every syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete multy 20 tude of peuple / and syn he said in this wyse: 'By my feyth, yf ye were crysten, they were to be ferfe & dредd / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and with his felawship went vnto the myddes of thoost, or they 24 made eny stryf. And there geffray perceyued a ryche tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliphes tente or one of the saudants / said vnto hys peuple / 'anuunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere & 28 awake these houndes, for to long they haue slept.' Thenne Geffray, & ten knightes with hym, entred in to the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote with theire swerdes, makynge heedes, armes, & legges to leue 32 the bodyes. There was the noyse, & the cry grete & hydous to here / & wete it that it was pe tente of the kyng Gallafryn of Danette; which anoone rose vp fro hys bed, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at the 36
backsyde of hys tente, but Geffray perceyued, & gaf hym suche a stroke with his swerf that was pesaunt, & cuttyng sharp as a raser, that he cleft hys heed vnto the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell doun deede / and none escaped of them that were in the tente; but they were all slayne. And thence cryeng 'Lusynen' they retourned through thooost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns that they recounted. Thenne was thooost wel awaked, & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tydynges to the tente of the sawdan of Damaske, that said: 'What noyse is that I here yonder 1 without?'

12 Thenne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had a broken heede, in such manere pat hys one eere lay vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym: 'Sire, that are x dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they recountre in theire way / and they hane slayn the kyng of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is "Lusynen!"'.

Whan the sawdan vnderstood it he made hys trompettes to blow vp, that euery man shulde be armed. And thence the sawdan & x. M1 sarasyns with hym went after. And Geffray went with hys peple through thooost makyng grete occyson of sarasyns, For they were vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And wete it that or euer they departed fro thooost, they slough & hurt more than iii M sarasyns / and when they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe & fayre / And the sawdan of Damaske hasted hym after.

Moche dolaunt & angry was the sawdan of Damaske, when he perceyued the grete occyson that the crysten had don vpon hys peuple / & sware by hys goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shoulde be auenged on them, & that not a crysten shoulde be take to mercy, but shuld al be slayn. thence he folowed geffray with x thousand Saracyns. And thence geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to
hys bretheren by his peple feynyng to flee / and he entred within the bushe where his peple was, for to putte them in aray / And the saudan folowed alway, & passede before thembusshe. Wete it wel that the 4 maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward was themne in fayre \(1\) batayH. And when he sawe the saudan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst the sarasyns, the speere in the rest, and there they medled & faught strongly / and within a lytel space of tyme the Sarasyns were dyscomfyte. For at the first recontrue with the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew a sarasyn to the erth. And when the saudan sawe 12 that he might no lenger withstand he reculed, & assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng the sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys companye yssued out of thembusshe and ranne vpon them 16 \(\text{bat} ut\) went without ordonauce after the saudan. And within a whyle there were slayn of the sarasyns by the way more than foure thousand. And themne many of them flied toward their oost, and fond the caliphe of 20 bandas, the saudan of barbarye, the king Anthenor, & thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whens jey came / And they answerd: 'we come fro the batayH where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dys- 24 comfyted.' And when they vnderstoed it they were dyscomforted & sorowful, & wyst not what they shuld say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batayH. 

The batayH was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan of 28 Damaske faught manfully \(\text{bat} ut\) day, after that he had assembled hys peple. Thenne came geffray, that ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister of rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there was 32 made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I make long compte / the feled them assaylled on bothe sydes, therby \(2\)they were dyscomfyted, & might no lenger defende. And when the saudan perceyued the dys- 36
comfyture, he went out of the batayff & tourned the
targe behyn, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward
thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde,
that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche
armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the
sarasyrs. There he broched hys hors with the sporys
after the saudan, and cryed to hym, 'retourne, or thou
shalt dy! For I shul[de] haue grete vergoyne yf I smote
the behynf / but alwayes, yf thou not retourne, nedes
I most do soo.' And whan the sawdan vnsterck
hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he
dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that
he might not ouertake hym, cryed to hym ayen,
sayeng: 'Fy on the! reereault coward; that art so
wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest
not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I sha[ll] sleee the
fleeyng / how be it, that sha[ll] be ayenst my wyff.'
And thenne the saudan, vergoyrnous of geffray's wordes,
that for fere of a man alone he fledd / retourned at
the corner of the wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns,
in that same place where as geffray had that day
embossed hys peuple / and putte hys shild tofore hys
brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to
geffray: 'What art thou, pat so hastily folowest me /
by mahon! that sha[ll] be to thy grete dommage.' /
' And for thy profuyt I am not come thus ferre,' said
geffray / 'but synth that myn name thou axest, thou
shalt it knowe. I am Geffray with the grete tooth,
brother to the kings Vryan & guyon / and what art
thou?' 'By mahon,' said the saudan, 'that sha[ll] thou
knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe
thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me
a C thousand besans of golde, as I am to haue fonde the
so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I defy
the, by machomet my god.' 'By my feyth,' said
Geffray, 'nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a
rotyn dogge; For soone thou shalt fynde me nerer the,
to thyn euyl helthe / and yf it playse\p to god, my
creatour, thou shalt not escape.' /

Here sayth thystorye, that Geffray & the saudan, 4
that bothe were of\p grete courage & strength,
reculed ech other, and syn ranne ypon ech other / 
and the Saudan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronchoned
his spere ypon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that 8
the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled
not; For he smote the Saudan by suche radeur, that he
lefte hym out of hys arsouns, & bare hym vnto therthe.
and so passed forth, and immedyatly toke in hys hand\p 12
hys good swerd &/ and pretendyng that men shuld speke
of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by
suche vertu that he perced hys helmet, and effoundred
hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was 16
sore astonyed and euyl bestad\p in suche wyse that he
nother sawe nor her\p / but as geffray wold haue
alyghted\p to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue
brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he \p 1 was deed, 20
he perceyued wel thre score sarasy\ns, that cryed after
hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende
is come.' And whan geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd
hys hors, & brandysshed the swer\p; and the fyrst that 24
he recounted\p, he smote doune to therthe al deed\p. And
who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble
fayttes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For
geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed 28
the place with grete effusyon of sarasy\ns blood\p / and
they casted at hym sperys & dartes, and made grete
peyne for to haue had ouerthrawen hym to therthi.
And thenne the saudan was come at hymself ayen, 32
and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe /
he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys
hors, & sawe the batay\H, where he perceyued wel
geffray, that made grete occysyon of sarasy\ns / and was 36
geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body. Thenne cryed the saudan, admonnestyng his peple, sayeng / 'auaunt! worthy sarasyns / by mahomicke, yf he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye; For who might bryng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be doubted.' Thenne was geffray assaylled on all partes / & he defended hym hardly & so valyauntly, that no sarasyn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre sperys, darts, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles, with theire crosbowes / but it semed not that he made ony force therof / but as a hongre wolf reneth vpon 12 sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemies of god. 'By my goddes, Appolyn & mahon,' sayd thenne the saudan / 'this is not a man / but it is a grete dyueH, come out of heH / or the Cristen god, which is come 16 hither to distroye our lawe' / And, For certayn, geffray was in this aventure wel by the space of two heures.

In this parsel was geffray vnto tyme that the new knight, which had be with hym in garende, which had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at him with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly. And thenne, whan he approched the wode, he perceyued the batayH, and sawe the saudan, that dyde his best for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone ayenst mahondys people; wherfore he said / 'cursed be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now' / and the knightes peple ansuered, 'to theire euyl helthe they 28 haue recounted geffray.' And forthwith they broched their horses with theire sporys, & came to the batayH. but assoone as the saudan perceyued the socours, he sporyd his hors, & hastily fled toward 32 thouost / & left his peple in that plught, of the which neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd: 'My Geffray thanks the knight,

resden well good, & of swete odour / & the
THE EVENING AFTER THE BATTLE. [CH. XXXVI.

lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I haue not doo that thing wherof I owe to be rewarde, For euery trew servaunt oweth to take heed to thonour & proufydt of hys maister and lorde. And the same, syth it is so, no reward ought not to be had therfore, but departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest: ye haue do this day that wel may suffye. & also we 8 be lytel nombre of peuple, & nygh our enemie, that haue grete puyssaunce & your woundes and soores must be vysyted and ouersene & also, it me semeth best, that we retourne toward oure oost by our owne wyH / than yf by force we were constrayned to retourne; For no doubte / who that returneth fleeynge, & is chased hy by hys enemie / that may be to hym but blame / how be it, that of tyme it is said / that bettre 16 it is to flee, pan to abyde a folysH enterpryse.' Thenne said geffray: 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal byleue your counseyH.' And they thesame departed, and went toward theire oost, & fonde in theire way the feldes 20 sown with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxv
d thousand men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne / and there escape?, fleeynge, XL M\l. And wete it al also, that the Caliphe and the two saundans, the king Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fonde of seuen score thousand panemes that the euyn tofore were in theire oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were grety 28 abasshed. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was retournde to thoost, where he was wel festyed of hys brethreen, and of theire barony / and his woundes were vysyted by the Cyrurgyns, that said that he shal 32 shuld not leue the harneyes therfør: and they all thanked god. And now I shal shew of the sawdan. / Thystorye sayth, that when the saundan was departed fro the batayH, he walapec? tyl he came to the 36
CH. XXXVI.] THEY FIGHT NEXT DAY. sarasyns oost, where as he fond his peple al abasshed, For they wend he had be slayn. And whan they sawe hym, they made grete joye, & made to hym theire obeysance, and asked how he had exployted. 'By mahomid,' sayd pe saudan / 'lytel or nought have I doo, For my peple is al deed.' And incontynent he was desarmed, & recounted them al thuventure. And 8 the two oostes rested them that night, without ony approaching or cours don of neyther partye. /

Here sheweth thystorye, that on the morow by tymes, the Crysten armed them, & rengid & 12 ordyneid them in bataytt, and lefte good watche for to kepe theire lodgys / and them that were wounded & hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth in fayre ordynamice toward thenemyes. In the van-

16 wardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & theire peple; & good arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel rengid. And in the grete bataytt was the king Vryan / and the king Guyon conduyted the ryergard / and so 20 long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the sarasyns / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe sydes, a meruayllous cry / with whiche they marched that one ayenst that other. And bygan the bataytt by the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was obseruid with the quarellaes & arowes, that flewh so thyk. 1The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest front of his peuple, and when the shotte seaced, he 28 toke his sheld & hys spere in escryeng 'Lusynen' by thre tymes, and smote his hors with his sporys, & thrested in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that the maister of Rodes coude not folowe hym. Ther was 32 thene horryble bruyt with their cryes / that one cryed 'Damaske' / that other / 'barbarye' / some cryed 'bandas;' & some 'anthioche,' and other were that cryed 'cordes' / and geffray & his peple cryed 36 'Lusynen & Rodes.' There made the thre bretheren...
The brethren do such deeds of arms that all are abashed.

The Sultans of Damaske and Barbary rush on the brethren;

but the Christians pluck up heart and slay many of the enemy.

Geffray gives the admiral a stroke so great that he dies.

Urian sees the Sultan of Barbary, and strikes off his left arm.

The sultan retreats to Damascus, but the Saracens continue the fight.

so meruaylous faytes of armes / that not only the sarayns were abasshed / but also the crystens merueyld therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of Barbarye, perceyued the thre brethren, that so ouerthrew & slew 4 theire peple; wherfore they, with xx. M! sarayns, couched theire sperys & rane vpon them. There reforced the batayH / and with that 1 cours the cristen the lengthe of a spere ferre. And when the thre S brethren saw the sarayns, that thus ouerane theire peple / bygan to crye 'Lusynen,' & said, admounestynge theire peple / 'anaunt, lorde barons! these dogges may not long' withstand our armes.' And thesne the 12 Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an horryble cours vpon theire enemies; whereby the stour was strong, & the batayH mortal. 2 For they ouerthrew & slough many sarayns. The same was per Geffray, 16 that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote down to therthe al that he recounted with his sword;' Whiche perceyued thadmyral of 3 Cordes, that smote on the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray throught the prees, 20 & cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he brake bothe helmet & heed vnto the brayne. There was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants and theire puyssauwce, that supposed wel to hame 24 redressed thadmyral vpon his hors / but it was for nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan, and sawe the saudan of Barbarye, pat moche hated hym, for cause that he had slayn the saudan his uncle 28 in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arme to flee fro the body. And when the saudan sawe hym thus arrayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knightes 32 to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles faught euer the sarayns, For the saudan of damaske, & the caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in 1 Fr. se reculèrent le long d'une lance. 2 Fr. greigneur.
vertu. There was grete doleur, & grete pestylence. And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore dommaged, but as the veray crynykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued there ouergrete dommage & losse, For of them were slayn XL. M & more, & dure the batayH vnto euen tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part to theire lodgeys. And on the morne the Caliphe, & the king anthenor, & the residu of theire peuple, withdrew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the three bretheren vndersto? it, they went & lodged, with theire puyssaunce, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel, they were gretyly febled, & the more part of them hurt. And there they rested them by the space of VIII dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing. They rest vll. days.

16 Hystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were ryght dolant & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple. For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new men, it myght come therof some euyl to them. For wel they had lost viiiM of theire men. But at that other part were the saudans al abasshed. For they knew not the dommage that the Crysten had receyued. And they had CounseyH that they schould requyre kyng

24 Vryan journey of traytwe vpon fourme of peas / and so they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyH that he shuld be greable to it. And the journey was assygned by the accorde of bothe partes on the iii4e day atwix the 28 lodys & the toun / and were the trews graunted & were delyuere good pledges & hostages of both partes. And theame came they of the toun to selle theire marchaundysse in to the Crystens cost. Theme came 32 to the journey of traytwe that was assygned the saudants and their CounseyH. And of the other part came Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & their baronye with them, and spake, & communyked togidre 36 of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

Both sides are hurt, but the Saracens the more. The battle stops at eventide. Next morning the Saracens, greatly enfeebled, retire to Damascus. See that if the Saracens assemble new men they may lose, for they had lost viii. Ml men. But the sultans are abashed, and ask for a treaty. It is granted.
The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage, and a yearly tribute to Urian and his heirs of xxx. Ml besauns of gold;

1 fol. 171 b.
also they promise not to wage war against Urian, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.
The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Urian and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

partye that they were accorded, and pacifyed by con-
dycon that the Saracyns shuld restore to the lorde Cristen all their expenses & costes made in their voyage, & to paye yerly vnto kyng Vryan & hys heyres for 4 euermore xxxIII besauns of gold; and trews were made betwene them for £ & one yere, and therof were letres patentes sealled. And this couuenant and trayte the sawdan of Barbary that great dolear felt in 8 hys sholdar for hys arme that was of / and the kyng of Anthioche / ratyfied, / promyttynge that newer they shuld bere armes ayenst kyng Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor theire 12 peple / and that yf other kynges or prynces sarasyns wold attempte ony werre anenst them, they shuld lete them haue knowleche therof assoome as they might know it / and yf throug that cause they had werre 16 ayenst ony king or pryncy, Vryan promysed them to soccure and gyue them comfort with all hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng Guyon & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the the brefern 20 and theire peple retournd to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kyng Anthonor conueyed hym thither. And the sawdan made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete 24 yeftes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye.

Thystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wher-fore they toke leue of geffray theire brother, and hym moche thanked of hys noble ayde & soccours / and syn they departed fro the porte of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see 32 toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably recceyued & gretly festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys com-
panye tyl he came to Merment, where he fond bothe 36
his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he & his brethern had wrought beyond the grete see & festyed hym greetly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete 4 feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his comynyn. But soone aftir ¹ came there tydynges that in the Countrre of the Garende was a grete geaunt that by hys grete pryde & orgueyH, & by his grete strength held all the Countrre in subjection. For no man durst gaynsay his commandement. Of these tydynges was Raymondyn ryght dolaunt; how be it he made of it no semblaunt, feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght with the geaunt ye hys vnderstock where he was. But it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vnderstode pe talkyng of hym / and that come to hys 16 knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / ‘how dyuel my bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the saund of damask & hys comlyces, and that hound alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enhery-

Raymondyn gives a great fea$t for joy of his return.

¹ fol. 172.

Tidings come from Garende of a great giant who keeps the countrre in subjection.

Raymondyn hides his grief in fear that Geffray will see it.

Geffray swears that he will at-tack the giant.

He tells his father that he marvels that he has suf-fered Gueodon to keep his countrre in subjection so long.

Raymondyn says the giant shall have his pay-ment.

Geffray home again.

293

taunçe in subjection / by my solwe, in his euyl helthe he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf ye I may.' Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus said to hym. ‘My lord, I merueyH of you that are a 24 knight of so noble enterpysye how ye haue suffred so long of that hound Gueodon the geaunt, that hath putte your countrre of garande in subjection / by god, my lord, shame is therof to you.’ Who raymondyn vnder-

28 stock hym, he said / ‘Geffray, fayre sone, wete it is not long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred vnto your joyful comynyn. For we wold not trouble the fest / but doubt ye not, gueodon shal haue hys payment after his deserte. He slew my gransfader in the Counte of pouthicu, as it was told me in bretayn, whan I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.’ /
Thanne answereth Geffray: 'I ne wot nor wyl not enquerye of thinges past, synth that my predecessors have therof had thonour & are come to theire aboue / but at this tyme present that Iniurye shal be soone 4 mended yf it plese god & I may / and as touching your persone ye ought not to mene your self for suche a thief & palyard; For I, with ten knights of myn household only for to hold me companye / not for ayde 8 that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght with hym 1 / And when Raymondyn his fader vnderstode hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorrowful, and thus said to hym / 'sethen it may none other wyse be / goo 12 thou by the grace of god.' And thanne geffray toke his leue of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym self on the way toward garande accompanied with x knights, and there where he passed by he enqueryed 16 after gudon where he might fynde hym / And wel it is trouth that it was told hym where the geant was / But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he speryd after hym. 'By my feyth,' answarde geffray, 20 'I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his foly & outrages thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynyte of my spereheed, For none other payment he shal re-ceive of me but strokes of my swerd within.' And when the good peple here hym thus speke, they said to hym in this wyse: 'By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder-take grete foly, 1 For an hondred suche as ye be shuld 28 not be able to withstand hys cruelte.' 'doubte you not,' said geffray / 'but lete me haue the feer alone' / and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym wroth. For moche they fered hys fyersnes & yre, of 32 whiche he was replenysshed / but the condyuted hym vnto a leghe nygh to the sayd geantuys retrette or pryue dwellyngs / and theene they sayd to geffray: 'Sire, ye may lighly fynde hym at yonder place within the 36
forest' / and geffray ansuerd, 'I wold fayne see hym, For to fynde hym I am come hither' / And here cesseth thystorye to speke of geffray / and sheweth of 4 Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

The veray and trew hystorye witnesseth that Raymondyn & Melusyne were at merment making grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of 8 their children; but this joye was soone tourned to grete sorowe, For as ye haue herë how thystorye saith tofore that Raymondyn promised to Melusyne that neuer on the saturday he shuld not enquire of her nor 12 desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a Saturday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn vnder-stode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court. 16 wherof Raymondyn was ryght Joyous, but sith grete myschief came to hym therfore as herafter shal be shewed. Them made Raymondyn grete apparyH & ryght noble for to receyue his brother / And shortly to 20 shewe, he came & recounted hys brother with noble company & welcommed hym honourably, & dide moche that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre / And after the deuyne seruice was don they came 24 agayn to the palleys where al thinges were redy to dyner / they wesshe their handes and syn sett them at dyner and þey were worshipfully serued / ha / las ! thesne bygan a part of the doleur & heuynes. For hys 28 brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melusyne, sayeng in this manere: 'My brother, where is my sustir Melusyne? leto her come, for moche I desyre to see her.' And Raymondyn, whiche thought none 32 euyl, ansuerd, 'she is not here at this tyme / but to morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.' But for that ansuere the Erle of Forests held not hys peas / but thus said ayen to his brother: 'Ye are my 36 brother / I owe not to hyde to you your dyshonour.
THE BROKEN VOW. [CH. XXXVII.

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

Thystorye sayth in this partye that Raymondin stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it with the paynte of his sword, wherby he might wel see
aH that was within the Chambre / and sawe melusyne within the bathe vnto her nauel, in fourme of a woman kymbyng her heere, and fro the navel downward in 4 lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayH as grete & thyk as a bareH, and so long it was that she made it to touche of tymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the roof of the chambre that was ryght hye. And when Ray-
mondyn perceyued it, weto it wel that he was ryght dolauant and sorowful & not without cause, and coude neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, 'My swete lone, now haue I betrayed you, & haue falsed my couenaunt by 12 the ryght fals admonestynge of my brother, and haue forsowrned myself toward you.' Raymondin thenne was Smyten to the herte with suche sorow & dystresse that vnethe he coude speke / and peesefullH with a heuy 16 contenaunce retourned hastily toward hys chambre, and toke some wax wherewith he went & stopped the hoff that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came agayn to the halle where he found hys brother. And 20 theynne when therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe hys heuy contenaunce / wel supposed ho that he had fond Melus-yne in some shamful sayt, and said to hym in this wyse: 'My brother, I wyst it wel / haue ye not 24 fond as I said?' Thenne euyd Raymondin to hys brother of Forest in this manerye: 21 Voyde this place, fals traytour, For through your fals reporte I haue falsed my feyth ayenst the moost feythfullest & truest lady 28 that euere was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my worldly joye & of my total destruction / by god, ye I byleued my courage, I shuld make you to dye now of an enyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & deffendeth 32 me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your way & voyde my syght, that al the grete maisters of

2 Fr.: Fuiis d'icy, faulx triste, car vous m'avez fait, par votre tresmauciais rapport, ma foy parjourer contre la plus loyalle et la meilleure des dames qui oncques naguit, apres celle qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucrist.
The earl and his people ride home as fast as they can.

Raymondin cries, 'Alas, Melusine, I have lost you for ever.'

He upbraids Fortune, that made him slay his uncle.

He repents of his foolish enterprise.

And when the Erle of Forest appereyued Raymondyn his brother that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & al his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as 4 they might toward Forests ryght pensefulf & heuy, repentyng hym of hys folysshl enterpryse; for he knew wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym nor see hym. Here I leue to speke of hym, & shal shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre wooful & angre. /
manculate your excellent fygure / helas! myn herte & al
my welc ye had heeled me clene of my first score / yl
I hawe now rewarded you theryor. Certaynly yf I
4 now lese you / none other choys is to me / but to take
myn vtermost exiH there as neuer after no man lyuyng
shall see me.'

Here sayeth thistorye, that in suche doleur & be-

8 wayHinges abode raymondyn al that nyght tyl it
was day light. And as sone as aurora might be per-
c eyued, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre / and whan Raymondyn here† her come he made sem-
12 blaut of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al
naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Ray-
mondyn to sighe as he that felt grete doleur at herte / and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyed,
16 sayeng in this wyse: 'My lord, what ey leth you, be ye
 syke?' . And whan Raymondyn sawe that she of none
other jing spake, he supposed that she nothing had
knowen of this faytte / but for nought he byl yned soo,
20 For she wysel wel that he had not entamed† nor shewed
the matero to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that
tyme & made no semblaut thereof / wherfore he was
right Joyous, and answered to her: 'Madame, I haue be
24 somewhat euyl at ease & haue had an axez 2 in maner
of a contynue.' 'My lord,' said Melusyne, 'abasshe you
not, For yf it plese god ye shal soone be hole.' And
thenne he that was right joyous said to her,'By my
28 feyth, swete loue, I fele me wel at ease for your
commiyng' / and she said, 'I am perof glad' / and
whan tyme requyred they roos and went to here masse / and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode
32 Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the
morn she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where
she bylded a fortresse.  3 And here seaceth thistorye of
her / and returneth to speke of geffray.

2 Fr. ung peu de fièvre en manière de continue.
Here sayth thy story, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued with gret joye / and he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geant was, & said: 'Sire, wete it / that ye blyeue vs, it shal suffyse you to haue sene the toure, & shal retourne with vs; For as touching our personnes, we shall goo 8 no neer but horryble geant, algaif you to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weyght of fyn gold.' 'By my feyth, sires,' said geffray, 'I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye haue brought me.'

Geffray themne, as thy story saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded hys swerdl about hym, & remounted on horsback; and after toke hys shekl, & heng it tofore hys brest; & 16 toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadeh; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hys neck behynd; and syn asked hys spere / and thenne said to his tene knights, in this manere: 20 'Fayre lordes, abyde me in this valey / and ye god graunte me the vetyory of the geant, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.' And they were dolaunt that he 24 wold not suffre them to go with hym, and bade hym farweh, prayeng god for hys good spede. Thenne departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne; and anoone cam to the first gate of the 28 toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to mernayH. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche played hym the facion and byldyng of 32 hit; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed with a hye voys, sayeng in this manere: 'honyys sone & fals geaunt,

1 hys swerd twice in MS.
côme spéke with me! For I bryng to the / the syluer that the people of my lord, my fader, owen to the.' And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geaut
4 awacked; & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray, armed of al pyces, mounted vpon a coursuer, that held hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a lowde voyce, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By 8 my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring with me the trybut that thou hast owerset to vpon the people of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.'

12 Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was nygh aragid & mad†, that of one knight alone was so bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduysed 16 hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of grete valyaunce. Thenne the geaut armed hymself, and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stèle, & came to 20 the brydge, and lete it faH; & came in the bassecourt, & demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that art so bold to come hither?' And geffray answerd, in this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete tooth, some 24 to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that commeth hither to chalenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest throug thy grete pryde, of my lord mY faders peple.' Thenne whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to 28 hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poune fele, for thy grete hardynes & the grete enterprise † of thyn herte, I haue pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtoysye / that is, that thou retourne lyghtly to make thy warre in 32 other place; For wete thou wel, yf now with the were V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet coudest thou not endure and withstand my puyssance. but for pyte that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I 36 suppose thou art, I gyue the lycence & congë to

who comes to his window and asks what he wants.

Geffray answers he bears him his tribute for his misdoings.

The giant is enraged;

he arms and descends to the basse-court, and again asks who Geffray is.

He answers that he is the son of Raymondyn, and has come to challenge the tribute he has heretofore exacted.

Guedon laughs at him,

1 fol. 177 b.

and tells him to go hâck, because V. C like Geffray could not overcome him.
He says he will remit the tribute for a year.

Geffray is sorrowful that the giant appraises him at so little.

He taunts Guedon that he is afraid;

but the giant still laughs at him.

Geffray thereupon spurs his horse and rides against Guedon.

Geffray knocks him down. 1 fol. 178.

The giant rises, and smites Geffray's horse.

Geffray dismounts and approaches the giant with sword drawn. The giant comes against him, and raises his scythe to smite Geffray.

retourne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lightly hens / and for loue of the I shal forguye to thy faders peple the payement of a hoH yere of the trybut that they owe me.' Thenne when geffray with the grete 4 toth herk that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that as nought he preysed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt, and said to hym in this wyse: 'Meschaunt creature, thou alredy forest me mochI / I wyl wel thou wete that 8 of thy curtoysy I sett nought by, For thus spekest thou for the grete feer that thou hast of my toeth. but wete þou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place vnto that tyme I haue separed the lyf fro thy body / 12 and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I deffye ye.' And when the geaunt herk hym, he made semblant of lawging', sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, 16 thou commest in to batayH, & thou mayst not endure one stroke of me only, without I felle the to þe erthe.' And themne geffray, without ony more sayeng', smote hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & 20 dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors might ranne; and strak hym throug the brest by suche strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely vpward. 1but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete 24 yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behynd wth hys sythe of fyn stele / and when geffray wyst it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward the geaunt, the swerd drawn. and themne came the 28 geaunt toward hym, holding his sythe in his hande: where as was grete batayH.

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande. 32

1 thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot tofore the geaunt, that held his sype in his fyst, & supposed to haue Smyte geffray / but he bare
it vp / & with that, he smote with his sword vpnon the hafte\(^1\) of the geaunt sythe, that it feH in two pyces. And themne the geaunt toke his flayel of yron, & gaf 4 geffray a grete buffet vpnon his bassynet, wherwith he was almost astonyed. Thenne came 2 Geffray toward hys hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke hys clubbe of yron, that hyng at tharsons of hys sadeH, & lightly 8 tourned toward the geaunt, that haunced hys flayel, supposyng to dyscharge it vp non gessray / but geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with hys clubbe suche a stroke vpnon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the 12 geantis handes. And themne the geaunt, full of yre, put hys hand in hys bosom, where were thre hammers of yron; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radeur, that if geffray had not receyued that strok vpnon his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd therwith / by the force wherof hys clubbe flouge out of hys handes: and the geaunt toke it vp / but geffray drew lightly his sword, & came to the geaunt, that supposed to haue 20 smyte geffray with the cluble of stele on the head / but geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the geaunt fayllle; & the stroke feH to therth, by the force wherof the head of the clubbe entred in to the grounde 24 a large foot deep. And thenne geffray smote the geaunt vpnon the ryght arme with hys sword, in suche vyolence, & hys swerde was so sharp & trenaunt, that he made it to flygh frou hys body to the erthe. Themne was pe 28 geant gretly abasshed, when he sawe thus his arme lost / notwithstanding, he haunced his sword with hys other hand, & trowed to haue smyte geffray at herte / but geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the geaunt 32 vpnon the legge, vnnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Themne the geaunt fell, & gaf suche an horryble crye, that al the valey sownde perof, so that they that bode for geffray, herH it / but they

\(^1\) Fr. manche, a haft or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.
knew not the certayn what it was / but 1 always they had grete meruayl of that horryble sowne. Thenngeffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after cutte of his heed / and syn toke his horne, & blew it ; 4 Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here it / and so dide other that were of the countrie / and by pat they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they gaaf lawdyng to our lord god deuoutely. and immediatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the place, where they fonde geffray, that said to them of the Countrie / ‘this fals traytowr geauwt shal neuer more patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath 12 neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.’ And when they perceyued the body & the heed of the geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to 16 geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue putte hym self in so grete parel tassayU suche a dyueH / ‘By my feyth,‘ said geffray, ‘the parel is past. For, fayre lordes, I wyl that ye knowe / thing 20 neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In every thing most be bygynnyng; tofore the ende commeth.’

3 Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Maylezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder.

Moche were thenne the knightes abasshed, as thistorye reherceth, of this that geffray had 28 slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And the tydinges therof were spred in the Countrie, & in the marches about. And also geffray sent, by two of hys knightes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And 32 in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the Countrie, where as he was gretly fested, & receyued
with grete joye, & presented with gret ryches. Here I
shal lene to speake of hym / & shal shew you of Froy-
mond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader
and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be
professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by
the consentement of hys fader, & of his moder;
Wherof thabbot & all convent was ryght joyous.
And wete it wel, there were within the place to the
nombre of an hondred monks. And yf they had
themne grete joye of -Froymonds professyon / it was
afterward reuersed in to grete doleur / as ye shal here
herafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thrughe the
faytte of Froymond, For he was right deuoute, & ledd
a reylingous lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to
the place a merueyllous auenture. It is trouth that the
two forsaid knightes that geffray sent vnto hys fader
with the head of the geant, rode tyl they came to
merment, wher they found Raymondin, & presented
hym with the head of the geaunt, wherof he was joyful.
And the heed was moche loked on / & ecury man
meruaylled how geffray durst assay hym. And themne
Raymondin sent a lettre to geffray, how Froymond, his
brother, was professed monke at thabbay of maylleses.
That message was the cause of the trystefull
doelur of the departyng of his wyf, wherof neuer
after he nor she had hertly joye, as ye shal here her-
after. Trouth it was that Raymondin gaaf themne
grete yeftes to the two knightes, and deluwered them
the lettre ; and sayd that they shulde grete wel geffray,
& that they shulde bere the heed of the geaunt to
Melusyne, that was at Nyort : For it was not ferre out
of theire way. Themne so departed the two knightes,
& held on theire way tyl they came to nyort, where
they fonde their lady ; the whiche they salued, &
presented her with the heed of the geaunt. Wherof
she was ryght joyous, and sent it to Rochelle, and was
Froimond prays
his father and
mother to
allow him to
become a monk
at Maylleses,
1 fol. 150 a.
They consent;
he is shorn.
The abbot is

glad,
but Froimond's
profession causes
them much pain
afterward.
The knights
bring Raymondin
the giant's head.
He sends back
word to Geffray
how Froimond
was professed
monk.
He gives the
knights gifts,
and bide them
take the head to
Melusyne.
She has it set upon a spear at a gate of Rochelle.

There was a giant in Northumberland named Grymauld, xvii. foot high.

He lived at Brombelyn, and destroyed the country for nine leagues round.

They hear in Northumberland of Geffray's deed, and resolve to ask him to deliver them from Grymauld.

Eight noble persons are sent to Geffray; 2 fol. 181.

And when he understands their message he promises to help them.

Grymauld, the Northumbrian giant. [CH. XXXIX.]
sotte upon a spear at the gate toward guyenne. And Melusyne gaf the two knightes ryche yeftes; and after that toke their leue, and went toward the tour of mountyouet,1 where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. 4 And here cesseth thystory, & sheweth other matere. / Thystory sayth that the tydyng was aneone spread thruge the Countre, how geffray with the grete tooth slough the gaunt gudon in batayl, and all they 8 that herde therof were gretly abasshed. And for that tymeg regned in northomberland a gaunt that hyght Grymauld, & was the moost cruel that euer man sawe, For he was xvii foot of heyght / and that same grete 12 dyue held hym nygh a mountayne called Brombelyn / and wete it wel for trouth he had dystroyed all the Countre about in so moche that there ne durst no personne inhabyte nygh hym by eyght or nene leghes / & 16 so all the Countre was desert & wyldernes. It befeH that in Northomberland came tydynges how geffray with the grete tooth had slayn the gaunt gudon. Wherfore they of the same Countrey made a grete 20 counseH, that they shuld sende to geffray, & profre hym so he wold deluyere them of the cruel murderer grymaulde, euer yere during hym lyf he shuld haue x. M' besans of gold; & yf he hath yssue male of hys 24 body they to possess the said annuel rente of x. M' besans / and yf he hath a daughter to hym heyre, we to be quyte after his decease of our sayd trybute. Wheresupon they choose eyght of pe moost noble personnes 28 of theire Countre, & sent hem in ambaxade toward geffray / the whiche departed & came to Mountyouet, where they fonde geffray, to 2 whom they proposed the cause of theire commynge. And thanne whan geffray 32 vnderstode it / heanswered nobly: 'Fayre lordes, I wyl no refuse your demande, how be it I shuld haue goon thither to fyght with that gaunt, For I herde tydynges

1 Fr. Monjouet.
of hym tofore your commyng; for the pyte that I haue of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe 4 with you without ony lenger delay / and by the help of god I suppose texille the geaunt.' And pey thenne gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymond cam in garande toward geffray.

Thenne came the two knyghtes that he had sent toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably, and recounted hym the noble chere that they had 12 hadd of hys fader & of his moder, whiche 1 grete hym wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the lettre from hys fader, which geffray toke & opened it / the tenour 16 of whiche made mence how Froymond his brother was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray vnderstood it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel & cruel semblaunt that there ne was so hardly that durst 20 abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the place except the two knyghtes and the ambaxatours of northomberland. /

In this party sheweth this historie, that whan geffray knew the tydnyges of Froymonds professyon he was so daulaunt that almost he went fro his wyt. And weto it wel that thenne he semy bettre to be araged & madd than man with rayson. And he said in this 28 wyse: 'how deueh! had not my fader & my moder y nogh for to entretayn & kepe the state of Froymond my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of the land? / and not to haue made hym a monke / by god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente them perof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my fader, & haue drawen Froymond with them for to fare

The knights salute Geffray, and tell him of the noble cheer they had at his father's. 

They deliver the letter which tells how Froymond had professed himself monk.

Geffray waxes wroth at the news.

He seems to be mad,

and declares that the monks shall repent of their guile and their greed.
Geffray goes to the convent of Mailleses. [CH. XL.

He bettre by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be shorne monke with them.' And thenne he said to the 4 bassade of Northomberland: 'Sires, ye muste sojourne a while & abyde my retourne hither / For I must goo to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And they that knewe hys wrathe & anger ansered: 'My 8 lord, so shal we doo with a good wyll.' Thenne made gevfray his ten knyghtes to mounte on horsback / and also he armèd hym and lept on hys hors / & syn departed 1 fro Mountyoued, esprysed with grete yre ayenst 12 the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tymé the said abbot & hys monkés were in Chapitre. And gevfray thanne come to the place, entred, the swercé girl about hym, in to the Chapitre. And whan he 16 perceyued thabbot & hys monkés, he said al on hye to them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardynes to haue enchaunted my brother, in so moche that througe your false & subtyl langage haue shorne hym 20 monke / by the toeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'Helas! my lord,' said thabbot, 'for the loue of god haue mercy on vs / and suffre you to be enfoormed of the trouth & 24 rayson, For on my Creator, I nor none of vs aH counselled hym neuer therto.' Thenne came Froymont foorth, that trowed wel to haue peased the yre of gevfray hys brother / and þus said: 'My 2 dere, dere 28 brother / by the body & sole which I haue gyuen to god, here is no persone, nor within this place that euery spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I haue it doon of myn owne free wylle & through deuo-32 cion.' 'By my soole,' said gevfray; 'so shal thou be therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be wytted 3 me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

2 By in MS. (Fr. Mon.) 3 Fr. reprouche.
CH. XLI.] GEFFRAY BURNS THE MONKS ALIVE.

with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, &
shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot &
the monkes therynne / and incontynent he made al
4 the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe
ynouge al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware
he shuld brenne them aH therynne, & that none shuld
escape. Thenne came the ten knightes forth tofore
8 geffray, whiche blamed hym of pat horryble saytte /
sayeng: ‘that Froymond, his broper, was in good
purpos, & that ha[l]ly thrugh hys 1 prayers & good
dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be
12 asswaged & holpen.’ ‘By the toeth of god,’ sayd
thenne geffray, ‘nother he nor none monke in this
place shal never syng masse nor say prayer, but they
shal aH be bruled & brent.’ Thenne departed the x
16 knights from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not
be coulplable of that merueyllous werke.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete
toeth fyred thabbe of Mayllezes, & brent
20 bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partye, sayth thyistorye, that Geffray anoon
after that the ten knightes were departed fro hym, he
toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the
24 fyre in the strawe aH about the Chapter, where as were
in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother
Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For
as soone as 2 the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to
28 crye piteously, & to make better & doulorous bewayll-
lynges, but al that preuaylled them nought. What
shuld I make long compite? Wel it is trouth, that all
the monkes were brent / and wel the half of the said
32 Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he
came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to
the feldes he retourned hys hors, & beheld toward

He goes out of
the chapter, closes all the
monks inside, and has wood
and straw brought, and
swears he will
burn them.

His knights re-
monstrate with
him,
1 fol. 182 b.

and leave him
because they will
not be culpable
of such a deed.

Geffray takes fire
from a church
lamp and lights
the straw.

2 fol. 183.

The monks cry
bitterly when
they see the fire.

They are all
burnt, and half
of the abbey.
thabbaye / & perceuyng that grete myschief & the
dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd? & ab-
homynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the
herte of hym, and bygan to syghe and bewayH byttirly / 4
sayeng vnto hym self in this wyse: 'helas! fals, wycked,
& vntrue prodytour1 & enemy of god / wildest thou
that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doe to
the true seruauntes of god?/ nay certayn.' And thus 8
blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght
thinke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he themne
toke / & wel I bylye that he had slayn hym self with
hys owne swerde yf yt themne had not fortunned that 12
hys ten knightes cam to hym there / one of the whiche
bygan to hym saye / 'ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this
reproper't. And when geffray vnderstode hym / he
thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned 16
not anserue to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the
toure of Mountyonet, that with grete peyne myght his
men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came
thither / And thenne made his apparayH for to goo 20
with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte
hym / & toke with hym but his x knightes. And
here seaceth thystorye of hym, & speketh of Ray-
mondin his fader /

Here sayth thistory, that a messager came toward
Raymondin at merment that came fro mail-
leses,2 and after hys obeyssance recounted to Raymon-
dyn ryght pyteous tydynges, sayeng to hym in this 28
manere: 'My lord, wel it is trouth, that geffray with
the great toth your son hath take so grete malencolye
& suche dueyl of the professyon of your son Froymond
that he is com to mayleses, & there he hath fyred the 32
Abbay / & within the chapter brent & bruled all the
monkes, pryour, & Abbot.' 'What sayst thou?' sayd
than Raymondyn / 'that may not be / I can not beleue

1 Fr. proditeur.
it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messager, 'it is
trouth that I telle you; & moreruer, your son Freym-
mond is brent & deed with them / and ye byleue
me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & ye ye
fynde otherwise than I saye, lete me be hanged ther-
fore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfull & heuy mounted
foorthwith on horsbakk, & toke hys way toward mayl-
ses as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys
men, who pat myght folowed hym / and he neuer
seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the mes-
sager said, & sawe the grete doleur & myschief that
geffray had don. Wherof he toke suche yre & anger
at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,'
sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynnyng
of hys prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree
of high honour more than ony prynce son lyuyng at
this day / and now thurgh thy grete cruelte thou shalt
be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayettes, &
abomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horryble
dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god,
I byleue it is but fantasme or spyryt werke of this
woman / and as I trowe she never bare no child that
shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she
brought none but that it hath some strange token / see
I not the horryblenes of her son called Horryble, that
passed not vii yere of age when he slew two squyers of
myne / and or euer he was thre yere old he made dye
two gentyl women his nourryces, thurgh hys byttyng of
theire pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that
saturday, when my brother of Forestz to me brought
euyl tydyynes of her / in fourme of a serpent fro the
nauel downward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn /
it is som spyryt, som fantasme or Illusyon that thus
hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her /
she know & coude reherce all my fortune & auenture.'

But the messen-
ger says it is the
truth, and that
Froymond was
burt with them.

Raymondyn rides
to Maillesses,

and when he sees
the mischief

he complains of
Geffray;

and how he will
be hated for his
cruelty.

He cries that he
believes it is
spirit work.

He complains
that Melusine
ever bore a
perfect child,
and of the
horribleness of
her son Horrible.

He speaks of
seeing Melusine
half woman, half
serpent, on a
Saturday,

and says he
believes her to
be a spirit.
In this partye, sayth thy storye, that Raymondyn, penseful and wroth ouer meruayllously, departed fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Merment. And when he was come thither, he alghted, & went in to 4 hys chambre, where as he layed hym vpon a bed / and there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewaylynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but that it had wepte to here hym. Thezne were al the 8 barons ryght dolaunt / and whan they sawe that they myght not gyue none allegance to hys dolour, they toke CounseyH that they shuld lete it wete to theire lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and 12 thither they sent a messanger, to recounte to her al the mater of the fayt. Halas! fuH euyl dide they, For they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne in theyre doluer & myserie. Now bygynneth theire 16 hard & bytter departeyng; ech cro other, whiche dured to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messager thezne rode ty1 he came to Nyort, & made his 20 obeyssaunce, & syn delyuered the lettres to his lady: 1 the whiche she toke, & opened it. And whan she vnderstode the tenour of the lettres, she was ryght heuy & dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondyn 24 than for ony other thing; For she sawe wel that the meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse be as for that tyme present. She thezne made come all her peuple & aray, and sent for many ladyes & 28 damysselles, for to hold her companye / and so departed fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she soiourned by the space of thre dayes / and euer she was of symple & heuy contenance / and went al about 32 in the place, vp & doun, here & there / gyuyng ofte syghes so grete that it was meruaylle & pyteous to here / And the hystorye & cronyle, whiche I blyenye be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the doluer & 36
sorrow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I byleue it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the 4 grete myschief that was befel throught the sayttes of geffray, to thabbay of maylleses / and also for the wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melusyne thenne, on the IIIde day, departed fro Lusynen, & came to merment wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoyselles, as tofore I haue sayd. And thenne the barons of the land, that were there assembled for to haue recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how they by no wyse conde make Raymondyn to leue hys dolour. 'Wel,' sayd she / 'doubte you no; For, by the grace of god, he shalbe soone recomforted.'

Melusyne, the good lady, that thenne was wel acompanyed of many ladyes & noble damoyselles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to his Chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that were commodyous & delectables, and also to the feldes toward Lusynen. Thenne whan she sawe Raymondin, humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but thenne he was so dolaunt & replenyshed with yre, that he to her answerd neuer a word / and thenne she toke the word, & sayd : 'My lord, grete symplesnes & foly it is to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a prynce / you thus to maynten & make suche sorrowe of that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche may not be amended nor remedied / ye argue ayenst the playsire & wytt of the Creatour, whiche aH thinges created, & shal vnndo at al tymes when it playse hym, by suche manere wyse aftir his playsire. Wete it that there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that is more piteable & mysericordyous when the synnar repenteth hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &
and that God had allowed Geffray so to do because of the sins of the monks.

She says they have enough to rebuild the abbey, and to endow it richer than it was before,

and she hopes that Geffray will amend his life.

Though Raymondin knows she speaks wisely, he is so full of anger that in a cruel voice he cries,

'Go hence, false serpent! Thou and thy children are but phantoms.

How can the dead have life again?

Froimond, your only perfect child, by devilish art has suffered death.'
they that are foursenyd with yre obeye the comandements of the prynces of helle. And perfor, thorryble & cruel geffray commanded of his masters, alle the 4 deuelles of helle, hath doon that abhomynable & hydouse forsaytte, as to brenne hys owne propre brother & the monkes, that had not deserved deth.' Thenne when melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche 8 douleur at herte, that foorthwzt she felt in a swoune down to therthe, & was half an oure long that nother aspyraczon nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but as she had be deed. And themne was Raymondyn 12 sorowfuller & more wroth than eu'r he was tofore, For themne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make grete dueyll, & moche repented hym of that he had sayd / but it was for nought, For it was to late / And 16 themne the baronnye of the lam?, & the ladies & damoy- selles were ryght sorry & dolaunt, and toke vp the lady, & layed her on a bed / and so mocho they dide, that she came ayen to her self. And when she myght 20 speke, she loked on Raymondyn pyteously, and said /

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn.

24 'Ha / a Raymondyn / the day that first tyme I sawe the was for me ryght doulourous and vnhappy / in an euyl heure sawe I eu'r thy coynted body, thy faczon, & thy fayre fygure / euyl I dyde to 28 desire & coueyto thy beaute, whan thou so falsly hast betrayed me / how wel thou art forswn toward me, whan thou puttest thy self in payne to see me / but for this, that thou haddest not yet dyscovered nor shewed 32 to no man nor woman, myn herto forgafe 2 the / and no mencion I neuer shuld have had made therof to the /

1 Fr. enforceyns.
Our love is now turned to hate.

If you had kept your oath, I was to be exempt from torment.

I should have been buried at Lusignan, and my anniversary would have been devoutly kept. But now my fate is altered.

I must suffer grievous penitence till doomsday.

Melusine shows such grief that all pity her.

The heart of Raymond is nearly broken by her grief.

He kneels to Melusine and beseeches her pardon.

Melusine calls on God to forgive him.

and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende / now is our loue tourned in hate, doleur & hardnes / oure solace, playsire & joye ben reuersed in byttir teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is 4 converted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence / Halas, my frend! ye thou haddest not falsed thy feythe & thyn othe, I was putte & exempted from ait peyne & torment, & shuld haue had al my ryghtee, & 8 hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; & shuld haue be buryed, aftir my lyf naturel expired, within the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn obsequye & afterward my annuyersary shuld haue be 12 honourably & devoutely don / but now I am, thrughe thyn owne dede, ouerthrown & ayen reuersed in the greuouse and obscure penyteyne, where long tyme I haue be in, by myn auenture: & thus I muste suffre & bere 16 it, vnto the day of domme / & al through thy falsed / but I beseech god to pardon me.' Melusyne began thenne to make suche doleur, that none was there that sawe her but he wept for pyte. And when Ray-20 mondyn sawe her douleur & heuynes, almost hys herte brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother her, nor sawe, nor coude hold contenance. /

Thystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; 24 and, for trouth, the true cronykle testyfeth that neuer no man suffred so grete dolour, without of his lyf expired. but when he was a lytel come to hys mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeld doun 28 on hys knees, & joyntly1 handes, thus bygan he to saye: 'My dere lady & my frend, my wele, my hoop, & myn honour, I beseeche & pray you that it playse you to pardonne me, & that ye wyl abyde with me.' 'My 32 sweete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habund-ance of teerys fallyng fro hys eyen / he that is the very forgyuer, creatour & omnipotent, forgyue you your

1 Fr. joiningist.
CH. XLIV.] MELUSINE FORETELLS THE FATE OF RAYMONDIN'S HEIRS. 317

forfaytte; For as touching myself, I forguye & pardonne you with al my very herto / but as to myn abydyng with you ony more / it is Impossible / for the veray jugge & almighty god wold neuer suffre me to doo soo.'

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swnoune.

8 And with tho wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymondyn, her lord / and thenne, as they wold haue embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell both at ones in a swnoune, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete douleur: Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng in bis manere: 'Ha, fals Fortune! We shal lese this day pe best lady that euer gouerned ony land / the moost sage / most humble / moost charytably & curteys of aH other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented & bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habundance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne returned Melusyne to her self out of swnouyng, and herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronnye made for her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym, 24 in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manere /

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament. /

'My lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible is my lenger taryng with you; Wherfore lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye. Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel expired, no man shal not empoesse nor hold your land so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres & successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal
Your heirs through their folly shall lose their inheritance.

I charge you to put Horrible to death.'

Raymondin asks Melusine to stay with him,

but she says that it cannot be done.

She then kisses him tenderly and bids him adieu.

be ouerthrown & subdued, through their folly, from their honour & from their right heirship, but doubt not you. For I shall help you during the course of your life naturel / and putte not Geffray, our son, & fro your Court / he is your son, & he shall preue a noble & valiant man. Also we have two yong children male, Raymond & Theoderyk / of them I shall take good heed / how be it, after my departing / that right 8 soone shall be / ye shall neuer see me in no womans fourme. And I wyl & bequeethe to theoderyk, yongest of us our children, the lordships with al thappurtenances of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port 12 there / And Raymond shall be Erle of Forestz / and as touching Geffray, he shall wel purveye for hym self.' Theme drew she Raymondyn & hys Coussey apart, & sayd to them in this wyse: 'As touching our sONE, 16 that men calle Horrible, that hath thre eyn / wete it for certayn, yf he be lefte aluye / neuer man dice, nor neuer shall doo, so grete dommage as he shall. Wherefore I pray & also charge you that, anoone after my 20 departing, he be put to deth; For yf ye doo not soo / his lyf shall fuH dere be bought, & neuer ye dice so grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymondyn, 'there shall be no favte of it / but, for goddis lone, haue pyte 24 on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to hym: 'My swete frenk, yf it were possyble / soo wold I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that my departing fro you is more gryeous & doubtous a 28 thousand tymes to me than to you / but it is the wyH & playseire of hym that can do & vndoo al things.'

and, with these wordes, she embrase & kyssed hym fuH tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, my owne lord & 32 husband; Adieu, myn herte, & al myn joye; Farwel, my loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I shal feed myn eyn with the syght of the / but pyte I haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but 36
in horryble figure / and therwith she leapt vpon the windowe that was toward the feldes & gardyns ayenst Lusynen. /  

4 Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

1 In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, she 8 toke leve sore wepyng; and her commanded to all the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles that were present / and after said to Raymondyn: 'here be two rynges of gold that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouthe that 12 as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer be dyscomfyted in plee nor in batayH, yf they haue good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by 16 no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges. And after bygan the lady to make pyteows regrets and greuouse syghynges, beholdyng Raymondyn right pyteously / And they that were there wept alway 2so ten- 20 derly that eueryche of them had grete pyte, they syghyng full pyteously. Thenne Melusyne in her la- mentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe hauyng respeczon toward Lusynen, said in this wyse, 24 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicite / yf god had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had be full happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / & 28 men were redy to fulfylle my commandements / & now not able to be allowed a symple servaunt / but assygned to horryble peynes & tourments vnto the day of fynal judgement. And al they that myght come 32 to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro this tyme froorth they shal dysdayne me & be fereful of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playysirs that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulaciones
MELUSINE TRANSFORMED INTO A SERPENT. [CH. XLVI.

& grievous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say with a hye voyce: 'Adieu, my lustis & playsirs / Far wel, my lord / barons / ladies, & damoyselles, and I beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche- sauf to pray to the good lord? deuotely for me / that it playse hym to mynusshe my dolorous peyne / not-withstanding I wyl lete you knowe what I am & who was my fader, to thentent that ye reproche not my 8 children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman, and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the fayry / and that they are the children of the doughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye and of pe queene Pressyne, and that 12 we be thre sustirs pat by predestinacion are predestynate to suffre & bere grievous penaunces, and of this mater e I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therwith she said: 'farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not 16 to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue you said? / but thinke of your two sones Raymond & Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe, & therwith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, 20 trans^gured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of the wyndowe apereth at this day thremprynte of her foote serpentous. Thenne encreaced the lamentable 24 sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladies, & damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuynes aboue al other / And foorthwith they loked out of the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And 28 the noble Melusyne so transffygured, as it is aforesaid, flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed foreby the wyndow, gyuyng at euercbe tyme an horrible cry & pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for 32 pyte. For they perceyued wel that loth she was to departe fro the place, & that it was by constraynte. And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makyng in thayer by her furyousnes suche horryble crye & 36

She tells that her father was

Elinas, King of Albany, and her mother Queen Pressine; and that she is one of three sisters.

She gives a sore sigh, and becomes like a great serpent; 1 fol. 189.

and to this day her serpent’s footprint is on the base-stone of the window.

The grief of Raymondin and his people increases.

They see Melusine fly three times about the place, uttering horrible cries;

then she makes her way to Lusig- nan, moaning so
nose that it semed al thayre to be replete with thundre & tempeste. /

Thus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a serpent, flyeng in thayre toward Lusynen / & not so lygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her / and she was her a myle in thayre, For she made suche nose that al the peple was abasshed. And so she flies through Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cry- eng so pytously & lamentably, lyke the voyce of a Mermayde. Wherof they of the Fortresse & of the toun were grety abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld think, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the voyce of a woman pat cam fro the serpent. And whan she had flouge about the Fortresse thre tymes she lyghted so sodaynly & horrybly vpon the toure called 16 poterne, bryngyng with her such thundre & tempeste, that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the toun shuld haue sonk and falt / & therwith they lost the syght of her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn, 1 that he sent thither to hauie tydynes of her / to whom was shewed how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that they had had of her / and the messagers returned 24 toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And theyne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hye sorowe. And the tydynes were known in the Countre, the pouere peuple made grete lamentacion & sorowe, & 28 wysshed her ayen with pytous syghes, For she had doo them grete good. And theynse bygan thoesequyes of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be 32 doon for her almesses & prayers throug al his land.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble.
MELUSINE'S MOTHERLY DEVOTION. [CH. XLVIII.

The barons reminded Raymondyn of Melusine's command about Horrible, He bids them fulfil her order, Horrible is led to a cave and suffocated. He is buried at Neufrnoustier.

Raymondyn goes to Lusignan, and brings his children Raymond and Theodore. Melusine visits them every day.

They grow faster than other children.

Raymondyn when he hears of her coming, hopes to have her back, but in vain.

Raymondyn is so woful that he never laughs.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horryble this that his moder hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Ray- mondyn to them ansuerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.' And then they went and toke by fayre wordes this Horryble / & led hym in to a caue. For yf he had had warnyng of their purpos they shuld not haue had take hym without grete peye. And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey. And when he was deed they buryed hym honourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier.

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, Raymond & theodoryke / and said that he shuld neuer entre ayen in to the place wher he had lost his wyf. And wete it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and casd them as she coude / and wel sawe the nouryees that, who durst no worl speke. And more encresed the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wherof the people had grete mercuayH. but whan Raymondyn knew it by the nouryees that melusyne came ther euery nyght to vysyte her children / relesed his sorowe / trustyng to haue her ayen / but that thoughte was for nought, For neuer 28 after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And wete it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that 32 there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and
hated greatly Geffray with the grotë toth / and ye 
myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystered 
hym. But here seaceth the hystorye of hym And speketh 
of Geffray. / 

The hystorye sayth, that Geffray rode so long that he 
came in Northumberland with the ambaxatours 
and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And when the barons 
of the Countre vnderstoak his cummyng; they cam ayenst 
hym honourably, & receyued hym solemnly, sayeng: 
‘ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde 
& preyse our lord god, For without it be by you & 
12 throught your prowes we may not be delyuered of the 
horryble geyuant and meruyllous murdrer, Grymauld, 
by whom aH this countre is dysterayed.’ 
The mane an- 
suerde Geffray to them; ‘And how may ye knowe that 
16 by me ye may be quytte & delyuered of hym?’ to 
whom they answered, ‘My lord, the sage astronomyens 
haue said to vs that the geyuant grumauld 1may not dey 
but by your dede of armes / and also we knowe for 
20 certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherfore ye ye go to 
hym, and that ye ye telle hym your name ye shall not 
kepe hym, but he shall you escape.’ 

Thenne sayd 
Geffray to the barons, ‘Sire, lede me toward the place 
24 where I may finde hym, For grotë desyre I haue to see 
hym.’ And Immedyatly they toke hym two knyghtes 
of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but 
that one of them said to that other pat they shuld not 
28 approche al to nygh grumauld / and that they myght 
not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vycotry of hym. 
And themane geffray toke leue of the barons and de- 
parted, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they 
32 rode tyll they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. 

Thenne 
sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, ‘My lord, yonder ye 
may see the montayne where he holdeth hym / & this 
way shal lede you thither without ony fayH, For cer- 
36 taynyly he is euery at yonder trees vpon that montayne
where Grymauld is to be found. Here they leave him for fear of hurt. Geffray tells them that it is well he has not trusted to their aid.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may ye goo thither, yf it playse you, For as touching our personnes we wyl goo no ferper that way.’ And geffray answered to them in this manere, ‘Yf I had come vpon thaffyauunce of your ayde I had faylled therof at this tyme,’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd one of them, ‘ye say trouth.’ Thenne came they to the foot of the hyH / and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn 8 remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys brest, and toke his spere, and theynne he said to the two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof 12 shuld befaH. And they sayd that so shuld they doe.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete toeth rane ayenst the geaunt & over-threw hym with hys spere./

In this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne, so that he approched nygh the trees where as he apperceyued the geaunt fat satte vndernethe them. but 20 assoone as he sawe geffray he mercuryld gretly how one knyght alone had the hardynes to haue dare come toward hym, and theynne he thought in hym self that he cam to treate with hym for som patyse or for 24 som peas, but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and toke an horrrible grete Clubbe in hys handes, which ony man had ynoough to dou to lyft it vp fro the 28 ground. 1 And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed with a hye voys, ‘What art thou that darest come so boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther 32 wold hawe the deed.’ And geffray cryed to hym, ‘I defye the / defend thou thy self yf thou canst.’ And
with these wordes Geffray couched hys spere & sporyd hys hors and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so myghtily that he ouerthrow hym, the legges vpward to 4 the ground / and anoon Geffray descendid fro his hors, feeryng that the geaunt shulde slee hym vndre hym, and fasted it by pe brydel at a tree / & pushsed his sheld behynd, and toke his good trenechaunt swerd; 8 For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to abyde the stroke of the geauntes Clubbe. And thenne cam the geaunt toward Geffray, but almost he coude not perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of persone to 12 the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou that so valyantly hast ouerthrawn me? / by mahomick I shal never haue honour but I auenge me.' And 16 thenne Geffray answerde to hym, 'I am Geffray with the grete tooth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen.' And whan the geaunt vnderstod hym, he was ryght dolaunt, For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with 20 geffrayes handes. not that withstanding he answerte to hym, 'I knowe the wel ynough. thou sloug that other day my Cousin Guedon in Garando, al the deuelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And 24 geffray hym answerte, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the yf I may.' And whan the geaunt vnnderstod it, he haunced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon geffrayes heede, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray 28 smote hym with his swerde vpon the sholdor. 1 For he myght not reche to his heede, & cutte the haulte piece of his harneys, and made his swerd to entro in his flesshe wel a palme deep, and thenne the blood felt 32 doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to geffray / 'cursed be that arme that by suche strengthe can smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd'. 36 For neuer blood was drawen out of my body of no and rushes forward and overthrowes him. Geffray dismounts, fastens his horse to a tree, and takes his sword and shield. The giant approaches Geffray, but can hardly see him. He asks Geffray who he is. Geffray answers that he is the son of Raymondin of Lusignan. The giant is sad at this news, because he knows that Geffray alone can slay him. The giant says he knows him as the slayer of Guedon. Geffray tells the giant that he will kill him too. The giant raises his club, but misses Geffray. 1 fol. 192. Geffray wounds the giant, who curses Geffray's arm,
manere wepen al were it nener so good.' And themne with his clubbe he wend to have smyte geffray / but geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf he had atteyneyd hym he had slayn hym / but god, on 4 whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but or euuer the geaunt myght have hauen his Clubbe, 8 geffray smote on it with his sword by suche strengthe that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray 12 followed hym.

Themne was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed when he sawe his Clubbe pus cutte lyeng on the grounde, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. 16 Themne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost geffray was astonyed therwith al. but geffray, corageus & hardy, smote the geant vpon the yye, so that 20 he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne whan the geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holding his sword, followed hym / and the geaunt entred into 24 a holt within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was abasshed /. Thenne came geffray 2 to the holt and loked in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he 28 retourned and toke & mounted ayen vpon his hors, and descended into je valey, & came to hys meyne that abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruyll when they sawe hym retourne hole & sauf / and in especial 32 the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt / and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and
CH. LI, LII.] GEFFRAY ENTERS THE CAVE TO SEEK THE GIANT. 327

he is fled & entred in to an hoH, where as I may not see hym.' And they demanded of geffray if he had told hym hys name / and he answerd, 'ye' / and the ne 4 they said: that it was for nought to seke hym, For wel he wyst that he shuld dej by the handes of geffray. 'Doubte you not,' said geffray, 'For wel I knowe where he is entred in / and to morne, with goddes 8 help, I shal fynde hym wel.' And when they unders- stode Geffray to speke they had grete joye, and said that geffray was the moost valyaunt knight of the world.

12 Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geaunt. / A nd thenne on the morowe by tymes Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyll he 16 came to the said hoH vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said geffray thenne / 'this geaunt is twyes as grete as I, & sith he is entred here in, wel I shal goo througli it / and so shal I do whateuer it befell 20 therof.' And thenne he toke hys swerd in his hand, & fayre & softly lete hym self fall into the hoH / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued some light, & sawe a lytel path. And thenne he made the 24 signe of the cros & foforth 1 went that way. /

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

G effray thenne went not ferre when he fonde a ryché Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Caudstykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete tapers white wax, brennyng so clere that it was 32 meruayH. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al sette with
perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a rych crowne of golde with many precyous stones / and nygh by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerued & 4 made aftir the fourme of a queene, crowned with a rych crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of gold / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen. 'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng 8 Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere how he was buryed there, and for what cause. And also spake of their thre daughters, that is to wete, Melusyne, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were 12 punysshed bycause that they had closed their fader / as in thystory tofore is reherced. Also it shewed by wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the kepyng & saugearde of the place, vnto tyme he were 16 putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of the said thre doghtirs / and how there myght none neuer entre withyn yf he were not of that lynage / and in these tables of golde was wel dyuysed along as it is 20 wroten in the Chapytre of king Elynas / and thus Geoffray beholding & seeyng, [pondered] by grete space 1 vpon 2 the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the 24 lynee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan he had wel beholde a long tyme he departed, & went by a waye obscure tyl he fond a feld, thanne lokde he tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batel-28 mented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge let faH doun, & entred in, & came to the haH, where he fonde a grete yron trayH, 3 wherin were closed 32 hundred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

1 Fr. Et à ce revoir et regarder advisa Geoffroy par grant temps.
2 Fr. traillis,
held for hys prysonners. And when they sawe
geffray they meruyayled moche, & hym sayd, 'Sire, for
the loue of god flee you, or ye shal be deed; For the
4 geaunt shal come ryght forth that shal dystruye you
al, were ye an C suche as ye are.' And geffray
ansuerd them al thus: 'Fayre lordes, I am not here
come but only the geaunt to fynd? & I shalde have
8 don to grete foly to be come fro so ferre hither to
retourne so hastly.' And after these wordes cam the
geaunt fro slepe. But when he sawe geffray he knew
hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh, and had
12 grete feer / and thenne he feld unto a chambre, the
whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym.
And when geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful
that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the
16 Chambre./

The historic saith that geffray was right dolaunt whan
he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre,
and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Thenne
20 cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete
radeur, & smote with his foot so mightily that he
made the doore to flye vnto the myddes of the chambre.
And thenne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore
24 bycausse he might none other way passe, and held in
his hand a gret mayllet wherof he gaaf to geffray suche
a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al
amased. And when geffray felt the stroke, that was
28 harde & heuy, he foynd with his sword at his brest,
suche yre that it entred in the geaunt thrughe to
the cros of the sword. And thenne the geant made vp
2 an horrable cry, sayeng, 'I am deed, I am deed.' And
32 when they that were in the traylles of yron herf it
they cryed with an hye voys, 'Ha, noble man, blessid
be the oure that thou were borne of a woman. We
pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,
2 MS. has ' &.'

They are aston-
nished to see
Geffray, and ad-
vise him to fly
from the giant.

Geffray replies
that he has come
to find him;

and just as he
finished speak-
ing the giant
appeared,
When he saw
Geffray he knew
his death was at
hand,
He fled to a
chamber, and
barred the door.

Geffray bursts it
open.

1 fol. 104.
The giant rushes
on Geffray, and
strikes him with
a mallet;

then Geffray
thrusts his sword
into the giant
right up to the
hilt.
The giant cries
out, 'I am deed,
I am deed!'
The prisoners on
hearing the cry
bless the hour of
Geffray's birth,
and beg their
deliverance.
Geffray finds the keys, and releases them.

He tells how he came,

and presents the prisoners with the contents of the tower.

For thou hast at this day delivered this land out of the greatest miserye that euer people was in. /

Cap. LIII. How geffray delivered the prisoners that the geaunt kept in pryson.

And thenne geffray cersched the keyes so longe tyl he fonde them, & lete the prysonners out; and this doon, they al kneelled toefore hym / & asked hym by what way he was come. And he said to them the trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in remembraunce that this foure hundred yere was no man so hardy to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue destroyed all this Country / but wel we shal bryng you another way.' And thenne geffray gaf to them al the hauoir of the toure. / 16

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

The prysonners thazn toke the Geaunt deed, & putte hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, 20 & bound hym so that he shuld not faH, & putte fyre all about hym. And this don, they led geffray to the place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the 24 goodes that they had. Wherof euery man had his part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them / and came forth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, 28 the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and to hym wold they haue youen grete yeftes, but he wold none take / but toke his lene, & departed fro them. And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt throug 32 al good tounes for euery man to see, of the whiche
sight every man had grete merueyH that one man alone
burst so hardy to assaylle such a deuH. And here
seaceth history of that more to speke / and retourneth
to speke of geffray.

In this partye sayth historye that geffray rode so
long that he came to mountyoue5 in garande,
where they of the countrey receyued hym nobly. And
8 for themne was come his brother Raymond to enfourme
hym of the yre that their fader had, & of his wordes
that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the
bygynnyng vnto the fyn. And how their moder was
departed and al the manere / And how the first
bygynnyng of her departyng was throughe their vncler
of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng
that she was daughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye.
16 And whan geffray herft this wotk he bethought hym
of the table that he fond fpon the tombe of kynge
Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethren
were come of the same lynage; wherof he thought
20 hym self the bettre, but this not with standing he was
ryght sorowfull of the departyng of hys moder, & of
the heuynes of hys fader / and knew thezne wel that
this misaduenture was come & grew by therle of
24 Forestz his vncler. Wherfor he swere by the holy
trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And thezne he
made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knightes,
and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had
28 tydynges that the Erle his vncler was in a Fortresse
that was edfyfed vpon a roche ryght hye / and was
the self Fortree named at that tyme Jalensy, and now
it is called the Castel Marcellly.

32 Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of
the Erle of Forestz hys vncler.

1 Fr. Monjouet.

2 fol. 105.
Geffray recollects
the inscription
on the tomb of
Elynas, and
understands that
he is of the king's
lineage.
He is sorry for
his mother,
and swears re-
venge on the
Earl of Forest.
Geffray takes his
brother and ten
knights, and
rides to his
uncle's castle.
He enters his uncle’s hall, and finds him among his barons, and calls out “To death traitor, for through thee we have lost our mother.”

Geffray approaches the Earl, with sword drawn.
The Earl runs out of a door followed by Geffray, who chases him to the top of the tower.

The Earl gets out of a window to pass to another tower, but loses his hold and falls dead at the foot. Geffray looks out of the window and upbraids him for the loss of his mother.

Geffray descends to the hall, where none dare to speak against him.

He orders his uncle to be buried, and explains to the barons his uncle’s misdeed.

Geffray makes his uncle’s barons do homage to his brother Raymondyn.

So long rode Geffray that he came to the Castel and anoone he alighted & went into the halft where he found the Erle emongst his barons / and thenne he cryed with an hye voce / ‘to deth traytour / 4 For thrughe the we have lost our moder’ / and forthwith drew his swerd & yede toward the Erle / And the Erle which knew wel hys fyersnes and anoone fled toward a doore open / and that part geffray followed hym / and so long chassed hym fro chambre to chambre to the hyst part of the toure where he sawe he myght no ferder flee / he toke a wyndowe / and supposed to have passed unto a tour 1nygh but for 12 to saue hym from the yre of geffray / but footyng fayllde hym, & fet down deed to the grounde. And thenne geffray lokked out of the wyndowe, & sawe hym al to rent & brusid lyeng deed on the erthe / but 16 therof he toke no pyte / but sayd ‘False traytour by thyn enyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now hane I quyted the therfore.’ And thenne he came doun ayen to pe halle / but none so hardy was there 20 that durst say one word ayenst hym. And he thenne commanded that his vnkle shold be buryed / and so he was and his obsequye don. And after pat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land why 24 he wold haue slayne his vnkle / and bycause of the Erles mysdode and false reporte they were somewhat peased. And thenne Geffray didde make them to doo hommage to Raymond his brother, that was afterward 28 Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth history of hym to spoke / and retorneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen 32 toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy.
Thystorye sayth that soone after this deelyt was 
shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght 
dolaunt & sorowful / but he forgate it lyghtly, bycause 
that his brother had announced hym the tydynges 
whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / 'this 
pat is doo may be none otherwyse / I most pease 
geffray or he doo ony more dommage.' And 1therefore 
8 he sent word to hym by hys brother Theodoryke that 
he shuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray 
came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre 
as he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and 
12 prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse, 
'My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I beseeche 
you of forgyfnes & pardon / and I swere you that I 
shal doo make ayen thabbay of Maylleses fayrer than 
16 euer it was afore / and there I shal founde ten monkes 
ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.' 
'By god,' said Raymondyn, 'al that may be doo with 
the helpe of god / but to the deed ye may not restore 
20 theire lyf. But geffray it is trouth that I musto go to 
a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And 
therfor I shal loue you the gouernauce of my land / 
and yf by auenture god dide hys wylle of me, al the 
24 land is yours / but I wyl & charge you this that 
your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo 
be fullfyled. She hath bequethed to Theodoryke 
Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces 
28 vnto RocheH, with the Castel Eglon with al that 
therof dependeth / and fro this tyme fourthon I 
epocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.' 
Theame said Geffray to hym, 'Dere fader, wel it is 
32 raison that it be so don.' This doon Raymondyn made 
his apparyH, & with hym mounted on horsback 
many lordes & knightes, and toke with hym grete 
fynauncce & hauoir and so departed & fourth rode 
36 on his way. And Geffray & 2Theodoryke conueyed 

Raymondin starts on a pilgrimage to Rome.

Geffray's father is told the story.

He determines to appease Geffray. 
1 fol. 196.

He sends Theodoric to ask Geffray to come to 
Lusignan.

Geffray obeys, and on seeing his 
father falls on his 
knees and asks 
pardon, and 
promises to re- 
build the abbey 
of Maylleses 
better than it 
was before.

Raymondin an- 
wers that with 
God's help he 
may fulfill his 
promise, but that 
will not bring the 
dead to life.

He tells Geffray 
that he is going 
on a pilgrimage, 
and that he 
leaves his land 
in his care, and 
makes him his 
heir.

Raymondin de- 
clares that Theo- 
doric has been 
left Partenay 
and other lands 
and castles by 
his mother.

Raymondin then 
starts on his pil- 
grimage, accom- 
npanied by many 
knights, and well 
provided with 
money and 
goods.

2 fol. 196 b.
RAYMONDIN CONFESES TO THE POPE. [CH. LVII.

hym tyl he bade them to retourne. And as they rode geffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of Helynas his granfader within the mountayne of Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of 4 the ryches of pe place / and of the fygure of the quene Pressyne that stood vp ryght, and held a table of gold, and of this that was there writen / and how theire thire doughters were predestyned / 'of the whiche,' 8 said geffray, 'our moder was one of them' / and shewed hym al the begynnynge of the materre vnto thend of hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf 12 Melusyne was daughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children to retourne. And so þey departed & retourned toward Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward 16 Romme. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys 20 synnes to hym.

Hhere sayth thystorye that Raymondyn rode so long that he came to Romme and his companye with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / 24 & drew hym toward hym to whome humbly he made reuereunce, & syn kneeld toward hym & confessed his mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne 28 hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such peneaunce as it played hym, and that same day Raymondyn dynd with the pope Benedicte / and on the morne he yede & vysyted the holy places there. And when he had 32 doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the Pope & said to hym in this wyse, 'Ryght reuerend holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer
I may have joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld myself into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon & wylle to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mount-ferrat 1 in Aragon a deoute & holy place / & there wold I fayn be.' 'My fayro sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my intencion is thither to goo and to yeld my self ther to pray god that it playse hym to gyue allecaunce to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,' said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo / & al that ye shal doo with good wyH I remysse it to your penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benediction. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to hys lodgys / & dide doo 2 trusse & make ah redy for to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way I wyl not make longe menceyon / but he rode so long that he came to Toulouse / and there he gaf lycence & leue to ah hys meyne to departe & retourne / except only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him / and wel & truly he prayed 3 euery one so that they were content / but sory they were ah of their maister that so departed fro them / and he sent letres to Gefray & to the barons of hys land that they shuld doo their homage to his sone gefray, & receyue hym for theire lord. And his meyne toke the letres / and soo they departed fro their lonk 4 with grete sorow & heuynesse, For he neuer told them what way he shuld take / but wete it he had with hym goodes ynowngh / and dyde so moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym a lytel space of tyme.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye that when Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide 1 Montserrat, the correct reading. 2 Fr. trosser les sommiers.

and tells him that he wishes to be a hermit.

The Pope asks where he would like to go.

Raymondin answers Mount-serrat in Aragon.

Raymondin gets on his way, and when he arrives at Toulouse he pays off his men,

and sends them home with letters to Gefray, which order the barons of his land to do homage to Gefray.

His men return sadly, without knowledge of where their master is going. Raymondin goes to Nerbonne, where he makes a halt;
and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk. 

He continues his journey till he arrives at Mountserrat.

He attends divine service.

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.'

Raymond in visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

doo make many hermyte habyles, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to 1 Perpignen where he soiourned one day / and on the morne 2 he passed the destroyte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so forth he came to Barselone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soiourned there thre dayes, and on the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountserrat where 8 he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herd the deuyne seruyse deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And theynne came to hym they 12 that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it playsed hym to abyde there for pat nyght / and he ansuered 'ye.' Theynne were his 8 horses stabled / and they gaf hym a 16 fayre Chambre for hym & for his men. And in the meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no farther than to the vth celle, for that place was of so grete heyght that he myght not 20 goodly goo thither / and fonde the IIIde celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of old a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, 24 he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge their places vpward. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al exempt & without hermyte. And the cause of this permutacion was that always the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after their pytawece & manere of etynge, and so forth dide that one to that other vpward / and

1 Fr. Perpignen.  
2 Fr. passa le vellon et le pertyna, et vint à disner à Fendres, et au giste à Gnomie. Omitted above.
thus one served other. And so ferre enquired & knew Raymondyn of theire maner of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to wete to be hermyte there. And thenne he toke leue of the vth hermyte & so dide as he descened of the other. And he demanded after the pryour of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the 8 vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and thenne he desyred them that they wolde conduyte hym there as he was. And so Raymmondyn left there his Chappellayn & his 12 Clere, and with a servyuet of the place went there as pe pryour was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wyll and deuocyon and how the place played hym. And thenne 16 the pryour that sawe Raymondyn of payre couteaunce & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempted place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. / Thenne was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the pryour had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and mocche bended god therof, and so he bode there with the pryour al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to 24 thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his babytes and was there made hermyte. And thenne was the deuynge servyuet doon, where Raymondyn ofred ryche jewels as gold and precyous stones. And after the servyue 28 they went to dyner / and raymondyn dye deo send to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytayne other meetes for recreacon, letynge them knowe hys profession & connymeng. Wherof al they lawled god, 32 deuoultly prayeng hym that he wold hold & encre Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelld Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entred in to his Cell wher he bygan to lef a holy & strayt 36 lyf. And anoone after was the tydynges spred of.
throught all Aragon & Langgedok how that a grete prynee was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but they knew not of what Countre he was. And also he wold neuer vvitre it / And many noble men went to 4 see hym / and in especial the king of aragon was there hym self, which asked hym of his estate & Countre / but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here resteth thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe of 8 Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. /

Thystory recounteth that so long rode the men of Raymondyn after they were departed fro Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so foorth to 12 Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of the barons of the land & after theire obeyssaunce doon they deluyned theire letres to geffray & to the barons as they were commanded by Raymondyn theire lord. 16 When the baronye vnderstock the tenour of theire letres they said to geffray in this manere / 'My lord synth it playseth not your fader vs more to gouerne / and that he wyl that we doo our hommage to you, we 20 are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'gramercy, Fayre lordes, and I am redy to receyue you to your lygeaus.' And þeane they dyde to hym hommage. And anoone after was knowen throught al the Countre 24 how Raymondyn had exilled hymself for the grete sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he had lost. Who thenne had sene the doleur & lamentable heuynes that men dide throught all the Countre 28 wysshynge theire lord & theire lady, he shuld hauue haued hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for cause of his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted, For he gouerned hym rightously & wel. Here I shal[1] 32 leue of þem 2to speke / and shal shewe of geffray that was ryght dolanct & sorowfull of that he had lost both hys fader & his moder throught his owne mysdele & synne. For they that were returned fro hym coude 36
not say where he was come. Thenne remorse of conscience toke geffray at herte & remembred how he fyred thabbayes of Maylleses, & brent hys brother 4 Froymond, and al the monkes per without hauyng ony lawfull cause so to doo / and that throughe hys synne he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause he had lost his moder. Wherfore he toke suche sorowe 8 that it was meruayH / and also he remembred the deth of the Erle of Forest hys vncle, which throughe his faytte fell doun fro the hyest toure of the Castel Marcellly to the erthe. And thus remembred geffray aH hys 12 my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say / that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be lost & dampned for euer. And thenne he hymself alone entred into a chambre / and there he bygan to 16 make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym / and as god wold he toke there deuocion to goo to Romme for to confesse his synnes to our holy fader the 20 pope. And thenne he sent for his broder theodoryke that he shulde come to speke with hym, For he loued hym aboue al oper. And asoone as Theodoryke vnderstoed the mandement of hys brother geffray, he 24 foorthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyl he came to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued hym with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys land in his gouernaunce, For he 1 wold go to Romme to 28 confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wold neuer come ayen tyl he had found hys fader. Thenne Theoderyk prayede hym that he wold suffre hym to goo with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were 32 not good for them bothe so to doo / And thenne geffray with noble companye departed and toke with hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys faders servaunts that was retourned fro Thoulouse for 36 to conduyte hym aH that way that hys fader yede /
and he shuld ever take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the seruaunt hym ansuerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeys that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our 8 holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuence and syn devoutely confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Maylleses to be edyfied agayn & therto ordeyne six 12 score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope 16 told hym that he shuld fynde hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke lene of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benefiction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke 20 hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge tofore. And there the seruaunt asked of thir hoste yf he coude not tellen which way hys lord 24 Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the seruaunt told it to geffray. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'that is 23 not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but synth my fader went that way so shal we doo.' And thus on the morny geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged 32 there as Raymondyn had tofore lodged. For so moche enquired the seruaunt that he knewe pat hys lord dide
lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habyes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro 4 pens he rode with hys meyne to Barselone, & penne to thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to the Chirch. And anoon the servaunt besorsaid saue 8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyn his lord within a ChapeH And immediatly he tolde of it to geffray. Wherof he had grete joye and yede toward the Chappellayne, the whiche whan he saue geffray he 12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good lyf that hys fader led / and how euer day he confessed hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing 16 that receyueth deth. And theynne geffray asked hym where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said, 'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this day ye may not speke with hym, but to morne ye shall 20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in patience ty[l] tomorowe.' 'My lord,' said thenne the Chappellayn, 'yf it playse you ye may here the hye 24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro the masse.'

Thenne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that went to here masse acompaynyed with x knyghtes and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes of the place to Raymondins Chappellayn and demanded 32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deuel with that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man / wherof knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?' 'By my fayth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is 36 geffray with the grete tooth of Lusyneu, one of the best

and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumber-
land giant, and burned the Abbey of Mallaces and all the monks
therein.

The chaplain answers that he is.

The monks are much afraid.

The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage
contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the
world.

The monks clean and decorate the church,

and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.

The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.

Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be
none the worse for his visit.

1 fol. 202 b.

\& moost valyaunt knightes of the world \& wete it he'

\'holdeth grete possessions \& grete landes.' And the
monkes anserd, 'Wel we haue herc speke of hym / is it not he that sloughe the geaunt in garand? and that 4
other geaunt also of Northomberland? / he is also he
that brent thabbay of Maylleses with al the monkes
perinne bycause that hys brother was there shorne
monke without hys leue.' 'By my feyth,' said the S
Chappellayn, 'certainly it is that same.' And penne
the monkes al abasshed and aferd sayd / he is come
hither for to doo vs some myschief and dommage.
Thenne said one of them, 'wete it wel that I shal hyd 12
myself in suche place that he shal not fynd me.'
'Noo,' said the Chappellayn, 'Forsooth I waraunt
you he shal doo you no hurt nor dommage, but al ye
shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is 16
within this place that he loueth aboue al creatures of
the world.' And when they understod the Chappellayn
they were somwhat assured and went \& hanged the
chirche, and made al the place fayre \& clene to thire 20
power as god hymself had descended there / and sent
word to the Pryour that was at Culbaston that he
should come there, and that geffray with the grete toth
was come in pelgrymage in to thire abbaye, and noble 24
companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith
the pryour that fond geffray in the Chirche, and
honourably made hym reuerence and sayd that he
hymself / the monkes \& al the place was at his 28
commandement. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'gramercy and
wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me
helthe it shal 2not be the wers for my commyng.'
'My lord,' said the pryour, 'god yeld you.' Thenne 32
cam the Chapellayn to geffray and hym said, 'My
lord, your dyner is redy.' And therwith geffray toke
the pryour by the hand and togidre went into the halft,
where they wesshed their handes \& syn settethe them at 36


and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumber-
land giant, and burned the Abbey of Mallaces and all the monks
therein.

The chaplain answers that he is.

The monks are much afraid.

The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage
contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the
world.

The monks clean and decorate the church,

and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.

The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.

Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be
none the worse for his visit.
In this partye sayth thy storye that on ye morne geffray roes vp and fonde the priour and his faders Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche led hym to here masse / and after the masse they led hym toward the hermytages. And thenne the priour toke his leve of geffray & retourned to Chircliward supposyng none other but that geffray went for to see thestat of the hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer trowed that his fader had be yer. And thenne mounted geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wete it that the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for the Chappelain that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin. And as the Clerc loked downward, he perceyued geffray that came upward & wel knew hym, and forthwithe entred in the celle & said to Raymondin, ‘My lord, here commeth your sone geffray.’ And whan Raymondin understode it he was ryght joyous and said, ‘blessed be god / he is welcomme.’ Thenne entred first the Chappellain in to the Celle & salued Raymondin / but he bade the Chappelain to say geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl pat hys masse were done. And forthwithe the chaþpellayn dyde as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray ansered, ‘his playsire be doo.’ This doon Raymondyn was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray beheld vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high & ryght vp and sawe hermytages that were aboue hym / and sawe the CapeH of Saynt Mychel whiche was the vth hermytage, and after loked downward / and in hym self had grete meruayH how man durst there take habtytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and
housyng of thabbye but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne
cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred
within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled on
his knees & dyde to hys fader reverent salutation / And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kyssed
hym / and thenne made hym to sette vpon a stoole
with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffray
to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how 8
he was confessed of the pope / and the pope hym said
that he should fynde hym at Mountferrat. And in this
communycacion had they many materes togidre /
geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wold 12
retourne to his countre. ‘Fayre sone,’ said Raymondyn,
‘that may I not doo. For here I wyl spend my lyf,
always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the,
that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.’ And soo 16
geffray was there al that day with his fader. And the
next day in the morowe here Raymondyn his masse,
& receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / and
after, said to geffray, ‘Fayre sone, it behoueth the to 20
parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countrë;
and grete wel al 1 my children & my barons.’ And
thenne geffray toke leue of hys fader al weppyng; and
loth he was to departe from his fader. And after 24
came doune fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, where
he was honourably receyued / and the monkes had
grete meruayl wherfore he was so long aboe.

Thystorye sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches & 28
fayre jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue of
the pryour & his monkes, but the pryour hym comveyed
vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dyned with the pryour /
and tolde hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn was 32
hys fader, whom geffray besoughte to take hede to
hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothing
therby, For every yere ones duryng hys lyf he wold
come & vysyte hys fader. Thenne answere the pryour, 36
doubte you not, my lord, there shal be no deffawte but I shal vysyte & remembre your fader.' And thende toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed. 

And on the morne he departed toward Lysynew wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng. And when they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys brothe theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touchyng theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loved his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly. And geffray seeyng his brojjer make suche sorowe to hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl coo see our brother Theodoryk & the barons receyued hym, and were glad of his comwyng. And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys Theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touchyng theyre fader. For I haue herz say that there is grete werre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche.' 'By my feyth, said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For perauenture our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan they had made theire ordonnaunce, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Earle of Vadosme / and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And there the foure brethren made there moche one of other / and were joyful for the tydynges that they herd of theire fader / and said / ones they hoped to see hym togidre.
Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyfyyed the monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned peuple for the reedyfyeng of the Abbaye of Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope by way of penaunce / and to them assygned where they shuld take bothe gold & syluer therwith to paye the werkmwn. And so lefte he a good gouernour in 8 hys countre / And in lyke wyse dyde his broper theodoryk in his Couryte. And whan Odon & Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go 1 to see theire bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse 12 wold* they duo. And commande anoone theire peple to mete with them at BoneuH. And at that tyme were the bretheren accompanied with two thousand men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan 16 the Erle of Vadosme her? tydynges therof he supposed certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon had complayne hym to hys bretheren of hym, and so moche he doubted geffray that he came to BoneuH 20 and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche. And he pardoned hym of al the mysdedes that he had doo to hym. And the erle of Vadosme made hym homage of the land that was in debat atwix 24 them. /

Here sheweth thystorye that the fourte bretheren departed fro Boneual & were in theire companye many grete lorde, and rode in fayre aray tyl they cam 28 vpon an euen and lodged them nygh a ryuere called Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal begynne to speke of the kyng of anssay, that had grete 32 warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourgh & with the Duc of Austeriche, the whiich had besieged hym within a Castel of hys that was called Pourrenecru. Wherfor
he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was maryed with his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc Anthony of Lussembourgh prayeng them of ayde & 4 socour ayenst his enemies, at the whiche instauwce & prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made their apparayH. And Regnaulde departed out of his Royalme of Behayne and came to Lussembourgh with 8 IIII. C men of armes for to haue hys brother Anthony with hym toward the siege of Porrencreu, wher the kyng of anssay was besieged within. And pat meane sayson came two knightes from geffray and his thre bretheren bat were with hym, the which two knightes brought word bothe to regnauld & anthony of theire bretheren commyng, and that they were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And 16 whan kyng regnauld & the Duc Anthony knew that theire bretheren were commyng toward them, they were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on 20 horsbak, and with noble companye they went to mete them; and rode tyl they mete with the vanwarde of theire armee & asked where theire bretheren were / and it was shewed to them where they were commyng 24 vnder the standart. Geffray thenne, that wel vnder-stood that anthony & regnauld his bretheren came to mete hem, he made euery man to stand apart / and soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embraced 28 & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth toward the toun / and aftir theire age they rode two & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest, and after them rode Regnald & Geffray / and them 32 folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al theire oost came after in fayre ordynauence / and in this manere they entred in to the toune, where as the Cytezeyns were in theire best rayments al in a rowe 36 on bothe sydes of the stretes, that were rychely

He had sent for help to Anthony and Regnald.

Regnauld with four hundred men goes to Anthony, to accompany him to the siege of Pourrencreu.

Geffray sends word that he and his three brothers are on their way to Luxembourg.

Regnald and Anthony meet their bretheren outside the town.
hanged / and the ladyes & damoyselles loked out of the wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayll was there made for theire commyng that it was a fayre syght.

Trough it is that when the bretheren entred within 4 Lucembourgh, Anthony & Geffray rode thesne the foremost of al theire bretheren. And wete it that the notable Citeseyns, ladyes, & damoiselles meruayllled moche of the fyersnes and grete height of theire lordis 8 bretheren, sayeng' that they six togidre wer able & wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus they bretheren throug the toun into the Castel and there they alighted. There were the six bretheren recounted of 12 two noble ladyes, that is to vnderstand the quene of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourgh, that honourably receyued theire lordes and brethern. And aftir they went into the hau that was al hanged with 16 ryche cloth of gold & / and pere were the tables rychely couered & redy to dyner. And thesne after many playsaunt deuyses and joyfull words, they wesshed theire handes and sette them at dyner and were nobly 20 serued. And after dyner geffray shewed & recounted al hys auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde pe tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressynne of whiche lynee they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfull & 24 glad to meruayll / and how theire fader was departed and where he was. For of all other things they knew ynhghe. And thesne Anthony & regnauld told to theire bretheren how the kyng of Anssay was 28 besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenne 1ansuered Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete it wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but we al are redy to goo with you whersomeuer ye wyll / & 32 therfor lete vs not make long soiourne / but go we 2 vpon our enemyes to helpe & socoure our frendes.' And forthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that were

---

1 fol. 208.

Geffray answers that he and his brethern are ready to do so as well;
come there with hym toke their leue of bothe the queene & duchesse their sustirs & retournd to their oost / and theane Regnauld & Anthony wold haue 4 connedyd them / but Geffray said, 'Fayre lords & bretheren, ye shall come no further / but make al your apparayH & take leue of your wyues, and to morne, god before, we wyl deparde toward the said Castel wherein 8 the king of Anssay our frend is besieged.' And soo Anthony and regnald retorned sayeng eche one to other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but he be other take or slayn. For he fereth of nothing 12 in the world/ & also to counselle hym, it were but for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt & mynde gyueth hym. For yf he had with hym but X. Mt men, & that he sawe his enemies tofore hym to 16 the nombre of IIC. Mt yet wold he fyght & medle with them, wherfore we must take heede to hym that he vaunces not hym self so moche with the enemies, but that we be nygh hym to socoure hym with our 20 people / but for this haste that he maketh we owe not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt & dommage his enemies.' And theane they lefte of 24 geffray their he brother more to speke / but bothe they said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the morne they 'toke leue of their wyues and left in the land a good gouernour. And also geffray on that 28 other part ordeyned & purveyed of al thinges that were necessary to hys oost. /

In the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes, that euer[y] man shulde be armed, and after henef 32 his masse and syn marched forth with hys oost / And immedyatly Anthony & regnauld came out of the town with their people in fayre aray. And so they departed and rode togidre tyl they came into the land of 36 Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

be then returna to his host.

Geffray refuses Anthony and Regnald's company, and asks them to prepare to start to succour the King of Anssay in the morning.

They speak of Geffray's bravery.

1 fol. 206 b.

In the morning they take leave of their wives and appoint a governor.

Geffray orders every man to arm, and after mass he said his host marches.

Anthony and Regnald join him with their people.
They arrive three leagues from Freibourg.

A letter of defiance is written to the Duke of Austria and the Earl of Freibourg.

1 fol. 207.

and sent by a herald to the Duke of Austria at Pourrencru.
It is read in hearing of all the nobles there.
They say that the devil has sent the brethren against them, and that only the name of the Luxignans is now spoken of.
The herald returns to the brethren's camp.

Geffray takes five hundred men, and ambushes them in a wood near Freibourg.

The town of Freibourg. Thence called Geffray al his brethren and shewed to them that it behoved not them for their honour to renne vpon no man but that they had defied hym tofore / And they ansuerd that 4 he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a letre of deflyaunce of whiche the tenour foloweth. 'Regnauld by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc of Lucembourgh, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of 8 Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austerych and to the Erle of Frebourgh, and to al their aylyances gretlyng. And where we haue vnderstand that whylum 12 out ony lawfull quarell or raysonnable cause ye haue gretyly hurt & dommaged bothe the land & peuple of our ryght welbeloued vnCLE the king of Ansay, the whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of 16 Pourrencru, And for as mockery that we be therfor moued, & entendre & purpose to entre in your land to dystroye you & al your peuple / consyderyng the noble ordre of knight lyode that it shal not be by vs 20 mynshed. We perform by our messenger send yououre letres of deflyaunce, &c.' Thenne was deleyered the letre to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the siege of Pourrencru wher he presented the said lettres 24 to the Duc of Austrychi. the whiche letres were redd in heryng of al pe lordes there. Thenne said they of Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none other renomme is now throug al the world but of them 28 of Lusynen. Thenne retournd the herault toward the six brethren, and to them shewed the manere how they of theire enemies oost were meruaylled. 'By my fethy they haue hern spoke of vs from ferre / but now 32 they shall see vs nere to them.' / It is trouth that thenne geffray departed with fyue hundred men of armes from his oost & went and embusshed his peuple in a lytel wod nygh the town of Frebourgh. This 36
doon he & ten knyghtes with hym, & a squire of Lucembourgh that ryght wel coude speke Almayntonge & knew al the Countre, went vpon a lytel mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in the toun / but or he departed he said to them of his embusshe in this manere: 'Sires, I entende & purpose with the help of god to haue the toun of Freibourgh or 8 to morne pryme at our playsire. Wherfore this nyght I shaft departe with this X knyghtes and this esquier, & at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn enterpryse / and but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs.

12 within the gate that fourthwith ye marche toward vs.' And thenne about thre of the clokk after mydnyght Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke ech of them a sack full of hey and bare it before them 16 vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they went & came tofore the gate of Freibourgh, where as the said esquier called the watche bat they myght entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had 20 be aH that nyght in fourrage. Thenne asked hym the porter what they had in tho sackes, the squire answerd there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware / that we haue take vpon our enemies and we bryng 24 them hyther to selle them. The porter thenne supposyng they had be of Allemayne & theire frendes opend the gate & letaH the bridge. Theane entred geffray first of alle, and forthwith drew his sword and 28 slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al them of the watche. Theane was there the cry of them of the toun 'treson / treson' / And immedyatly marched thembusshe & came & entred in the toun. 32 There was grete occisyon of them of the toun / but many of them escaped and feldd. And when this was doon geffray lefte there foure hundred men of armes & retourned with the residue toward hys oost that he 36 mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble
who marvel at his valiant and subtle feat of arms.

The Earl of Freibourg is sorrowful when he learns the news.

The Earle of Freibourg is sorrowful when he learns the news. After mass the brethren begin to march.

The hosts fight; the ground is soon red with blood.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethren of geffray and al their peple were meruyllled / sayeng that geffray was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte of armes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad they marched courageously toward their enemies. Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourgh was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in especial the Erle of Frebourgh were sorrowful & wroth. 'By 8 my feyth,' said themne the Duc of Austerycli, 'they be subtyl men of warre & moch to be doubted. Yf we loke not wel about vs they myght wet gyue vs a grete chak.' Wherfor they called their Counseyl:

In this partye sayth thy storye that on the next day by the morowe the six bretheren herd masse, and after ordyned peire bataylles / geffray & his thre bretheren that were come with hym conduyted the first 16 batayle, Anthony had the second, And regnauld the III. And so marched forth in fayr ordynaunce, and so wel reged that it was a fayre sight to behold. And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey. Themne were they percyued, and they of the siege bygan to cry alarme. Themne armed hym euery man, And in their best wyse came & reged them before the bataylles of the brethern. Themne bygan the bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and with grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne with their sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was there soone dyed rede with grete effusyon of blood. For Geffray with hys sword smote at the lyfte syde & at the ryght syde vpon his enemies & ouerthrew or sloughe all them that he recountred. And the six 32 baners of the bretheren regid them togidre in fayre aray. There were the armes of Lusynen wel shewed and known in pycyture, and also by pesaunt and horryble strokes, For the six bretheren perced the 36
The brotheren slay many of their enemies.

Geffray en-
counters the
Duke of Aus-
tria, and strikes
him with his
sword.

Theodoric, who
was at hand,
gives him
another stroke,
and overthrows
him. The Duke
is taken.

Anthony cap-
tures the Earl
of Freibourg.

The Germans
begin to flee.

The King of
Anssay comes
out of his for-
tress, and thanks
the brotheren,
and feasts them.

The Duke of
Austria and the
Earl of Freibourg
are brought
before him, and
the brotheren tell
him to do what
he pleases with
them.

The brotheren
return home.

They afterwards
meet at Mount-
serrat on a visit
to their father,
who is joyful at
seeing them.

They give rich
gifts to the
church.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Raymondin
every year;

A A

Here testyfeth theistorye that as long as Raymondin

lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there ever

MELUSINE.
but one day
when they were
about to journey
to Mountserrat,
a great serpent
is seen on the
settlements of
Lusignan castle.
It has a woman's
voice.
The people are
abashed, and
know it to be
Melusine; the
brothers weep.
When the ser-
pent sees them
she inclines her
head, and utters
a dolorous cry.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Mountserrat and
find their father
dead.

They mourn, and
dress themselves
and their men
in black, and
arrange their
father's obse-
quies.
The King of
Aragon, and
many lords,
attend and hear
mass.
After the burial
Geffray thanks
them.

A tomb is placed
over Raymondin.

yere ones to see hym / but it befell on a day, as they
were both at Lusynen redy for to go to Mountferrat,
a mernayllous aventure, For there was seen vpon the
battlements of the Castel a grete & horryble serpent the 4
which cryed with a femenyne voys, wherof all the
people was abasshed / but wel they wyst that it was
Melusyne / whan the two brethren beheld it, teerys
in habundaunce bygan to falt fro their eyen; For they S
knew wel that it was their moder. And when the
serpent sawe them wepe, she enclyned the heed toward
them, casting suche an horryble cry & so doulorous
that it semed them that her it that the Fortres shuld 12
haue falt. And anoone after the two brebern gefray
& theodoryk departed toward Mountferrat where they
came and found their fader deed, whereof they
lamented & made grete sorow 1and anoone clothed 16
themself and al theire meyne in blak, and ordyned
for thobsequye of their fader. There came the kyng
of aragon with many grete lordes that offred at the
masse. And whan the scryuse was doon & the corps 20
buryed honourably / gefray went & thanked the
kyng and his barons of thonneur that pery had doon to
hys fader and to his brother & hym. /

Thus as thyostorye sheweth was thobsequye of 24
Raymondyn deouotly & nobly doon, and a ryche
sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth
it is that Bernardon the neuer of Gefray was there
that ryght wel coude behaue hym among the ladyes, 28
in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there,
desyre her lord to demande of Gefray what that yong
gentylman was / and that / the kyng dide gladly.
And them he gefray ansuerd, 'Sire, he is my neuer, 32
sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.' 'Certaynly,
Geffray,' said the kyng, 'Wel I byleue that, For he is
wel nourrytured and semeth wel to be of noble
THE OBSEQUES OF RAYMONDIN.

extraction / and wete it wel that his contenance playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the quene / and veryly yf it playseth you to suffre hym abyde with vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that he & you bothe shuld be playseth therwith. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'his fader hath another sone and two doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to hawe hym he is 8 come hither with vs in a good heure & that playseth me wel.' And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche, and so clyde the quene. And wete it that Bernardon Wedded afterward, at thinstaunce & prayer of the 12 kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyerses that had none to hys heyre but her. And themne the kyng & the quene, lordes & ladies, toke theire leue of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yeftes of 16 ryches by them youen to the churc toke leue of the p Pryour & hys monkes, and after departed and retournd to Lusynen, where as they called to them all the baronnye and there was thobersequye of Raymondyn 20 honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewetd to his brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys sone Bernardon was lefte with the kyng of Aragon, wherof he was glad. And thenne the bretheren and 24 the barons toke leue of Geffray and retournd to their countrrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde aftirward moche good; For he reedyfyed the noble Abay of Mayleses and dyde grete almesse to the poure 28 people.

Thystorye sayth that all the heyres of Raymondyn and Melusyne regned nobly, that is to wete Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in 32 Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche, Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynne are yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough
of Cabyeres, and of Cardillac.

Geffray governs his land well, and administers good justice. For ten years he asks no accounts from his receivers, who a fol. 210 b.

are told when they wish him to examine the accounts, that when justice is done, and his towns and castles are well provided for, and he has plenty of money, he is content.

But his stewards ask, for their own safety, that he should give them quittance.

Geffray looks at his accounts, and sees an item of ten sous that was paid yearly for the pommel of the highest tower of Lusignan Castle.

He is told that it is an annual rent.

Geffray declares he holds the castle direct from God, his creator. His stewards tell Geffray that they do not know to whom they pay the ten sous.

in England they of Cabyeres in Aragon, and they of Cardillak in Quercyn.

Here after saith this history that Geffray ten yere after the decez of Raymondin his fader governed right wel & kept good justice in his land; but duryng that long space of tym he asked of his receyuours none acomptes, but when the receyuours wold haue shewed theire acomptes he to them ansuered in this manere: 8

What acomptes wold ye shew to me? For as touching myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice be wel and truly kept throug al my land, and my townes & Castels wel entret eyned, and golde & syluer to hold 12 & kepe myn estate/ trow ye that I wyl make a paleys of golde/ the stone that my lady my moder me gaf, suffyseth me ryght wel. And thenne hys stywardes & gouernours ansuered, 9 certaynly, my lord, it behoueth wel to a pryncye to here and see what he spendeth, at lest ones in a yere al were it but for the saluacon of hys receyuours in tyme to come and for to gyne them quytaunce.

Here sayth this history that Geffray consented to here acomptes of his receyuours. And it came to an article where he vnderstood that 4 X. were payed every yere only for the pommel of the hyest toure of 24 hys Fortresse of Lusynen/ he anone rested there and asked why it was not made so strong that it myght laste many wynter. 'My lord,' ansuered the receyuours / 'it is rente annuell.' 'What say ye?' said geffray / 'I 28 hold not the forresse but only of god my Creatour / wel happy I were / if he held me quyte therfor of all my synnes / but telle me to whom ye paye,' 'Certaynly,' said they / 'we wot not' / 'How theme,' said Geffray / ye desyre of me quytaunce therof / so wyl I haue

1 Fr. version gives in addition 'ceuvx du Chassenage du Dauphiné; ceuvx de la Roche.' 2 Fr. Candillat. 4 Fr. dix soublz.
quytaunce of hym that receyueneth it of you / as rayson is / but by god ye shal not begyH me soo, for yf I may knowe who that taketh that annuel rencte of me, he shal shew me good lettre therof made / or he or ye shal yeeld me ayen the said annuel rente fro the tyme that ye first alowed it in your accountes ynto now.' Theunse said the receyuenors to Geffray in this manere:

8 'My lord, trouthe it is / that six yere agoo after the doulorous departryng of my lady your moder from your fader / every yere vpon the last day of August was sene a grete hand that toke the pommel of the said 12 tourte & pullye? it fro the tourte by so grete strength that the rouf of the tourt brak therwith, and so it costede every yere to make ayen xx3i or xxx4ii. thanne came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man knew what he was, and counseyled hym that every yere vpon the last day of August he shul doo take a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces of syluer, eche piece worth 3 foure penys, that made in 20 summa ten shelings; And that this purse shulde be putte vpon the pommel of the said tourte / and by that shuld the pommel abyde stily and not hurt nor dommaged / and ever syth tyl now it hath thus be done.' And 24 whan geffray vndersto? this meruayH he bygan to thinke, and long he was or he amsuer? or said? ony word. /

Thystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere:

'Sires, how wel that I byleue that it is as ye say, Neuertheles I charge you vpon Peyne of deth that ye no more paye the said annuel, but at the last day of 32 August bryag to me the purse and the money. For I wyl make the payement myself.' Thenne sent geffray for hys brother thodoreyk in Partenay, and also for hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

Geffray says that he who takes the money must show letters patent proving his right, or he will have to return it. The receivers tell how six years after the departure of Meisain, and the last day of August every year, a great hand pulled down the pommel of the tower, which cost twenty to thirty livres to repair.

Then an unknown man came and advised Raymond to put thirty pieces of silver on the pommel the last of August each year, and the tower would be un-injured.

Geffray marvels much at the story:

at length he forbids his steward to pay the rent again on pain of death; but says on the day the money is to be given to him, and he will pay it himself. Geffray sends for Raymondin and Theodoric,

2 Fr. livres. 3 Fr. quatre deniers.
with hym at Lusynen the xxvi\textsuperscript{th} day of August. And
when they were come he shewed to them at the
matere of the said annuel rente, and said that he never
should suffre it to be payed; but that he first knew to whom
and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus for to doo. And
when the last day of August came, Geffray herd hys masse and receyued ryght denouently
the holy sacrament and immedately armed hym, and 8
bad the preste putte the stolle about his nek / and
after toke the purse with the money therin. And
he neuer he bad his bretheren farwel, sayeng in this
manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus 12
yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you
yf he be no more of strength than I am I shaff hastily
byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to
the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his bretheren 16
and the barons taryed beneth in grete doubte and fere
that geffray shuld be peryshed / but geffray was therof
not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing.

\textbf{A}

Thus as thy storie sheweth geffray rested there 20-
for none to thre of the clok, that he ne herd nor
sawe nothing: but anoone after he herd a grete noyse
wherwith all the donjon shook / and as he loked
before hym he percyued a grete knyght armed of al 24
poynets, that said to hym with a hye voys, 'Thou
geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I
ought to haue vpon the pomel of this toure of the
which I was sesyd & enpocessid by thy fader?' 28
'Thenne,' said Geffray, 'where are the leetres? yf thou
hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I
see thou hast good ryght / here is the money redy to
paye the.' and thenee the knyght answered in this 32
manere: 'I had never leetres therof / but wel & truly
haue I be payed and never denyed tyll now.' 'By my
feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debt and thy
ryght to hane it / yet shuldest thou hane grete peyne 36

\textbf{B}

Geffray asks for his letters, and says, 'If thou hast them, I will pay thee. The knight
answers he has none, but that he has always been paid regularly. Geffray tells the
knight that even if it were a good debt he would
find it difficult to get,
to recoure it of me. And on the other part thou holdest me for thy subget & 1woldest hold me in seruitude and thou hast therof nothing to shew, but what art thou that thus by the space of 2XVI. yere hast thevely take this trybute? / I now desyne the by the myght of my sauyour and the I chalenge for myn herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'double not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn name shalt thou knowe tyne ynoough.' And without any more questyon echo of them recountred other with myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with

12 the stampynge of theire feet, the noyse was so grete that al pey that were benethe were abasshed, and supposed that the donjon shuld haue fall. Wherfor they wyst wel that Geffray had somwhat to doe. And

16 his bretheren shuld have assysted hym, but Geffray had them defended so to do. And wete it wel whan the knyght of the tour fonde Geffray so fyers & so strong, he putte his sword vp in the shed and throught his

20 paueys behin& hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his shield / but he with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the helmet with his sword so myghtly that he staken&

24 perwith. And them the knight toke geffray in his armes / and with that geffray lete saH his sword & wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel fauour shewed on neyther part. And whan the

28 knyght perceyued the purse about geffrays neck he supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept hym therfro / sayeng'/ 'or thou haue purse or money it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for

32 trouth I meruayH how thou mayst so long withstand me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knight, 'I haue more meruaylle how thou mayst withstand my strengthe / but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,
GEFFRAY MEETS THE KNIGHT NEXT DAY. [CH. LIX.

For now the sonne is to his rest, and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me pat no personne shal passe the ryuere & but thou. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'I the assuré no more ther shal not,' and with that he departed that geffray wzyst not where he became. 'By my feyth,' sayd theynge geffray, 'here is apert messager, I hane 8 grete meruaylle what this may be,' and so came he doun and brought wyth hym the knightes shield that he had wonne.

Thystorye witnessseth when Geffray was come doun, 12 hys shield about his neck and the knyghtis paeuys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baromye þere were abasshed therwith, and 16 asked hym whom he had fond. And thenne he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knygtht that ever he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayH & of their covenant / and how 20 he wolk haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly. and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng þat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But when they saw geffrays helmet & al hys harneys so pershshed 24 with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe, For they knew wel there was sore batayH. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys brethern herd masse & drank ones. And thenne armed hym at al 28 pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and þe barons ye to conueye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. /

Thystorye tellleth that anone Geffray fond þe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, 'Sire knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?' And he answerd, 'ye by my feith.' And 36
ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfore defende the.' And when the knight vnderstode this, he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lykwyse / 4 and so ech of them recountred other / by force wherof they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces. And when they had thus manfully broken thaire speris they drew out thaire swordes and smote ech other 8 with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of thaire harneyes, wherof the peple vpon the rynere syde had grete meruayles & were al abashed how that euery they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not 12 one piece of harneyes hool. And they fought fro the morow vnto thre of the Cloke at aftirnone and neuer seaced. And so grete was the batayle that none 1[wist] which of them had the bettre. And themsa 16 the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo, it hath be for the prouffyty of thy fader & of his sowle, 20 For it is trouth that the pope enjowied hym by way of penance for the forsweryng that he had don to thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penance was not by hym observed, but it is so yf thou 24 wylt edyfye an hospital, and founde therin a preste to syng dayly for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this day fourthon shall be quyte of ony trybute / how be it there shall be sene about the tour more meruayles 28 than in eny other place of the world.' And geffray answerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god I wold gladly 2fulfull thy wyse in this byhalf.' / And he said he was. And themsa geffray said / 'be 32 thou sure this shall be doon yf it playse god, but I pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght answerd, 'Geffray, enquire no ffarther, For as for this tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am 1 which in MS.
The knight dis-appears without telling his name.

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren. They ask where his enemy has gone. Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone. Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall. After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished. Here ends the history of the heirs of Lucignan.

Long after the death of Guiom of Armenia there was a wilful young king, who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world. She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could 20 see it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

1a Creature of God.' And therewith he vanysshed that geffray wvyst not where he became / wherof meruaylled moche they that were by pe ryuere. And thenne came geffray ouer the ryuer to his bretheren, whiche asked 4 hym how he had doo and where lyis party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were recorded togidre, but where he was become he coude not tell. And thence they returned to Lusynen 8 where geffray dide doo hang the paueys, that he had wonne vpon the knyght of the toure, in the myddes of his haH. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edyfied the said hospytal, For them it vanysshed away that 12 no man wyster where it became. And here fynyssheth the history of the heyres of Lusynen. But bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynee, I wyl shewe herafter an aventure that befeH to a kyng 16 of Armanye.

Thystorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that land yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyH. 20 The kyng vnderstoH by the report of som knyghtes voyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wyster at that tyne in all the world / the whiche lady 24 had a sperhauk / and to al knyghtes of noble extraction that thither went & coude watche the said sperhauk durynge the space of thre 3dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe / the lady shuld appiere tofore them and 28 gyue them suche worldly yestes as they wold wysshe and were desyryng to haue, except only her self. This kyng thense that was lusty and in his best age, and that vnderstoH the renomme of the excellent beaute of 32 the saide lady / said he wold go thither / and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the saide Castel might none entre but ones in

1 Fr. de par Dieu. 2 Fr. esquire.
a yere / and that was the day tofore the vgylle of saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said kyng was redy he departed & rode with noble company so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche panyillon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest. And on the morne he roos and hert masso./ and after that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed hym and toke leue of them that were come with hym, which were sorowful for his departing, For they trowed that neuer he shuld have come ayen. And this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhauk in the Castel. /

Here saith this story that whan the king was at thentre of the Castel, an old man al clothed in whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had brought hym thither / and he answere in this manere: 'I am come hither to seke thauenture and to hauve the Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folowe ye me, and I shal shew you the aventure that ye seke for.' Themne yede the king aftir the old man / and gretyly was he meruayled of the grete & inestimable riches that he saw, within the place. And theenthe entred the old man into a noble hall rychely hanged, And aftir hym entred the kyng that perceyued in the inyddes of the hall a long horne of a vyncorne that was fayre & whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold wheron stod the sperhauk and a glone of whyt sylk vnder his feet. Themne said the old man to the kyng in this wyse: 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of this Castel / and with it sethen ye are so ferfoorth come ye must watche this sperhauk three days and thre nyghtes without sleepe. And yt Fortune suffre you so to doo, wete it wel pat the noble lady of this ryah

People could only enter the castle on the vigil of St. John's, and the day after St. John's day all had to leave. The King with his company arrived on the right day, and set up a pavilion before the castle, where he supped and rested the night. In the morning he heard mass, drank, amused himself, and went to the castle.

An old man clothed in white asked at the entry why he had come.

The King said, 'To have the custome of the castle.' The old man welcomes him, and asks him to follow him into the castle. The King marvels at the riches he sees.

They come to a noble hall, and there the King sees the sparrow-hawk perched on a unicorn's horn.

The old man tells the King that if he watches the sparrow-hawk three days and three nights without sleep,
Castel shalt appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to whom ye shalt ask that thing of the world whiche ye desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no doubt of but ye shall haue it / but wyte it certaynly 4 yf ye desire and aske to haue herself, euyl aventure shall fall to you therof.'

The forsaid old man after that he had declared and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching of the sperhawk, he departed fro the halle / and the kyng abode alone and had grete mercy, what of the grete ryches that he saw there, as of a rych table that was in the halle covered nobly with al maner deuyntes of meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and made none exces, For wel he knewe that to moche meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & slepy. And to dryue fourth the tym walked vp & down the halle, taking grete playsyr of the grete noblesse that he saw, For there were ryche pictures where as were figyred many a noble hystory, and the wrytynge vndernethe that shewed the vnderstanding of it. And emong other hystories was there figyred the noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they closed their fader in the mountayne of Brombelyo in Northomberland / and how Pressyne their moder 28 punysshed them therfor / and al the circonstaunces of peir faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro pe bygynnyng vnto the ende.

Grete playsyr toke the king to rede & see the said 32 hystories. And thus he watched lokyng here and there vnto the thirde day. And theyn he per-
ceyed a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al wyed open / and that part he went and entred in the chambre, and beheld per many knyghtes armed fygured and rychely paynted on the walles, and vnder their feet were their names writon in letters of gold and of what lynee & countre they were / and aboue their heedes was writon in this manere: "Vpon suche a 8 tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble sperhawk, but he slept / and therefore he most holde company with the lady of this place as long as he may lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his 12 herte can desire saf only the departynge fro the place."

And there nygh were paynted thre shields in a rowe, and on them were fygured the armes of thre knyghtes and their names / their lynee & their Contre that they 16 were of were writon vndermeth / and aboue the shields was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: "In suche a yere watched our sperhawk this noble knight wel and duely and departed with joye and had his yeft of 20 vs with hym." And so long beheld the king that he almost slept / but he anoon came out of the Chambre and sawe the sonne almost doun and passed fourth that nyght without slepe.

Thenne was he glad when he perceyued pe day. And forthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam the lady of the Castel in so noble and so rych aray that the kyng had grete mercay therof / and what of 28 her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was gretyly abasshed. And thenne the lady did her obeysaunce, sayeng in this manere: "Noble kyng of Armany, ye be ryght welcome. For certaynly ye haue wel & 32 valyuantly endeuored you. now aske of me what yeffe that so euer playse you worldly and raysonnable, and ye shal haue it without ony taryeng." Thenne ansuerd the king that right sore was esprésyd of the 36 loué of her; "By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I when he sees an open doore. He enters the chamber, and sees the wall figured with many knyghtes, and reads their names and the writing:

'This knight watched the sparrowhawk, but slept, and so must remain in the castle all his life.'

He also sees three shields painted with the arms of three knights, and a writing:

'This knight watched our 1 fol. 216. sparrowhawk, and departed joyfully with his gift.'

The King neary fell asleep, look- ing at the figures, but left the chamber, and kept awake all the night.

At sunrise the lady of the castle comes to the King, and welcomes him, and asks him to name what gift he would have.

The King answers,
Neither silver nor gold, nor town nor castle, but you, my beloved lady, to be my wife.'

The lady is wroth at his request, and replies that he cannot have her.

The King presses his suit, but she tells him to ask a reasonable gift.

The King declares he will have nothing but herself.

The Queen tells him that unless he changes his purpose evil hap will fall on him and his posterity;

but the King declares that his heart is ravished with her beauty, and that he will have nothing but her.

The lady becomes right wroth, and tells him that he will lose his gift,

aske neyther gold nor syluer, Cyte, town, nor Castel, For thanked be god I haue of al worldly ryches ynoough/ but yf it playse you, my ryht dere & right entierly beleued lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan the lady vnderstock this she was wroth, and by grete yre she said to hym in this wyse: 'Ha, thou grete foole, For nought hast thou asked my body, For thou mayst not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to the lady, 'Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endenuiroed me. Wherfor, noble lady, be you fauourable to me and haue regard to the custome of this castel.' 'By my feyth,' answerd the lady, 'as touching thataduenture & custome of this Castel, I wyl that it be obserued & kept / but aske of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte of but thou shalt haue it.' 'By my feyth, noble lady, I desyre none other thing erthy nor none other I shal not aske nor take of you, but only your gracious body.' 'Ha, fole, fole,' said thenne the lady, 'euyl myscheaunce shal falt on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successors al after pe / though they be not culpable therof.' And the kyng her answerd, 'It is for nought, For my herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde with your syght. And threfore your body wyl I haue and none other thing erthly.'

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away.

When thenne the lady sawe that the kyng chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth, and to hym saide in this manere: 'Thou folyssh kyng, now shalt thou lese the syght of me, & shalt fayH of thy yeffe, & hast putte thyself in aventure to abyde within for euer in grete payne & tourment, bycause that
thou art yssued of the lynee of kyng guyon that was sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and thou art so nygh of my blood and kynred that though 4 I wold be consentyng to thy wyt holy Chirch wold neuer suffre it." And aftir she rehearsed & shewed to hym al that is tofoure said in the 1Chapter of Elynas and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heed al the heyres of Lusynen and their fayttes. And after she said to hym / 'grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thyn heyres successours 2after the, and that shal endure vnto the ix lynee, For they shal falle in decaye, & exilled fro 12 their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor departe lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.' The kyng thynne vnderstoo'l wel the lady. but neyther for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym 16 mysfeit, he neuer chaunged his folysh wyt & vnhappy purpos, but wold haue take the lady by manere of vyolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed away that he wyst neuer where she was become.

20 Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor there felH vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes, 24 as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was al to brusid in euery part of his body, and was drawn by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them 28 that so cruelly seruyd hym. And as soone as he myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand tymes hym that first brought hym tydynges of this auenture, and the heoure also that euer he cam thither. 32 And thynne he went toward his meyne that saw his harneys al to broken and peryssched, and demanded of

1 Cap. I. page 6, et seq.
THE KING IS BEATEN OUT OF THE CASTLE. [CH. LXII.

hym in this manere: 'My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, haue ye had batayH there as ye haue be?'

And he answerd, 'I am somewhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly 4 I haue be festye? 1 2 how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. 8 but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.' /

A noone aftir the king & his people departed and entred in the see and sailled toward his countre, ever thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, 12 and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no hertly joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day fel in decaye by dyuerse maners. And wete it 16 wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappe in al their actes. Here shal I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For ynoogh it is knowne that they came of the noble lynee of the 20 king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The yere of our lord a thousand [ccc] 3 lxxx & foureteen./

Now have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poyton was edyfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynee of the foundatours therof, on whos 28 sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortesse of Lusynen is a now come: but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

1 Fr. batu.

3 Note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 420. Le texte porte: mil iiiij riez et xiiij. C'est évidemment une erreure puisque Jean d'Arras dit, des les premières pages, qu'il a commencé cette histoire en 1387. In the Harl. Ms. of Melusine the date is given as 'le VIIe jour d'auot l'an de grace Mil' iiiijC iijjXX et XIII.'
prynce my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry, Auuergne, &c., by whos com-
mandement I haue endeuoird me after my rude and
symple entendentment to collige & gadre emongst many
gestes & true Cronykles the trouth of thystory bfore
specyfyed. And wete it for trouth that oftentymes I
haue heretofore my said lord say that a kyght called
SersueH that held the said Fortres as lieuftenaut &
Captayne there for the kyng of Englund at that tyme
that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the
reducyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore
12 that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed with a woman
hys concubine named Alexaundryne / perceyued a
grete & horryble serpent in the myddes of the Chambre,
wherof he was gretyly abasshed & sore agast / and wolde
16 haue take the sword to haue deschargd it vpon the
serpent / but Alexaundryne said thence to hym in
this manyere: ‘Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how oft haue
I sene your mortal enemies tofore your presence that
20 neuer ye were aferd, and now for a serpent of femenyne
nature ye shake for fere. Wete it for trouth that this
serpent is the lady of this place & she that edfyed it /
she shal by no manere wyse hurl nor dommage you /
24 but so fere I vnderstand by her apparysshing that
nedes ye shal hastily deluyere & gyue vp this Fortres
to the Duc of Berry’ / And morouer said the said
SersueH to my said lord that hys Concubine fered
28 nothing the serpent / but that he was neuer in his
dayes so aferd. And that he sawe themne the said
serpent tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in
gowne of Cours cloth & gyrded with a grete corde
32 vndernethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned
herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed
away.

A lso there was a man named godart dwelllyng at
36 that tyme within the said Fortresse, whiche
MELUSINE.

son of the
King of France,
at whose com-
mand I have
gathered this
history.

1 fol. 213.
I have often
heard my lord
tell a story of a
knight named
Sersuell, who
was lieutenaut
of the castle for
the King of Eng-
land.

Three days be-
fore he gave it
up he was in bed
with his concu-
bine, and saw a
great serpent in
his chamber,
which frightened
him.
He took his
sword to slay it;

but his lady said
that the serpent
was the lady of
the place, and
her appearance
proved that he
would soon have
to give up the
castle.

The serpent then
turned into a
woman, clothed
in a coarse gown,
with a great corde
round her. Then
she became a
serpent again
and vanished.

B B
Godart swore to my lord on the gospels that he had often seen the serpent on the walls of the fortess, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receuyng of any harme. Then another also called Ynon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that three days tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said SersueH into the handes of my said lord, he sawe an horrorble grete serpent vpon the batements of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her. And where it is soo that at thinstauæce requestes and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces and dyuere of the makyng & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn 16 vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykle & many bokes of auncent hystoryes, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsaid matere. Therefore yf I haue wryton or shewed any thing that to som 20 semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseech them to pardonne me. For as I fele & vnderstand by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & 24 thinges of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

afferned for a trouth / and sware to my forsaied lord vpon the holy euangilles that many tyme he had sene vpon the walles of the fortess the said serpent, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receuyng of any harme. Then another also called Ynon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that three days tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said SersueH into the handes of my said lord, 8 pat he sawe an horrorble grete serpent vpon the batements of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her. And where it is soo that at thinstauæce requestes and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces and dyuere of the makyng & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn 16 vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykle & many bokes of auncent hystoryes, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsaid matere. Therefore yf I haue wryton or shewed any thing that to som 20 semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseech them to pardonne me. For as I fele & vnderstand by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & 24 thinges of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

2 Fr. adds: Et encore plus avant y a ung chevalier poitevin, nommé messire Percheval de Coundone, qui fut chambellan du bon roy de Chipre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparee à icelluy roy, comme celluy roy luy avoit dit en ceste maniere parlant a luy: Percheval, je me doube trop ! Pour quoy, monseigneur ? dist le chevalier. Par ma foy, dist le roy, pour ce que j'ay vus la serpente de Lusignen qui c'est apparue a moy ; si me doube qui ne me advienne aucune perte dedens brief temps, ou à Perrin mon filz ; car ainsi apparat elle quant aulcuns des hoirs de Lusignen doibrrent mourir. Et jura messire Percheval que dedens le tiers jour aprez, la dure adventure que chascun seet bien advint.

3 Harl. MS, reads prouces = proofs.
ments are inuysible & impossible to be vnderstand or knowe by the humaynte of man./ For the vnderstanding of humayn Creature is to rude to vnderstande the 4 spyce spiryttuall, & may not wel comprehende what it is / but as ferre as the wylle 1of god wyl suffre hym. For there is found in many hystories Fairies that haue be maryede & had many children / but how this 8 may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For these poynts and suche other god hath reteyned them in his secrets. And the more that the persone is of rude entendment the ferther is he fro knowlege of it. 12 And he that is replet of scyence naturall, the rather shal haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstandyng no creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./ how be it saint paule saith in hys epystles to the 16 Rommayns, 'that al things ben known by humayn Creature' / but the close rescruthe & excepteth the secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to vnderstand the ferther that he trauaylleth in reaumes and Countrees/ 20 the greter knowleche hath he of euery thinge / than he that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remeyvth. And semblable wyse this hystorye is more credible for as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but 24 also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proce I wyl make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseeche you and alle them pat shal here or rede this hystorye / that yf there be ony thing that be nuyouse or desplay-saunt to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid. For yf a man dooth as well as he can / he ought to be accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Aras, 32 ende the hystorye of Lusynen / beseeching god of his hygh mercy to gyue to them that be passed fro this mortaH world hys eternaH glorye / and to them that be lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfuH endying./ 36 [Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.] punishments of God are not to be understood by man.

1 fol. 219.

There are many histories of Fairies that have married, and had children. No man can understand how this can be. God hath kept these things secret. Ignorant people cannot believe such things. Those who are learned can more readily do so, but no man can fathom the secrets of God.

This story is made more credible by the number of clerks who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness of my readers for anything tiresome or displeasing I may have written. If a man does as well as he can he ought to be accepted.

I, John of Aras, end the history of Lysigman, 2 fol. 219 b. asking God to give those who have left this world His eternal glory, and to the living a blessed ending.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's Histoire de Charles VI., there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Gn liure de l'Historie de Lëzig- nem, escrié en Latin, de lettre de fourne, bien historié & au commence- ment du second feuillet aprés la premiere Histoire, a escrié, sola sed tantum, couuert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the History of English Poetry, § XXIV, that his Otia Imperialia was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 85, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his Description of the World to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'autre; que le samedi ilz ne les enquerrroient que elles seroient devenues en aucunes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in Gervaise of Tilbury referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narratone, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum
Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respicit. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaetur juxta decursum interluentus Laris fluvii, ex improviso occurrat domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosissimis, cunctque salutata a milite ipsum ex nomine ressalutasset, ille ab ignota se nominatum audiens, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coept verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter conjugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsius possit optatissimi frui complexisibus. Quid ultra? acquisecet conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporarium felicitate ex ejus communione fruiturum, dum ipsum nuda non viderit; verum ut ipsum nudam conspexerit, omni felicitate spoliandum asserit et vix ei vitam miseram servandam esse praeponit. Pendet dubiusne timeter optatetno mori? tandem in nuptias consentit et conditionem adnimit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua capitum thorum possit obtinere. Consentient in matrimonium et contrahabit, et crescente militis felicitate, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporali copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excrevit, quod pares excessit et paucis proceribus et illustribus secundus inventur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratiosus, liberalitatatem discreta largitate atque urbanitate condiebat, filiis et filiibus summæ pulchritudinis procreatis. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venata reddens et anecpatu, perdicibus allisque carnisibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur ebaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituens in anime siguidem, quod ex inhibita nuditatis conspicionem potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diuturnitate tamque diuturnae commannis longinquitatem evanisset. Affectum maritus expositu uxori, quae diuturnam felicitatem ex conditione servata object et insincliatatem minatur secuturam, si con temptatur. Tandem paeceps in praecipitium miles, non temperatur interminatione poenae neque precibus flectitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suae consulat utilitate:

"tangunt animum motusque metusque et timet eventus indignaturque timere."

Quid moror? erepto lindeo, quo balneam operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in sermone conventa, missa sub aqua balnei capite, disparauit, numquam visam impositerum nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos veniabat, nutricibus audientibus, sed ab ejus aspectu semper arctatis. Sane miles pro maxima parte felicitatem ac gratiam minoratus, filiam illius dominae cuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quam inter coetaneas et confines suas plurimum exstitit gratiosa et cjuus jam successio ad nos usque pervenit. Prima Decisio XV Otia Imperialis. The theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusina. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: 'Melusinas & meliores filiae regiae quondam propter peccata desperabundae, fuerunt a Sathana raptae, & in spectra transitutae, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immaniam monstru. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpore plantastico, nutriti elementis, atque una cum istic in extremo die judicis transitur, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejusdem status atque generis plura specta haberi creditur
in desertis, in sylvis, ruinis, monumentis, arcibus vacui's, & in extremis litoribus maris. Vulgo maledicti vacuatur homines, sed proprio nomine specta vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur cacodemones, suas illusiones & portenta pericient."—W. Johnson’s Lexicon Chymicum [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembougb.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-l’archevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l’archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. couer'd, Fr. couvertement.

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. ‘je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.’

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled ‘L'Histoire du noble & vaillant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas dus d'Albanie.’ Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Rouen edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of ‘Florimont et Passeroze,’ History of English Poetry, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Aualon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernie is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds ‘filles’ after ‘lawfull.’

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Aualon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John, in London: the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's Antiquities.

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, et seq. Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the Bien Aime. It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Hugenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. ‘fell at debate’; translates est riot.

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at ‘a moche fayre fontayne’; Henry of
Leou, father of Raymondin, meets the 'fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,' 'nighe by a fontain,' &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. 'h...s.], in Fr. sur le col.

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that 'she is of god.' See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine's mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. 'hys doughtir,' i.e. Earl Emery's daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:
1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.
2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.
3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison,
   p. 110, l. 20.

4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause,
   p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato's story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king's table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm: Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king's special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle. He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—Epistoles familiares, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that
   'MieuX est de ris que de larmes escrire,
   Pour ce que rire est le propre de l'homme.'

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads 'Montiers'; the Rouen edition has 'l'abbaye demonsiers.'

p. 45, l. 13. There is an 'onde limpide' near the Forest of Coulom-
 NOTES TO pp. 48—64. 377

byers, known as the 'Fontaine-des-Fees.'—Annales de la Société Royal Academique de Nantes, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 122, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.


\[\text{With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,}\\ \text{Which would eschawfe the braines appetite,}\\ \text{Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,}\\ \text{Which lawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto;}\\ \text{Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras}\\ \text{Thorught at the hal rynnughe lyce and bas.}\\ \text{Wine of Tourinsz, and also of Digon,}\\ \text{Wine of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also;}\\ \text{Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,}\\ \text{Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;}\\ \text{Wine of Estables, of Uiart also;}\\ \text{After thaim cam the wyne,}\\ \text{Wine of Seint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood,}\\ \text{Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,}\\ \text{The novel osey of Dingenon.}\]

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 39.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: 'Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies entaillees de mesines la roche,'

p. 64, l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband's seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adulteress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence!

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its signification to be 'Mother of the Lusignans.' The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine.

Grimm derives it from Meri menni, a syren, or scylla.

Littré derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Mo = half, Ilysonen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the Nouvelle Biographie Générale, thinks that Melusigne is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practised in the 14th century.
M. de Freminville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from morlusine = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlostek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusec.

Mascurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore:

1. Urian: A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon: One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion: One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony: Had on the cheek a lion's foot (grif de lyon).
5. Regnald: Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray: Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond: Had a mole (tache velue) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible: Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond: Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk: Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlying of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads: 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr.: 'mal enfermé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Le-dain in La Galine.*

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 13th century. Philippe le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en vollant.'

The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed.: 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads: 'Il avoit entendu par aulcuns des varlès d'icelluy chastelain que ilz actendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads: 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descouvert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-
NOTES TO pp. 104—176. 379

taieres of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Kaye, in Mémoires et recherches (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excrescences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

‘On the 29th [of Feb. 1839], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.’—Autobiography of Lutfullah, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry’s edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the ‘Narration of Joseph of Arimathaea’ it is related that Demas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: ‘Urian n’avait mie encore, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre mille combatans.’

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. ‘he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.’ The Fr. ‘par grant’ is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: ‘Adonques le maistre de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.’

p. 142, l. 9. The ‘paueys,’ according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The ‘for to wete & know, for to here & know,’ is a double translation of the French phrase, ‘pour aller savoir.’

p. 160, l. 22. ‘fortres’ is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. ‘they . . . . ancrez’ translates ‘ilz desançrèrent.’

p. 169, l. 32. ‘them,’ i. e. their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, et seq.

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow’s Survey of London (W. J. Thom’s ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de
Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13s. 4d. W. Stevenson, in his Life of William Caxton (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers, Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armayne':—'Et se il vous sanble qu'elle n'en soit digne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et defendre des ennemis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remede convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fais mon heritier du royaume d'Armarie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prensez en garde et ayez pitié de mon povre enfant, qui est orpheline desolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueillle meriter, qui vous douiet bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent mout joyeuxx quant ilz virent approcher la navire, car jà scavaient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient allez en Chippre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la verité, affin de ordonner et pourveoir de le recepvoir honnourablemement; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoiselles venues pour le festoier et honnourer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoyit mout la mort de son père, et si avoir mout grant pauc que le roy Urian ne le voulisst pas accordier à son frère, et estoit une cause qui mout luy angoissoit sa douleur. Mais adoncques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste maniere: Madanoiselle, on dist que ceulx qui estoient allez en Chippre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie mout joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarda en la mer, et vit navires, gallées, et autres grans vaissaulex qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et plusieursautres instruments de divers sons. Adonc fut la pucelle mout lie, et vindrent les barons du pays au port, et recepyoient mout honnourablem Guion et sa compaignie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua mout honnourablement en ceste maniere: Ma damoiselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que je partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist mout amoureusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon père est nouvellement trespassé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa saincte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous autrcs; mais, sire, comme povre orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je peux des vaissaulex que vous m'envoiaastes, et aussi de la grant riches et avoir qui estoit dedans.'
p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydee.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urian and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of Melusine intend Anthony and Regnard’s system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: ‘le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son coeur ou son ventre.’

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. ‘pruy meyne,’—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: ‘paiez pour huyt moys.’

p. 228, l. 13. ‘Catell & goodes’ translates ‘biens.’

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after ‘city.’ The Fr. text reads: ‘mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaillir la cite, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se defendoient lachenement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins ; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quant l’ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceu la besoinge et la faible deffense de ceulx de dedens’ (Brunet’s ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: ‘A donques acheoa l’assault,’ &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. ‘the moost vtupere’ translates ‘pour plus vituperer.’

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. ‘Thierry.’

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. ‘ung chevalier faye au maulvais esperit.’

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: ‘It is so general a report, & so many auerre it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitabile honesty & credit, that the Syluans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, haue often injured women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diuells whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vnclennesse, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.’—City of God, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: ‘There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who
visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This
in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves,
or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only
accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michael Psellus, a Byzantine savant of
the eleventh century, explains the mediaeval ideas on this subject. The
text is from a translation by Pierre Moreau Touranio, published in 1576:
'Or me suis-je trouué quelque-fois avec vn moine, en la Cherronese de
Mesopotamie, lequel aprés avoir esté spectateur & cöurateur des phâto-
mes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que nul autre, depuis il les
a mesperizé & abirez, comme vains & frivoles, & en ayant fait amende
honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professié de nostre foy
seule vraye, & Catholique: laquelle il a soignensemât appris de moy.
Ce moine donc me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diabo-
liques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques
diables patibles: ouy vrayement, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns
d'icceux icttent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des vermes. Si est-ce chose
incroyable, luy dis-ic lors, que les diables ayent aucuns excremes, ny
membres spermatiques, ny vitaux. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont
tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils icttent lors iie ne s'ay sey quel excré-
ment & superfluït, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy
dis-ic lors, il y auront danger qu'ils fussent alimenitez & nourriz de mesme
nous. Ils sont nourriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme
l'esprit qui est auxarteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidite: mais non par
la bouche, comme nous, ains comme esponges & huistres attiren à soy
l'humidite adicente exteriorument. Puis icttent lors ceste latente &
secrete semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subiects, ains seulement les
diables qui sont enclins à quelque matiere, seauoir est, ou celuy qui hait
la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous soubsterrains.'—Psellus, De
l'energie or operation des diables (leaf 19 b, et seq), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read:
'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue cohabitation est imaginaire
procedante d'une impression ilusse de Satan .... car à l'execution de
cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be
found in John Wierus, De Prestigia daemonum, 1569 and 1579, and in
Jean Bodin's Refutation of Wierus, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams,
see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreams are avowedly formed the notions of
incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and
men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these
beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connec-
tion with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that
children may be engendered 'between spirits and human mothers. (See
Martin, Mariner's Tonga Islands.) For an ancient example of the general
belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the
early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lilit," evidently gave rise to
the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, La
magie des Chaldéens.) The literature of mediaeval sorcery abounds
in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side
comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, questo 15): "An
sint unquam demones incubi et succubi, et an ex tali congressu proles
nasci quæat?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consort-
ing with such demons being one of the main charges in the infamous bull
of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, Geschichte des Teufels.) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.

p. 253, l. 19. 'hym,' i.e. Claude of Syon.

p. 264, l. 16. 'concernynge' here means 'compared with.' Fr. phrase is 'envers la puissance.'

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. 'ye shal not haue them for so good chep,' i.e. 'You will not overcome them as easily as you think.' Fr. reads: 'Vous n'aurez pas si bon marché.'

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. 'touit le couert.'

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. 'touit courtement.'

p. 287, l. 11: 'Si cum li cerfs s'en vait devant les chiens, Devant Rollant si s'en fuient Puin.'

La Chanson de Roland, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. 'cours' translates 'se recueîlirent.' 'There reforeco the batayll [et souffrirent crietiens mout grant affaire], and with that cours [retires] the cristien, &c.

p. 291, l. 3. 'saraysns' in Fr. text is 'Turcs.'

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. 'espirit fae.'

p. 297, l. 5. 'quaque à harenc' = a herring barrel.

p. 303, l. 3. 'ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes,' The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (Violett-le-Duc).

p. 309, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.


p. 314, l. 26. 'Si quelqu'un aussi se fondit sur la non vérisimilitude de tant d'aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d'un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanoisissant, et du cheval de Paeool, qui est encore plus en ça, d'une Mélusine, de Merlin; je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deçà, le diable avait beau jeu à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu'est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses moqueries et illusions; et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d'eteindre, en ce qu'il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes.'—Contes d'Entrepel, by Noel du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliuriun, or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aerial the lower atmosphere, Earthy, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Lucifugus, the lowest class of all. The aerial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Lucifugus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The
Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying: 'via furor brevis est.'

p. 318, l. 12. 'Vernon'; Fr. 'Warnont.'

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: 'car certainement il destruiroit tout ce que j'ay edifie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poetou ne Guienne.'

p. 319, l. 27: 'nessun maggior dolore,
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice
Nella miseria.'—Dante, Inferno, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 19. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his Histoire Générale de Dauphiné, describes these caverns: 'Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. L'vne est d'vne grandeur incroyable, & elle gette de l'horreur dans les ames les plus ferme. En l'autre ces ceues si célèbres, & dans la troisième est vne table de pierre, que l'on appelle communément la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinion d'un grand personnage que les nymphes y estolent reversées autrefois d'un culte particulier.' 

'Estienne Barlet fait passer pour vne vérité ce qu'il raconte d'vne autre. Il dit qu'apres que l'on y est entré par vn long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estrangees. Vn roy y paroist assis dans vn trône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors infinis a ses pieds. Il adjoute que l'on croit que les fées, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nomment les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montcluz, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la vérité.'—Lib. I, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enor-mous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded atMontserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Ola heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Mauresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barce-lona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an ante-chamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.
Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters. Geoffroi de Leziniem, Vicounte of Châtellerault, lord of Volucent and Mayreuent, salut éternel.'

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudeau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thy lost ther lande and all ther honour,
Inclinyn and conyng vnto mischaunce,
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce pat houre,
So fro hermony chaced into Fraunce.
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance.
At Parys died as happned the cas,
At the Celestines entered he was.'—1. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.

**MELUSINE.**
Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Yuon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V, he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.
LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF

MELUSINE.

The loue of ladyes causeth peyne & travayll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses, 56.
Old synne reneweth shame, 79.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wel folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.
Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.
Wei folis is he that fighteth aynst the wynd wenying to make hym be styll, 107.
Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.
Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.
Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.
Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.
aborde, 71, waited.
absteyn, 16, abstain.
abused, 7, beguiled.
abysmes, 5, abysses.
accorded, 213, agreed.
acompte, 356, account.
acoyntaunce, 71, acquaintance.
acoynte, 190, become familiar; acownt, 205.
adionuste, 16, adjust.
admounested, 228, warned; ad-
mounestyng, 287.
adommage, 32, harm; adommaged, 182.
adrecyd, 226, directed.
aduyronned, 123, surrounded.
aduys, 71 (axis), opinion.
affeblysshid, 241, became depressed, lost spirit.
affecytion, 148 (humblcment), earn-
estly.
affettuously, 159, affectionately.
affyaunce, 324 (fiance), assurance, trust.
affyns, 89 (proemes), near relatives.
affrayenge, 10, fearing.
afrayed, 28, frightened.
agree, 259, accept.
agra, 298, harsh.
albaster, 328, alabaster.
alz, 218, allies; alyed, 92.
alzaf, 300, although (lit. al if).
allegeaunce, 335, relief.
alnese, 106; alnesses, 321, charity.
alowed, 200, lowered.
allogidre, 41, altogether.
ambaxade, 183, embassy.
amerous, 56, amorous.
amongs, 27, amongst.
amyable, 275, friendly.
an, 90, one.
ancre, 114, anchors.
anest, 21, against.
ansuerde, 10, answered.
ant, 367, aunt.
antecessours, 330 (antecesseurs), pre-
decessors.
aurned, 51, 53 (aurne), attired.
aparteyned, 20, belonged.
apas, 27, pace.
apayed, 111, 192, pleased.
aparcell, 118, made ready.
aparlyssing, 369, appearing.
aperceyued, 230, 324, observed.
apert, 125, expert.
apertly, 131, promptly (Cot.).
apertysse, 83, deeds.
appiere, 15; appyeren, 4, appear.
arblaster, 289, men who worked the arblastes, machines for throw-
ing missiles.
archegeay, 226 (archegaic), dart.
ardaunt, 142, burning.
argued, 150 (argue), perplexed.
argregarde, 132, rearguard.
asouns, 286, saddle-bows.
aspre, 145, fierce.
asprely, 132, fiercely.
aspye, 117, spy.
aspyracion, 315, respiration.
asayed, 171, attested.
asoted, 12, infatuated.
assurest, 171, boldest.
aponyed, 202, astonished.
astromy, 20, astronomy.
astronomyens, 323, astronomers.
asuryd, 156 (fiancé), betrothed.
auantgarde, 174, vanguard.
auantynge, 11, boasting.
auctoures, 3, authors.
amycent, 4, ancient.
anoultyre, 296, adultery.
awondred, 50, wondered.
awter, 344, alter.
axe, 41, ask.
axez, 299, attack of fever.
ayen, 180, again.
Bake, 9, back.
bare, 351, bore.
barers, 124; barreres, 63 (braises), defences.
bassade, 308, embassy.
bassecourt, 300, inner court of a castle.
basyn, 8, mug.
basynets, 123, helmetted men.
batayll, 289, battalion.
batayllous, 246 (batattlereux), given to fighting.
beauty, 7, beauty.
beed, 148, bed.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
begonne, 12, begun.
behel, 282, beheld.
behighte, 111, 190, promised.
beryng, 8, bearing.
besily, 3, busily.
betoke, 110, committed.
bewe, 7, beauty.
bigge, 86, build.
bigynne, 17, begin.
billed, 17; byiled, 6, builded.
bode, 18, bid.
bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151, burghers.
branche, 23, branch.
braudysshed, 145, brandished.
brede, 41, breadth.
brenne, 17; brene, 4; brennyng, 184, to burn.
brigh, 266, bright.
bruche, 21, pierce.
bruched, 130, spurred.
broded, 53; browded, 81, embroidered.
brueld, 234, burnt.
bruyt, 251, noise.

brygandyners, 128, men wearing brigandines, canvas coats covered with iron plates or iron rings.
buffet, 303, blow.
busshe, 284, ambush.
butyne, 146, booty.
bycomme, 4, gone to.
bye, 39, buy.
bygotten, 6, begotten.
byneth, 22, beneath.

Caae, 128, cause.
candelsytkes, 17, candlesticks.
carrykes, 109, cargo ships.
caruelle, 117, a light ship.
cas, 11, case.
castel, 15, castle.
castellayne, 92; castellan.
catholic, 215, catholic.
causer, 89, originator.
cepter, 179, scepter.
cerched, 330, searched.
certyfeyen, 3, to certify.
cesse, 156, cease.
chaffed, 22, excited, vexed.
champaynes, 100, open fields.
chanoyne, 40, canon.
chappen, 133, shapen.
charyte, 12, charity.
chassee, 20, chace.
chaunfreyyn, 84 (gauffrain d'acier), the headpiece of a barbed horse (Halliwell).
chayere, 82, chair.
cheryed, 98, treated.
chenannce, 155 (chevance), achievement.
chenysaunce, 264, promise.
cheyned, 171, chained.
childed, 104, gave birth to.
chirch, chirche, 36, church.
clime, 142, climb.
cleeme, 25, climb.
clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245, named.
clen, 26, cleave.
clos, 118 (clôs), enclosure, 267.
cluble, 303, club.
cohortacion, 97, company.
cohorte, 97, company.
coler, 53, collar.
collige, 369, collect.
conmevyd, 123; commonyd, 154, excited.
Thoughtless, "damp" being equivalent to the O.E. Dan, as: "Dan" Chaucer. *daw folke* may mean "melancholy" fool; see Bradley's *Stratmann's M. E. Dictionary*, under "dau."

debonnaire, 190, gentle.

decency, 169, unfurled their sails.

deece, 356, decease.

dede, 321, caused; dede, 323, deed; dede, 12, did.

deele, 190, divide.

deeing, 111, bearing.

def, 29, deaf.

defawe, 345, default.

delyt, 333, misdemeanour.
demanded, 20, related.
demenest, 80, 125, 136, depressed; demened, 147, conducted.
demesurably, 132, greatly, immeasurably.
demysed, 87 (*s'en est defuit*), got rid of.
denounced, 188, declared.
departed, 116, divided.
departement, 98, departure.
despyt, 234, contempt.
desray, 123, disorder.
destuytte, 336 (*levellon et le pertuys*), district, or territory.
destrier, 81; destrier, 82, horse.
detrenched, 146, hacked.
deuil, 234 (*doeuil*); ducyff, 237, mourning.
denoyre, 82, duty.
deuysed, 67, told.
deuyses, 348, talks.
dey, 15, dia.
diches, 88, ditches.
distourned, 55, turned aside.
do, 321; doo, 239; doon, 13, 26, cause to.
doggie, 21, dog.
dolaunt, 312, doleful.
doleur, 305, dolor.
dombe, 29, dumb.
dome, 13, doon.
dommage, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.
don, 118 (*dome*), given.
dongeon, 300, main tower of a castle, donjon.
doubtid, 1, feared.
doubtous, 193, fearful.

| communyaute, 184 (communes), commons. |
| comparison, 17, comparison. |
| compleyned, 12, complained. |
| complices, 96, accomplices. |
| condemned, 68, condemned. |
| condition, 14, condition. |
| come, 12, to be able. |
| connyng, 2, cunning, knowledge. |
| conspiracion, 75, conspiracy. |
| constreyned, 7, constrained. |
| contrefaytte, 135, deformed. |
| contynue, 299 (*continue*), prolonged attack. |
| conuenable, 40, convenient. |
| convyne, 133, 142, 172 (*commune*)? assembly, militia, soldiery. |
| conyns, 261, rabbits. |
| corset, 84, a cloth coat worn over the cuirass. |
| coste, 134, disbursement. |
| costes, 268, coasts, shores. |
| cotidiane, 100, daily. |
| cote, 129, coat. |
| coude, 7, could, was able; 20, knew. |
| couenaunce, 5, covenant. |
| couert, 254, 257, 281, 282, covert, concealed way. |
| couertyl, 262, obscurely, secretly. |
| couetyse, 87, covetous. |
| coule, 168, cool. |
| conloure, 4, colour. |
| courcer, 9, courser. |
| cours, 15, course; cours, 290, rush. |
| courtyes, 57, curtains. |
| coiffe, 250 (*coiffe*), head-dress. |
| coyted, 315, comely. |
| cradelles, 4, cradels. |
| cramensyn, 205, crimson. |
| cronycle, 6, chronic. |
| cryded, 82, cried, shouted. |
| curee, 99, entrails, quarry. |
| curtoysye, curtoisy, 9, courtesy. |
| cyrurgiens, 288, surgeons. |

Dalt, 177, divided.
damoysean, 163; damoyseaulx (pl.), 125, youth.
dampned, 399, damned.
daw folke (*damp musart*). French text means Sir Fool or Sir
doughtir, 11, daughter.
doun, 13, down.
dowbed, 18, dubbed.
dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct,
turned.
dressyng, 155 (adressant), addressing.
duc, 6, duke.
duchery, 214, duchy.
dueil, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.
dyspens, 148, outlay.
dysployed, 119, 230, unfurled, displayed.
dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported, 304, enjoyed.
dyspoylle, 136, pillage.
dyspytous, 29 (despiteux), angry, spiteful.
dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.
dystourne, 26 (destourneray), turn away; distourned, 83.
Eche, 17, each.
efoun dredded, 286, cut into.
egaly, 146, equally.
emonge, 118, among.
empeche, 39, prevent.
empossesse, 99; enpocesse, 333, put in possession.
emprysed, 81, undertaken.
encres, 337; encresse, 32, increase.
encheson, 65, motive.
enemy, 16, any.
erable, 99, arable.
erel, 6, earl.
eritaylled, 50, carved.
eritendement, 369, understanding.
entente, 91, intent, purpose.
ententyfly, 70, attentively.
enteprenaunt, 122, enterprising.
enterpysed, 12, undertaken.
entremete, 63 (se medera), intermeddle.
entreteyne, 229, keep up.
enuahissyng, 138 (enaye); enuahyyshed, 147; enuahyve, 201, assault.
envertued, 200 (se envertuoiit), strengthened.
eny, 16, any.
erable, 99, arable.
erel, 6, earl.
eschiowed, 145, avoided; 170, rescued.
eseryed, 77, 115, p.p. of escrien, to call to.
escuse, 268, excuse; 10, excused.
eslongyd, 133 (se esloignèrent), separated.
espirytyuel, 371, spiritual.
esprised, 11, 34 (surpris), overtaken.
esprouued, 224 (esprouvoient), tried.
esprysed, 77 (espris), smitten.
espyes, 193, spies.
esquer, 248, squire.
essaye, 192, try.
estized, 117, estimated.
estraungers, 178, strangers.
estymacion, 266, estimate.
ueyrche, 320; ueyryche, 154, every.
ueyrcyon, 38, every one.
eurwons, 244 (enrenx), lucky, happy.
excusacion, 107, excuse.
exeryted, 224, exercised.
exployted, 123 (exploita), worked; 81, fought; 289, acted.
eyled, 299, ailed.
Facion, 225, build, make.
fader, 7, father.
faite, 13; faitt, 71; faytte, 119; fayt, 312, deed.
falsed, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood; fals, 12.
fan, 65 (Latin vanus), a corn winnowing fan or sieve.
fantosme, 311, phantom.
fasied, 44, fastened.
faunteye, 4, 31, fantasy.
fawte, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong; 58 (noun), failure.
feith, 24, faith.
fel, 154, 200, fierce, cruel.
felawship, 8, fellowship.
fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.
ferder, 332, further.
ferfourth, 106, widely.
feest, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (baton), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
feyngely, 28, pretending.
flayel, 303 (flayel a baton carrying a lump of iron attached by a chain.
flawgh, 321, flew; floighe, 321.
flemed, 112, fled.
floryshed, 13 (flowered.
flote, 268, fleet.
flyes, 112, fleece.
fole, 24, fool.
fore, 184, early.
foreby, 251, past.
forfaytte, 315 (fourfait), crime.
forwayed, 101, wandered, lost.
forseyed, 184, 230, furnished, adorned.
gate, 203, got, obtained.
gaynstode, 137, withstood.
geaunt, 17, giant.
gendred, 246, begotten.
gent, 8, gentle.
gerdell, 53, girdle.
gerland, 59, garland, wreath.
gestes, 369, histories.
glanched, 77, glanced.
gobelyns, 4, goblins.
gonges, 113, guns.
good chep, 279, 282 (bon marche), easy mastery.
gorgeret, 175, a piece of armour to protect the throat.
gramaire, 370, grammar.
granercy, 9, great thanks.
grantfader, 19, grandfather.
gree, 109, 121, favour, will, pleasure.
gree, take in, 2, agree to.
greef, 13, grief.
gret, grett, 7, great.
greve, 130, injure.
guerdon, 204, reward.
gyfte, 15, gift.
Haake, 20, hawk.
haboundonne, 99, give up.
habundauntly, 228, abundantly.
halid, 161, hauled.
halowed, 158, blessed.
handyling, 65 (manilles), handles.
hap, 15; happ, 5, 12 (noun), luck, chance.
happe, 4; happed, 5; haped, 118 (verb), to happen.
hardyly, 10; hardily, 231, boldly.
harneys, 115, armour.
hauen, 118 (doo), haven.
harence, 112; enhance, 325, raised.
haunted, 113, practised.
hanoyr, 67, goods.
haued, 166 (getter), lowered overboard.
hawtepyece, 145; haulte piece, 325, helmet.
heest, 21.
heisse, 21, hang.
helmets, 199, 251 (bassines), fighting men.
henne, 211, hen.
hens fourthon, 17, henceforth.
herberowed, 70, harboured.
herde, 7, heard.
here, 2, hear.
herke, 317, harken.
herte, 9, hart; hert, 39.
heued vp, 24, raised.
heure, 146, hour.
heuer, 35, heavier.
heuyer, 66, heir.
heued
hit, 7, it.
hold, 190, keep.
hoff, 302, whole.
holped, 46, helped.
honestly, 73, worthily.
hontous, 238, ashamed.
hool, 361, whole.
hoop, 36, hope.
hores, 177, oars.
liors, 10, horse.
liourys son, 300, whore's son.
liolped, 46, helped.
hurted, 25, p.p. of hurten, to rush against.
hurtelyd, 95 (hurta), pushed.
hydeouse, 315, hideous.
hye, 76 (hault), aloud; 94, high.
hyderid, 134, hired.
yereid, 24, hynder.

Impetred, 14, procured (Cot.).
importable, 153, unbearable.
incontyment, 276, immediately.
incligned, 262, made indignant.
infortunate, 16, unfortunate.
juge, 15, judge.
juggement, 3; jugement, 15, judgment.

Jung, 16, June.

Jacke, 205 (Jaques), coat.
jaue, 79, jest.
journey, journey, 291, a fixed date.
jugge, 317, judge.
justiser, 97, justiciary.

Kennyng, 104 (Feues), far sight, extent of vision. Cotgrave translates "kenne"; voir de loin. Motteux (Rabelais, Bk. IV, cap. 22) translates "ne sommes pas loing de port" by "within a kenning."
kepe, 112, guard.
keile, 28, churl.
kerued, 17, carved.
keruyn, 43, carving, cutting; kerued, 60.
knowleche, 2, knowledge; know- leched, 96.
konne, 108, show.
kychons, 50, kitchens.
kymbung, 297, combing.
kynge, 6, king.
yynne, 90, kin.
yynrede, 24, kindred.
yyst, 78 (jetta), cast.

Langing, 136, longings.
large, 111, liberal.
largenes, 111, liberality.
launche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94, rushed.
lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.
lawmentyng, 147, lamenting.
lectuary, 247 (electuaire), electuary.
leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.
lefte, 286, lifted.
legge, 99; leghe, 129; leghis (pl.), 194, league.
leghe, 294 (lieue), place.
leghes, 353, legs.
lepe, 10, leap.
les, 22, lest.
leser, 144 (loisir), leisure.
lette, 10, delay; late (imp.) let, 20; letted, 196.
leuned, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.
leuyed, 135, levied.
leyd, 34, laid.
leyser, 277, leisure.
locucion, 20, circumlocution.
lodgis, 119, lodgings.
lost, 147, faith.
lustis, 320, pleasures.
lyf, 7, life.
lyfloid, 108; lyuelod, 31 (terrien), landholding.
lygeauns, 338, allegiance.
lyghtly, 300, quickly.
lykwyse, 15, likewise.
lynee, 6, line.
lyuere, 275, give.

Machecolyd, 63, 103, parapetted, holes are left in the parapets to pour out molten lead, &c.
machined, 96; machyned, 68, machinated.
maculate, 299, blemished.
majeoste, 1, majesty.
magre, 142, mangre.
maister, 1, master.
manted, 73 (manda), sent for.
mandement, 153, 183, mandate, commandment.
manoyr, 100, mansion.
marches, 183, districts.
moroner, 268, mariner.
maryage, 16, marriage.
mate, 147, dull (mat), dejected; mated, 216.
mayllet, 329, mallet.
maynten, 126, bearing.
medled, 132, mingled.
inedowe, 5, meadow.
meney, 9, 280, company.
meyne, 23, men; money, 9, 280, company.
moche, 6, much.
moder, 14, mother.
mone shyn, 22, moonshine.
moneh, 208, month.
morow, 361, morning.
most, 29, must.
moustre, 165, mester.
mowe, 23, be able.
musarde, 29 (musart from muser; to loiter), dawdler.
myddes, 54, midst.
myynshed, 350, lessened; mynushee, 820.
myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mischance.
mysdons, 261, done amiss.
mysdymed, 205, mistook.
mysericordous, 313, forgiving.
myserye, 13, misery.
mysknewe, 102, mistook.
myster, 219, need; myster, 222.

Glossary.

naturell, 15, natural.
nauye, 109, navy.
nauyll, 15, navel.
nyle, 81, hoof.
ne, 1, nor.
nederinmost, 336, nethermost.
ner, 212, nor.
nevew, 17, nephew.
one, 358, noon.
nones, 63, none.
nothre, 39, neither.
nourtytured, 354, nurtured.
nouryces, 103, nurses.
nyouse, 371, tiresome.
nyghte, 179, niece; nyghtis (pl.), 162.

nys, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.
obsquey, 235, funeral ceremony.
obtempering, 9, submitting.
occysyon, 132, slaughter.
on, 131, 233, in.
one, 360, once.
oo, 79; oon, 4, one.
oost, 193, host.
ootys, 91, oats.
oronne, 14, order; ordonned, 79.
orgueytt, 293, haughtiness.
orgueyllous, 249, haughty.
orphanite, 147, state of orphanage.
orphelym, 241; orphenyme, 213; orphenyns (pi.), 187, orphan.
ou^h, 126; owche, 59, jewel.
ouergrowen, 65, full grown.
ouerredde, 1, read over.
ouertredde, 12, overstep.
ought, 134, owes.
outrage, 196, outrage.
outrageous, 89, outrageous.
outhre, 25, either.

Paas, 21, pace.
pais, 257, peace.
palfrener, 52 (earlet), page.
palfroy, 9, palfrey.
palleys, 147, palace.
palyard, 294 (ribault), rascal.
pannes, 4, pans.
panser, 84, a steel plate covering that part of the body between the breast and the waist. Viollet-le-Duc; the front part of the cuirass.
pappes, 311, breasts.
parels, 31, perils.
parement, 37, ornament.
parfonde, 167, deepest.
parfyt, 3, perfect.
partrych, 175, partridge.
pas, 156, pass, passage.
patron, 115, master.
patyse, 304, 324, tribute; patiz, 301; patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tribute.
paueys, 142, 359, shield.
paueysed, 167, shielded.
paynemys, 106, pagans.
peas, 12, peace; peased, 100, pacified.
pensefull, 28, pensif, thoughtful.
perfightly, 22; perfyttly, 5, perfectly.
perske, 126, blue, sky coloured (Cot.).
pert, 105, expert.
pesaunnt, 142, weight.
pesaunt, 145, heavy.
peupled, 118, peopled.
peyne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.
pluisir, 10, pleasure.
playntes, 12, complaints.
playsaurice, 14, pleasure.
playsaunt, 7, pleasant.
plee, 53, plait, story.
plee, 319, plet, play.
pletyng, 33, part. of plete, to plead.
portable, 209, bearable.
portecollys, 253, portcullis.
potence, 117, cross, gibbet.
pouere, 6, poor.
pouldre, 115, powder.
poursiwe, 155, seek.
poynted, 149, appointed.
prately, 9, doucement, prettily.
preament, 196, preaching.
prees, 137, press, throng.
prest, 265, 275, ready, now.
preste, 358, priest.
preu, 21, press, valiant.
preyse, 23, praise.
presyd, 502, apprised.
prodytour, 310, proditeur, traitor.
proesse, 15, prowess.
promyssion, 16, promise.
promytte, 15, promise.
promyttyng, 292, promising.
propice, 168; propyce, 108, pitious.
propos, 261, proposal.
propre, 196, own.
propriete, 133, properly.
prouffyte, 3, profit.
proy, 132, prey.
prymat, 40, private.
pryne, 148, six A.M.
pryuy, 214, select, intimate.
pubyled, 64, published.
pucelle, 179, maid.
punysshe, 13, punish.
purchasse, 257, procure.
purfeld, 53; purfylled, 240, trimmed.
puruey, 19, purvey.
purveyaunce, 109, provender.
pureyed, 109, purveyed, provided.
pytaunce, 336, allowance.
pyte, 14, pity.

Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.
Radeur, 329, radeur, swiftness; 386, violence.
raisonably, 18, reasonably; raisson, 260, justice.
rampy, 117, rampin, a light ship.
rannyaing, 8, running.
raser, 283, razor.
ravysshed, 7, ravished.
realyed, 145, rallied.
reaume, 238; reame, 240, realm.
rebuckyd, 252, struck, attacked.
rechaced, 126, chased back.
recche, 325, reach.
recomforte, 107, comfort again.
recorded, 263, related.
recontred, 168, encountered.
reeule, 214, 231, fall back, retreat.
rede, 2, read.
redeuance, 4, redenance, rent, service.
redressid, 193, rearranged.
refoorced, 176, se renforcha, 290 (refoorcha), increased, reinforced.
regarde, 209, desert.
regenered, 140, regenerated.
regne, 6, reign.
regracy, 23; regraceye, 124, thank.
rejoye, 157, gladden.
relacion, 42, reference.
rellessed, 322, relaxed, diminished.
GLOSSARY

releuyd, 95 (se remit), 103, 131, rose. relygon, 181, order. remenant, 44, remnant. remevyth, 371, removeth. remythe, 207, 210, restore; remysed, 137.

remunnee, 108; remounee, 74 (renommé), renown. resoynge, 140 (ressongner), to fear (Cot.). respection, 319, outlook. resublysshe, 196, establish again. retche, 14 (challoir), reck, regard. reuertid, 319, turned. reueste, 97, endow. reueytt, 241, clothed. revelry, rewled, 68, ruled. root, 60, root. rotyn, 286, rotten. roost, 4, roast.

roche, 248, rock. scourers, 224 (courers), runners. seaced, 311, ceased.

scale, 39, seal. seased, 75, seasyd, 358 (saisir, connected with seisin), seized from. sechynge, 10, seeking.

see, 7, sea. semblable, 210, similar. semblaunt, 33, 150, show. semynge, 7, seeming. sen, 153 (cf. syn) since. senester, 84; senyster, 137, left. separated, 302, separated. sepulture, 354, tomb.

serche, 1, search. seruymade, 249, feudal dues. sethen, 163, since.

sette, 241, set, placed; 272 (noun), sect.

seuene nyght, 91, week. shadd, 22, shed. shedde, 359, sheath. shelynges, 43, shillings. shett, 14, shut. shul, 16, shall.

siege, 133, seat, camp. siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219; siewyng, 73.

sith, 10, since. sitte, 23, set.

sle, 24, slay. slough, 306, slew.


sommage, 143, baggage. sommed, 65, summoned. songe, 7, sang.

sonne, 174, sun. sonne, 360, sun.

sort, 110, spell, sorcery. souped, 363, supped.

sourdred, 46 (est sour), 50 (sourd-, duit), sprung forth.

sowle, 41, soul. sowne, 101, sound.

sparpylled, 165 (esgarez), scattered. spek, 6, 19, speak.

spenhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow hawk.

speryd, 294, asked.

spoused, 11, espoused.
 Glossary.

spyce, 371 (spèce), element.
stabylshsed, 17, stablished.
stalage, 54, stands.
stert vp, 302 (saillist), jumped up.
straunged of, 48, estranged from.
stake, 234, a pile of wood.
stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.
staung, 98, pool.
stere, 185, stir, move.
sterep, 27; stereope, 83, stirrup.
stode, 7, stood.
stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.
straunged, 183, foreign.
straunged, 10, stranger.
strongest, 33, strongest.
strayte, 118, street.
styl, 7, still.
subjct, 24, subject.
supposition, 17, subjeytion.
supposist, 3, suppose.
supposist, 30, intendest.
surprysed, 10, overcome by.
surquydous, 96, arrogant.
suscted, 151 (resuciter), raised from.
sustir, 118, sister.
swette, 7, sweet.
syke, 147, sick.
sylenceth, 48, becomes silent.
symphlenes, 194, ignorance.
syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.
synester, 258, evil.
synewes, 138 (vaisselles), veins.
synnar, 313, sinner.
synne, 339, sin.
syth, 26, since.
sythe, 301, acyth.

Tache, 22 (tache), spot; tache, 232, buckle, clasp.
tambours, 110, drums, a kind of tambourine.
targe, 175, shield.
termyned, 149, terminated.
terryen, 60, landholder.
thaketh, 294 (près), taketh.
the, 284, they.
thenne, 7, then.
thevely, 359, thiefflike.
thikk, 18, thick.
thoo, 16, those.
thrested, 77, thrusted.
thugh, 359, threw.
thurst, 7, thirst.

thy, 232, thigh.
tierce, 157, In summer eight of the
clock, in winter ten (Cot.).
toard, 96, towards.
to fore, 20; to forne, 178, before.
togidre, 11, together.
toke, 4, took.
top, 105, tuft.
tournement, 15, torment.
tourned, 9, turned.
trenchis, 43 (trenchée); trenchis, 50,
  carvings, hewings.
trasse, 278, trace.
trauerse, 126, across.
trayth, 320 (traillis); traylles (pl.),
  329, cage.
trayttee, 182, treaty.
treachentaunt, 145, sharp.
trew, 1, true.
trews, 276, true.
tronchoned, 286, truncheoned.
troussage, 132 (troussages), goods,
bundles.
troussed, 141, prepared to leave.
trotch, 17, truth.
trucheman, 274, interpreter.
trusse, 355, pack.
trychery, 110, treachery.
trystefull, 305, sad.
tyre, 53, attire.

Valew, valewe, 41, value.
valiauntis, 122, valiantness.
vasselage, 145 (vaisselage), fealty;
  200 (vaisselages), feats of arms
  (Cot.).
vergyoyn, 285 (vergoigne), shame.
vergyoynhouse, 21, ashamed.
vertu, 291: vertue, 200, strength.
very, 1, 25, veracious.
vitupere, 89 (blasme), reproach.
vmbrel, 83 (maisselle), the shade for
  the eyes placed immediately over
  the sight of a helmet, and some-
  times attached to the vizor (Halliwell).

vnfortune, 209, misfortune.
vnnenthe, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.
vnpurveyed, 121 (despoureye), un-
  provided.
vnyed, 131, united.
volente, 207, will.
voyded, 209 (ostées), removed.
vpsd-doune, 25, upide down.
| vyageours, 362, travellers. | wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know. |
| vodayne, 28, bondman. | whom, 52, home. |
| vylonye, 251, disgrace. | wodd, 272, mad. |
| vynaigre, 114, vinegar. | wode, 285, wood. |
| vyretong, 269, arrow or bolt. | woo, 85, woful. |
| vysyted, 288, examined. | wood wroth, 247, madly angry. |
| vytupere, 253 (vituperer), shame. | worshipfully, 10, honorably. |

Wakked, 7, was awake.
waloped, 130; waloping, 21, gal-loped.
warauntyse, 200; waraunt, 136, pro-tect.
warde, 62, wall of defence.
wardes, 170, guards.
wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.
wast, 18, waste.
waymentyng, 13, lamenting.
wedyng, 206, weather.
wele, 11, weal.
wend, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.
wende, 137, turned.
wepen, 25, weapon.
wered, 21, fought, warred, worried.
were, 129, wear.
werre, 65, war.
wers, 216, worse.
wery, 145, weary.

ydvise, 362, travellers.
yloyme, 28, bondman.
ylonye, 251, disgrace.
ynaigreb, 114, vinegar.
yretong, 269, arrow or bolt.
yssyted, 288, examined.
ytupere, 253 (vituperer), shame.

Yaf, 181, gave.
yede, 7, 21, went.
yeft, 16, gift.
ylwyller, 211, ill-wisher.
ymage, 17, image.
ynough, 13, enough.
yonde, 70, yonder.
yonge, 4, young.
yocras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.
yrons, 246 (fier), angry, fierce.
ytaken, 9, taken.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART I.—PERSONS.

Adam, page 3.
Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin’s uncle.
Alexaundryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.
Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.
Anthony, 6, fourth son of Kaymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; conquers the King of Anssay, 308; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrencru, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.
Appolyn, 283.
Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 338; is present at Raymondin’s burial, 355.
Argemount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.
Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.
Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.
Austeryche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.
Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreating on hearing of MELUSINE, the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.
Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.
Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.
Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.
Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.
Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.
Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the
earldom, 40; grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.

Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.

Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.

Brandinount in Tharse, King of uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165; swears to obtain victory or death, 170; fights Urian, 175; slain, 175.

Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tooth, 247; captured, 254; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.

Clerevauld, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle; rebels against Raymondin, 246; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Cornelis, Admiral of, 268; Querdes, 246; joins the Caliph of Bandas to fight the King of Cyprus, 264; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270; slain by Geffray, 290.

Crystyne, 183, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg; the King of Ansay seeks for her hand, 183; she refuses because he is a widower, 183; her land attacked, 185; Anthony rescues her, 203; marries Anthony, 214.

Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121; goes to fight the king, 115; besieges Famagossé, 121; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124; defeated by Urian, 133; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136; slain by Urian, 145.

Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277; gets frightened at Geffray, 280; attacks Geffray, 283; has to fly, 285; makes a treaty, 292.

David, King of Israel, 2, quoted.

Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66; is denounced by Raymondin, 72; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 78; his treachery exposed, 75; confesses, 85; ordered to make restitution, 88; hung, 86.

Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.

Earl of Vandonis at war with the Erle of Marche, 345; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.

Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215; left an orphan, 227; marries Raymondin, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.

Elyns, King of Albany, a widower; when hunting he seeths Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7; becomes enamoured of her, 9; proposes to marry her, 10; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childhood, 11; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palestine, 11; breaks his promise, 11; his wife and daughters disappear, 12; his daughters shut him up in Brombeleyos, a Northumbrian mountain, 14; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.

Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.

Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162; left an orphan, 178; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179; Guyon marries her, 181.

Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7; he has much trouble, 12.
Gallafryn, King of Danetto (Dami-
ett) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.

Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth
son of Raymondin and Melusine; 
birth, 104; goes against Claud of 
Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs 
them before Valbruyant Castle, 
256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 
263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 
264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at 
sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; 
captures Beyrout, 278; kills Gal-
lafryn of Damietta before Da-
mascus, 283; fights the Sultan of 
Damasces, 287; kills the Ad-
miral of Cordes, 290; the Sarac-
cens agree to pay tribute, 292; 
ights the giant Guedon, 302; 
slays him, 304; enraged at his 
brother Froymond becoming a 
monk, 307; burns the Abbey of 
Mailleses, his brother Froymond 
and all the monks, 304; repents, 
310; goes to Brombeilo, 323; 
ights the giant Grimold, 324; 
follows him into a cave, 327; sees 
there the tomb of Elynashis grand-
father, 326; slays Grimold, 329; 
learns his mother’s fate, 331; 
slays the Earl of Forest, 332; be-
comes lord of Lusignan, 338; 
repents his many misdeeds, 329; 
goes to Rome and confesses to the 
Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; 
visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; 
rebuidls the Abbey of Mailleses, 
346; captures Freiburg, 351; 
fights the Duke of Austria, 353; 
attends his father’s burial, 355; 
fights with a mysterious knight, 
359; promises to build an hospital, 
361.

Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) 
quoted.

Godart, 369, declares he has often 
seen a serpent on the walls of 
Lusignan Castle.

Great Carmen, 263.

Great Prior of Rhodes invites Ur Ian 
and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes 
to search for the Saracens, 117; 
cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; 
defeats the Caliph of Bandas at 
sea, 177; sails to the Saracen 
fleet at Jaffa, 266.

Grynauld, 306; Grymauld, 323, a 
Northumbrian giant; Geffray with 
the great Tooth fights him, 324; 
and on the second day slays him, 
329.

Guedon, 293, a giant in Garende; 
ights Geffray, 301; is slain, 
304.

Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of 
Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 256; 
makes peace with Geffray, 263.

Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 255; 
submits to Geffray, 261, and is 
forgiven, 263.

Guion, third son of Raymondin and 
Melusine, 103; goes with his 
brother Ur Ian to help the King of 
Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; 
receives a ring from Ermin, 126; 
visits the King of Cyprus, 150; 
goes once more against the Sarac-
cens, 160; driven on the coast of 
Armenia, 161; falls in love with 
Flory, the heiress of the King of 
Armenia, 163; defeats the Sarac-
cens, 166; is offered the crown of 
Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; 
has to defend himself against a 
Saracen league, 265.

Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon 
Castle, fights Geffray with the 
great Tooth, 249; is overcome
and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.

Henry, son of Alayn of Quyngan, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.

Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.

Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.

Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.

Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.

Macomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.

Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Ans-say; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony's son, 245.

Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombelyoys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.

Melusyne, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Aualon, 12; told of her father's broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombelyoys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 53; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends' presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 105; gives birth to Anthony, Geffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Maileses by her son Geffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin's death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.
Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of Elynas, King of Albany, by his first wife; he persuades Elynas to break his promise to Pressine, 11; succeeds his father, 12; marries YcryS, 12.

Ode, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes with Regnal and Anthony to the siege of Prague, 225.

Odon, Edon, second son of Raymond and Melusine, birth, 102; marries the daughter of the Earl of Marche, 182; visits Regnal and Anthony, 345; the Earl of Vandosme does homage to him, 346.

Olyphart, 242, son of Regnal and Eglantine of Bohemia.

Olyuier, son of Josselin Dupont, 72; fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84; condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of Elynas and Pressine, sent to the Mountain of Guigo to watch the treasure of Elynas until she was released by a knight of her own lineage, 6.

Phillibert de Mommoret assists Gaffray in his fight against the rebel Gion, 248, 252.

Pressine, meets Elynas, King of Albany, 7; he is struck with her beauty and declares his love, 10; she consents to marry him on condition that he promises not to look at her when she is in childbed, 11; her marriage, 11; hated by her step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; King Elynas breaks his promise, 11; she leaves him, taking her daughters with her to Aualon, 12; she shows them the land of their birth from Mount Elynos, 13; she tells them of their father’s broken promise, 13; she punishes her daughters for ill-treating their father, 15; she buries Elynas, and builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon, 67, and nephew of the Earl of Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt with his uncle, 21, whom he accidentally kills, 25; he laments his fortune and resolves to fly, 27; at the Fountain of Soif he meets three fairies, 27, and becomes enamoured of the eldest, Melusine, 29; he is surprised that she knows his history, 30; she asks him to marry her, and promises to make him a great lord, 31, on condition that he will never ask to see her on a Saturday, 32; she counsels him to return to Poitiers, and advises him what to do there, 34; he follows her advice, and all goes well, 36; she sends him back to Poitiers to demand of the new Earl a gift of as much land as he can encircle with a hart’s hide, 39; he obtains his land grant, 41; he invites his friends to his wedding, 48; they are surprised at the riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan Castle built, 62; named, 64; Melusine bears him a son named Urian, 65; he goes to Brut Britain to avenge an injury to his father, Henry of Leon, 69; he fights Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83; conquers, 84; obtains a decision in his favour from the King of Brut Britain, 88; on his return home he is attacked by the friends of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels the attack, and sends his enemies to the King of Brut Britain, who hangs them, 97; he finds a grand castle on his return home, 100; is met by Melusine, 101; she bears him more sons, Odon, Gion, 104, Anthony, Regnal, Gaffray, 104, Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theodoric, 246; a rebellion, in Gar- aude, 246; he is made jealous by his brother the Earl of Forest, and breaks his promise to Melusine by looking at her in her bath on a Saturday, 296; he sees her to be half woman and half serpent, 297, and laments that he has betrayed her, 297; he drives his brother away for tempting
him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been discreet, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Maillese and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 393, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnal, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxembourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrencre, 347.

St. Johan Baptiste, 16.

Sersuell, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagossa, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemount, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Ycris, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Yuon of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyus, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnald slays him, 233; the King of Assay burns his body, 234.
PART II.—PLACES.

Acon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.
Aisne, River, 193.
Albany, 6, 12.
Allemayne, 183; Almayn, 351.
Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay;
Aisace.
Aragon, 336.
Ardane, 245, Ardennes.
Armany, Grete, 362, Armenia.
Armany, 161; Armenye, 6, Little Armenia.
Aruall, 89.
Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.
Aualon, 12.
Austerityche, 345.
Auvergne, 1.

Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas, 
Bagdad.
Bar, Duchy of, 1.
Barselone, 336.
Behayne, 6, 214, Bohemia.
Berry, 1.
Eure et Loire.
Bretons; 17, 97, Brittany.
Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo, 
Mount, 32.
Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.

Cabyeres, 355.
Cardillak, 356.
Coles, 122.
Coloyne, 219.
Coulombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59, 
in dept. of Vienne.
Craço, 216.
Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.
Culbaston, 337, Colbató.
Cypre, 105, Cyprus.

Damaske, 164.
Danette, 276, Daniettia.
Denmark, 242.
Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.

Eglon, Castle, 103.
Elyneos, Mount, 13.
England, 356.

Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta, 
Cyprus.
Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of 
Fayere, 27.
Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.
Fraunce, 1.
Frebourgh, 350, Freiburg.

Garande, 246; garend, 287; guerre- 
rende, 89, country of the River Garonde.
Gascouyne, 104.
Guyenne, 104.
Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in 
Armenia.

Hongery; 225.
Hospytal of Rodes, 122.

Jalensey, 331.
Japh, 265, Jaffa.
Jherusalem, 292.

Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.
Leffé, 217.
Leon, Castel, 67.
Lorayne, 183.
Lucembourgh, 6, 183.
Lusygenen, 6; Lasignen, 17.
Lynus, 146; Limasson, 117, Limas- 
sol, Cyprus.
Lynges, 103.

Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes, 
246.
Mallegrès, 162.
Marcelly, Castel, 331.
Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.
Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.
Melle, 103.

Mermount, 292; Mernant, 103.
Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant 
Guedon.
Menue, River, 194; Menze, 245, 346.
Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Ara- 
gon.

Montiers, Abbey of, 42.
Mouchyne, 243 (Muchin), ? Munich.
Mountfrayn, 257.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.
Murnych, 225.
Myrabel, 192.

Nantes, 73.
Nerbonne, 335.
Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.
Northumberland, 14, 306.
Northwedge, 242; Norway.
Nuenmarche, 223 (? Nurenburg).
Nyort, 299.

Parpynen, 356, Perpignan.
Partenay, 6, 103.
Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.
Penycence, 65.
Poitiers, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiers.
Pons, 103.
Poterne Tower, 321.
Pourrencru, 346, (? Porentruy, near Freiburg.
Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo, 41; Pouthieu, 293 (Ponthièvre).
Praghe, 215, Prague.

Quercyn, 356.
Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.

Regnault, Castel, 355.
Rochelle, 103.
Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.
Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.

Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.
Salesbury, 1.
Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
St. John of Rhodes, 269.
Sassymon, 98.
Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.
Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.
Storyon, 73.
Syon Castle, 247.

Tallemounois, 104.
Tallemoute, 104.
Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
Thoulouse, 335.
Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
Tupple, 160 (Tupple), ? Tripoli, Syria.
Turcke, 145; Turkye, 265.

Valbruuyant Castle, 255.
Vannes, 98.
Vernon, 318.
Vertone, 195.
Vouant, 103.
Vtreyght, 242, Utrecht.

Xaintes, 103.
Ycrys, 12.

Zeland, 242, Zealond.